



Rural Payments  
Agency

# Full options prescriptions and descriptions 2020

## Contents

AB1: Nectar flower mix.....	13
AB2: Basic overwinter stubble.....	19
AB3: Beetle banks.....	22
AB4: Skylark plots.....	26
AB5: Nesting plots for lapwing (and in Higher Tier, stone curlew).....	29
AB6: Enhanced overwinter stubble.....	33
AB7: Whole crop cereals.....	36
AB8: Flower-rich margins and plots.....	40
AB9: Winter bird food.....	47
AB10: Unharvested cereal headland.....	53
AB11: Cultivated areas for arable plants.....	57
AB12: Supplementary winter feeding for farmland birds.....	61
AB13: Brassica fodder crop.....	66
AB14: Harvested low input cereal.....	69
AB15: Two year sown legume fallow.....	73
AB16: Autumn sown bumblebird mix.....	78
AC1: Access capital items.....	83
AC2: Countryside educational access visits accreditation.....	85
BE1: Protection of in-field trees on arable land.....	86
BE2: Protection of in-field trees on intensive grassland.....	90
BE3: Management of hedgerows.....	94
BE4: Management of traditional orchards.....	98

BE5: Creation of traditional orchards .....	102
BE6: Veteran tree surgery .....	106
BE7: Supplement for restorative pruning of fruit trees .....	110
BN1: Stone-faced bank repair .....	112
BN2: Stone-faced bank restoration .....	115
BN3: Earth bank creation .....	118
BN4: Earth bank restoration .....	120
BN5: Hedgerow laying .....	123
BN6: Hedgerow coppicing .....	127
BN7: Hedgerow gapping-up .....	131
BN8: Hedgerow supplement - casting up .....	135
BN9: Hedgerow supplement - substantial pre-work .....	137
BN10: Hedgerow supplement - top binding and staking .....	140
BN11: Planting new hedges .....	142
BN12: Stone wall restoration .....	146
BN13: Top wiring - stone wall .....	150
BN14: Stone wall supplement - stone from quarry .....	152
BN15: Stone wall supplement - difficult sites .....	154
CT1: Management of coastal sand dunes and vegetated shingle .....	156
CT2: Creation of coastal sand dunes and vegetated shingle on arable land and improved grassland .....	160
CT3: Management of coastal saltmarsh .....	164
CT4: Creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat on arable land .....	168

CT5: Creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat by non-intervention .....	173
CT6: Coastal vegetation management supplement.....	178
CT7: Creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat on intensive grassland ....	180
ED1: Educational access .....	185
FG1: Fencing.....	188
FG2: Sheep netting .....	191
FG3: Permanent electric fencing.....	194
FG4: Rabbit fencing supplement.....	197
FG5: Fencing supplement - difficult sites .....	199
FG7: Anti-predator combination fencing .....	202
FG8: Anti-predator temporary electric fencing .....	206
FG9: Deer fencing .....	210
FG10: Temporary deer fencing .....	214
FG11: Deer exclosure plot .....	216
FG12: Wooden field gate .....	219
FG13: Stone gate post .....	223
FG14: Badger gate.....	225
FG15: Water gates .....	228
FM1: Management of geodiversity features.....	231
FM2: Major preparatory works for priority habitats (creation and restoration) and priority species .....	233
FY1: Deer high seat .....	237
FY2: Woodland infrastructure .....	239

GS1: Take small areas out of management.....	242
GS2: Permanent grassland with very low inputs (outside SDAs) .....	245
GS3: Ryegrass seed-set as winter food for birds.....	251
GS4: Legume and herb-rich swards .....	254
GS5: Permanent grassland with very low inputs in SDAs.....	258
GS6: Management of species-rich grassland .....	264
GS7: Restoration towards species-rich grassland .....	269
GS8: Creation of species-rich grassland.....	274
GS9: Management of wet grassland for breeding waders .....	279
GS10: Management of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl	284
GS11: Creation of wet grassland for breeding waders .....	289
GS12: Creation of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl .....	293
GS13: Management of grassland for target features .....	297
GS14: Creation of grassland for target features .....	302
GS15: Haymaking supplement .....	307
GS16: Rush infestation control supplement.....	310
GS17: Lenient grazing supplement.....	313
HE1: Historic and archaeological feature protection .....	316
HE2: Historic building restoration .....	319
HE3: Removal of eyesore .....	323
HS1: Maintenance of weatherproof traditional farm buildings.....	325
HS2: Take historic and archaeological features out of cultivation.....	330

HS3: Reduced-depth, non-inversion cultivation on historic and archaeological features .....	333
HS4: Scrub control on historic and archaeological features .....	337
HS5: Management of historic and archaeological features on grassland	340
HS6: Maintenance of designed/engineered water bodies.....	343
HS7: Management of historic water meadows through traditional irrigation .....	347
HS8: Maintenance of weatherproof traditional farm buildings in remote areas .....	352
HS9: Restricted depth crop establishment to protect archaeology under an arable rotation .....	357
LH1: Management of lowland heathland.....	363
LH2: Restoration of forestry and woodland to lowland heathland.....	367
LH3: Creation of heathland from arable or improved grassland .....	372
LV1: Cattle grid.....	377
LV2: Livestock handling facilities .....	379
LV3: Hard bases for livestock drinkers.....	382
LV4: Hard bases for livestock feeders .....	384
LV5: Pasture pumps and associated pipework .....	386
LV6: Ram pumps and associated pipework.....	389
LV7: Livestock troughs .....	392
LV8: Pipework associated with livestock troughs.....	395
OP1: Overwintered stubble .....	398
OP2: Wild bird seed mixture.....	401

OP3: Supplementary feeding for farmland birds .....	408
OP4: Multi species ley .....	411
OP5: Undersown cereal .....	413
OR1: Organic conversion – improved permanent grassland .....	415
OR2: Organic conversion – unimproved permanent grassland .....	418
OR3: Organic conversion – rotational land .....	421
OR4: Organic conversion - horticulture .....	424
OR5: Organic conversion - top fruit.....	427
OT1: Organic land management - improved permanent grassland .....	430
OT2: Organic land management - unimproved permanent grassland ....	432
OT3: Organic land management - rotational land .....	434
OT4: Organic land management - horticulture .....	436
OT5: Organic land management - top fruit.....	438
OT6: Organic land management - enclosed rough grazing .....	440
PA1: Implementation plan .....	442
PA2: Feasibility study .....	444
PA3: Woodland management plan .....	446
RP1: Resurfacing of gateways .....	448
RP2: Gateway relocation.....	451
RP3: Watercourse crossings.....	455
RP4: Livestock and machinery hardcore tracks.....	458
RP5: Cross drains .....	463
RP6: Installation of piped culverts in ditches.....	467

RP7: Sediment ponds and traps .....	471
RP8: Constructed wetlands for the treatment of pollution.....	475
RP9: Earth banks and soil bunds .....	479
RP10: Silt filtration dams or seepage barriers.....	483
RP11: Swales.....	487
RP12: Check dams .....	491
RP13: Yard - underground drainage pipework.....	495
RP14: Yard inspection pit.....	498
RP15: Concrete yard renewal .....	502
RP16: Rainwater goods .....	506
RP17: Storage tanks underground.....	509
RP18: Above ground tanks .....	513
RP19: First flush rainwater diverters and downpipe filters .....	516
RP20: Relocation of sheep dips and pens .....	519
RP21: Relocation of sheep pens only .....	523
RP22: Sheep dip drainage aprons and sumps .....	527
RP23: Installation of livestock drinking troughs (in draining pens for freshly dipped sheep).....	531
RP24: Lined biobed plus pesticide loading and washdown area .....	535
RP25: Lined biobed with existing washdown area .....	542
RP26: Biofilters.....	546
RP27: Sprayer or applicator load and washdown area.....	550
RP28: Roofing (sprayer washdown area, manure storage area, livestock gathering area, slurry stores, silage stores).....	554



RP29: Self supporting covers for slurry stores .....	559
RP30: Floating covers for slurry stores and lagoons .....	562
RP31: Equipment to disrupt tramlines in arable areas.....	565
RP32: Small leaky woody dams.....	568
RP33: Large leaky woody dams .....	571
SB1: Scrub control and felling diseased trees .....	574
SB2: Scrub control - difficult sites .....	579
SB3: Tree removal .....	582
SB4: Chemical bracken control.....	584
SB5: Mechanical bracken control.....	587
SB6: Rhododendron control.....	590
SP1: Difficult sites supplement.....	595
SP2: Raised water level supplement .....	598
SP3: Bracken control supplement.....	602
SP4: Control of invasive plant species supplement .....	605
SP5: Shepherding supplement .....	609
SP6: Cattle grazing supplement.....	612
SP7: Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly .....	615
SP8: Native breeds at risk supplement .....	617
SP9: Threatened species supplement .....	620
SP10: Administration of group managed agreements supplement.....	631
SW1: 4m to 6m buffer strip on cultivated land .....	633
SW2: 4m to 6m buffer strip on intensive grassland.....	637

SW3: In-field grass strips .....	641
SW4: 12m to 24m watercourse buffer strip on cultivated land.....	644
SW5: Enhanced management of maize crops .....	647
SW6: Winter cover crops.....	650
SW7: Arable reversion to grassland with low fertiliser input .....	653
SW8: Management of intensive grassland adjacent to a watercourse ...	657
SW9: Seasonal livestock removal on intensive grassland .....	661
SW10: Seasonal livestock removal on grassland in SDAs next to streams, rivers and lakes .....	663
SW11: Riparian management strip .....	665
SW12: Making space for water .....	668
SW13: Very low nitrogen inputs to groundwaters .....	673
SW14: Nil fertiliser supplement .....	676
SW15: Flood mitigation on arable reversion to grassland.....	678
SW16: Flood mitigation on permanent grassland .....	683
TE1: Planting standard hedgerow tree.....	687
TE2: Planting standard parkland tree.....	690
TE3: Planting fruit trees.....	692
TE4: Supply and plant tree.....	695
TE5: Supplement for use of individual tree-shelters .....	701
TE6: Tree guard (tube and mesh).....	703
TE7: Tree guard (wood post and rail) .....	705
TE8: Tree guard (wood post and wire).....	708

TE9: Parkland tree guard - welded steel.....	711
TE10: Coppicing bankside trees .....	713
TE11: Tree surgery .....	715
TE12: Stump grinding.....	718
TE13: Creation of dead wood habitat on trees.....	720
TE14: Identification of orchard fruit tree varieties.....	725
UP1: Enclosed rough grazing .....	727
UP2: Management of rough grazing for birds .....	731
UP3: Management of moorland .....	736
UP4: Management of moorland vegetation supplement.....	740
UP5: Moorland re-wetting supplement.....	743
UP6: Upland livestock exclusion supplement .....	746
WB1: Small wildlife box.....	749
WB2: Medium wildlife box .....	753
WB3: Large wildlife box.....	756
WD1: Woodland creation - maintenance payments.....	759
WD2: Woodland improvement .....	761
WD3: Woodland edges on arable land .....	764
WD4: Management of wood pasture and parkland.....	767
WD5: Restoration of wood pasture and parkland .....	773
WD6: Creation of wood pasture .....	779
WD7: Management of successional areas and scrub.....	783
WD8: Creation of successional areas and scrub .....	787

WD9: Livestock exclusion supplement - scrub and successional areas .	791
WN1: Grip blocking drainage channels .....	793
WN2: Creation of scrapes and gutters .....	797
WN3: Ditch, dyke and rhine restoration .....	801
WN4: Ditch, dyke and rhine creation.....	805
WN5: Pond management (first 100 sq m).....	808
WN6: Pond management (areas more than 100 sq m) .....	811
WN7: Restoration of large water bodies .....	814
WN8: Timber sluice .....	815
WN9: Brick, stone or concrete sluice .....	819
WN10: Construction of water penning structures.....	822
WT1: Buffering in-field ponds and ditches in improved grassland .....	825
WT2: Buffering in-field ponds and ditches on arable land.....	827
WT3: Management of ditches of high environmental value .....	829
WT4: Pond management – first 100 sq m.....	832
WT5: Pond management (areas more than 100 sq m).....	835
WT6: Management of reedbed .....	838
WT7: Creation of reedbed .....	841
WT8: Management of fen.....	845
WT9: Creation of fen .....	849
WT10: Management of lowland raised bog.....	853
WT11: Wetland cutting supplement .....	857
WT12: Wetland grazing supplement.....	859

## **AB1: Nectar flower mix**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the nectar flower mix option.

### **How much will be paid**

£511 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on whole or part parcels in rotation on:

- arable land
- temporary grass
- bush orchards

### **Where this option cannot be used**

- On organic land or on land in conversion to organic status
- On land already receiving funding for Ecological Focus Areas (EFAs) declared for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS)

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It provides areas of flowering plants to boost essential food sources for beneficial pollinators.

If successful there will be:

- an abundant supply of pollen and nectar-rich flowers between early and late summer
- pollinating insects such as bumblebees, solitary bees, butterflies and hoverflies using the flowers

### **Requirements**

You must establish in blocks or strips between 1 March and 15 September by sowing a grass-free seed mix which contains a minimum of 6 flower

species. At least 2 of these must be from the following list. But no single species should exceed 50% of the total seed mix by weight:

- common knapweed
- musk mallow
- oxeye daisy
- wild carrot
- yarrow

In the first 12 months after sowing you are allowed to regularly cut to help the sown species to establish.

You can find more details on what to sow in the [Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option](#) section.

You must then manage established nectar flower mix plots as follows:

- rotationally cut half (50%) of the plot area each year between 15 May and 15 June – do not cut the same area in successive years
- cut the whole plot (100%) each year between 15 September and 30 March

Always remove or shred cuttings to prevent weed ingress and patches of dead material developing.

Do not:

- graze between 15 March and 31 August

### **Keeping records**

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- seed invoices
- field operations [at the parcel level](#), including associated invoices
- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels
- photographs of the established mixture

We may ask to see these at any point during your agreement, this could be as part of an administrative check or during an inspection.

On your annual claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### **Pick the right location**

Use lower-yielding areas with a sunny aspect, facing south or south-southwest.

Avoid planting under overhanging trees, next to tall hedges or on land facing north or east. Leave access to surrounding crops to allow for management.

### **Block and plot sizes**

Use wide margins and big blocks between 0.25ha and 0.5ha. This lets insects move to safety when you are spraying fields.

Spacing five 0.5ha patches evenly within 100ha meets the food needs of many pollinators.

### **What to sow**

A seed mix which contains both shorter-lived legumes and longer-lived wild flower species delivers an extended supply of pollen and nectar from late spring through to the autumn for beneficial insects such as bees, butterflies, hoverflies and moths.

You can sow the following example mix on a range of soil types:

<b>Flower species</b>	<b>% inclusion rate</b>
Alsike clover	10

<b>Flower species</b>	<b>% inclusion rate</b>
Bird's-foot trefoil	10
Black medick	5
Common vetch	40
Early flowering red clover	10
Late flowering red clover	10
Lucerne	5
Sweet clover	5
Common knapweed	1.5
Musk mallow	1
Oxeye daisy	1



<b>Flower species</b>	<b>% inclusion rate</b>
Wild carrot	1
Yarrow	0.5
Total	100

Sow the seed mix at 15 kg/ha.

On light free draining soils you can replace common vetch with sainfoin.

### **How to sow**

Sow by broadcasting seeds rather than drilling, when the soil is warm and moist. Use a ring roll before and after sowing. Check regularly for slug damage.

### **Management**

Cut emerging flowers and weeds at least twice in year 1, and up to 4 times if necessary where the soil is particularly fertile. Regular cutting prevents weeds smothering the slow-growing flowers so all sown species can establish successfully.

You can graze livestock on plots between 1 September and 14 March, but make sure that they do not cause any poaching or soil compaction. Avoid supplementary feeding as this can result in poaching and soil compaction.

Remember you must keep nectar plots until at least 31 December in year 5 of the agreement.

## Further information

You can find more information in the [Growing farm wildlife](#) DVD which gives a step-by-step approach to sowing nectar flower mixtures.

See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **AB2: Basic overwinter stubble**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the basic overwinter stubble option.

### **How much will be paid**

£84 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on whole or part parcels in rotation on stubble that follows the harvest of:

- cereals (not maize)
- oilseed rape
- linseed

### **Where this option cannot be used**

- Parcels at risk of soil erosion or runoff, as identified on the Farm Environment Record (FER)
- Organic land or land in conversion to organic status

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It provides a winter food source for seed-eating birds, which feed on spilt grain and the seeds of broad-leaved weeds. It also provides a foraging habitat for brown hare.

If successful there will be:

- naturally occurring arable plants providing seed and forage over the winter
- farmland birds and brown hare foraging on the seed shed during harvest

## Requirements

After the first harvest, you must keep the stubble from harvest to 15 February each year.

Do not:

- apply pre-harvest desiccants
- apply post-harvest herbicides
- apply any fertilisers, manures or lime to the stubble
- top or graze

### Keeping records

You must keep the following records and supply them with your payment claim:

- an annual record of the location of the rotational options

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operation records [at the parcel level](#), including associated invoices
- photographs of the stubble area

We may ask to see these at any point during your agreement, this could be as part of an administrative check or during an inspection.

On your annual claim you must declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### Pick the right location

This option suits most soil types but works best when arable plants in the soil seedbank create a range of natural habitats that can support different wildlife.

The best overwinter stubbles come from spring sown crops, especially barley.

## **Blocks or plot sizes**

Spread basic stubbles widely across the farm to help connect farmland wildlife with other farm habitats.

This option delivers most of its benefits at a larger scale, which provides the best opportunities for foraging and feeding. Very small areas of stubble at the edge of fields (or in areas of poor soil condition) are not suitable.

This option is designed to rotate around the farm so it:

- fits in with the crop rotations
- gives the most benefit for biodiversity

## **Enhance basic stubble**

Enhance the stubble by broadcasting beneficial seed and nectar-producing plants, such as mustard and fodder radish. Do this after harvest on a maximum of 10% of the stubble area.

Use the stubble as areas for supplementary feeding when they are next to winter bird food plots.

## **Rotational management**

Remember that stubbles should be in place from harvest until at least 31 December in year 5 of the agreement, after which time you can then return it to the rotation.

## **AB3: Beetle banks**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the beetle banks option.

### **How much will be paid**

£573 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Whole or part parcel

Only on:

- arable land
- temporary grassland

### **Where this option cannot be used**

- on historic or archaeological features identified in your HEFER or FER
- from 1 January 2019, on land already receiving funding for Ecological Focus Areas (EFAs) declared for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS)

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It provides nesting and foraging habitats for:

- insects - including those that feed on crop pests
- bumblebees
- small mammals
- some farmland birds

If successful there will be:

- a raised grass bank with dense tussocky cover providing warm and dry areas for invertebrates and farmland birds

- invertebrates such as bumblebees and some farmland birds foraging and nesting on the bank during the spring and summer
- beneficial insects which feed on crop pests

## Requirements

- create or maintain an earth ridge, measuring between 3m to 5m wide and at least 0.4m high
- leave gaps no more than 25m wide at each end of the ridge to allow access for machinery
- establish or maintain a tussocky grass mixture in year 1 of the agreement
- cut the established mixture to control woody growth and suckering species - cut after 1 August to protect nesting invertebrates

Do not:

- apply any fertilisers or manures
- apply any lime
- use any pesticides, except for herbicides to weed-wipe or spot-treat for the control of injurious weeds, invasive non-natives, nettles or bracken

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operation records at parcel level, including associated invoices

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

Related Mid Tier options and supplements

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- [OR3 – Organic conversion – rotational land](#)
- [OR4 – Organic conversion - horticulture](#)
- [OT3 – Organic land management – rotational land](#)

- [OT4 – Organic land management – horticulture](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

### **Pick the right location**

This option is suitable for most soil types but especially where it is possible to form a free-draining raised bank. This will leave the upper bank area dry for insects to hibernate securely. It works best on larger fields as it is designed to provide the most benefit in more open landscapes. It can also help to slow down or stop soil erosion.

### **Blocks and plot sizes**

Spread beetle banks widely across the farm to help connect farmland wildlife with other farm habitats.

### **What to sow**

Sow a mixture of fine-leaved grasses such as red fescue together with some tussock-forming varieties like tall fescue, timothy and cocksfoot.

### **Establish the bank**

Plough in 2 directions towards each furrow to create the required size, followed by shallow cultivation of the bank to produce a firm, fine seedbed if needed.

Broadcast the grass seed mixture on to the seedbed and roll. This will keep moisture in the soil. Do not overwork the bank, as this can cause a loss in overall height.

### **When to cut**

Cut the grass several times during the first summer to help it establish, but avoid cutting when the bank is wet to stop the soil compacting.

After year 1 only cut:

- after 1 August to protect any nesting invertebrates and beneficial insects



- to control parts of the bank where woody species or invasive perennial weeds such as creeping or spear thistle are growing

## **AB4: Skylark plots**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the skylark plots option.

### **How much will be paid**

£18 (£9 per plot, minimum 2 plots per hectare (ha)).

### **Where to use this option**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Rotational

Only:

- on arable land
- on temporary grassland
- in winter cereal fields with an open aspect of more than 5ha

### **Where this option cannot be used**

- in parcels bounded by tree lines or adjacent to woods, unless the parcel is larger than 10ha
- from 1 January 2019, on land already receiving funding for Ecological Focus Areas (EFAs) declared for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS)

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It provides skylarks with suitable access to nesting habitats in winter cereal crops throughout their breeding season.

If successful there will be:

- plots providing access into the growing cereal during the spring and summer
- skylarks holding territory and singing over the fields of winter cereals where the plots are located and, ideally, landing in the plots themselves

- increased numbers of singing skylarks across the farm

## Requirements

- create fallow plots at least 3m wide and with a minimum area of 16 square metres in winter cereal fields
- space plots across the field at a minimum density of 2 plots per ha, making sure they are located away from tramlines, boundaries and margins to minimise nest predation

## Keeping records

You should be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the plots

## Related Mid Tier options and supplements

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- [HS3 – Reduced-depth, non-inversion cultivation on historic and archaeological features](#)
- [HS9 – Restricted depth crop establishment to protect archaeology under an arable rotation](#)
- [OR3 – Organic conversion – rotational land](#)
- [OT3 – Organic land management – rotational land](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

### Pick the right location

This option works best in large, open winter cereal fields, preferably where skylarks are present or have been in the past. Avoid fields that are bordered by trees or next to woods as this increases the risks of predator attack.

Minimise attacks on nests from predators by placing plots:

- away from tramlines (choosing a middle spot between two sets of tramlines works best)
- at least 50m from field boundaries and margins

### **How to establish skylark plots**

Create plots either:

- by turning off the drill during sowing to leave an unsown plot, or
- by sowing the crop as normal and spraying with herbicide to create the plot by 31 December

### **Managing the plots**

After drilling, the plots can be managed with the same treatments as the remainder of the field.

There is no need to keep the plots weed-free but spot-treating with herbicide in April will help skylarks to access their nesting sites.

Mechanical weeding of crops containing skylark plots will destroy any nests present and is not recommended.

## **AB5: Nesting plots for lapwing (and in Higher Tier, stone curlew)**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the nesting plots for lapwing and stone curlew option.

### **How much will be paid**

£524 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Whole or part parcel

Rotational

Only on:

- arable land
- temporary grassland

### **Where this option cannot be used**

- on parcels that are at risk of soil erosion or runoff as identified in the Farm Environment Record (FER)
- on historic or archaeological features identified in your HEFER or FER
- from 1 January 2019, on land already receiving funding for Ecological Focus Areas (EFAs) declared for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS)

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It provides nesting sites for lapwing on arable land. The plots can also benefit other declining farmland birds, brown hare and some important arable plants.

If successful there will be:

- lapwing using plots for nesting and raising their young
- other farmland birds, brown hare and arable plants on the plot areas

## Requirements

- create individual plots that are a minimum of 1ha and a maximum of 5ha in size, in fields which must be a minimum of 5ha (or 10ha if woodland forms at least a quarter of the field boundary)
- plots may be in a fixed location in or rotated around eligible fields
- create the cultivated plots by 20 March
- plots must be at least 100m away from woods, in-field and hedgerow trees, buildings, overhead power-lines, main roads and public rights of way, and at least 200m away from wind turbines
- where natural regeneration covers more than 70% of the plot by 30 April, restore suitable bare-ground nesting habitat making sure first that no nesting birds are present on the plots. retain cultivated areas until 31 July

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the plots

## Related Mid Tier options and supplements

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- [OR3 – Organic conversion – rotational land](#)
- [OR4 – Organic conversion - horticulture](#)
- [OT3 – Organic land management – rotational land](#)
- [OT4 – Organic land management – horticulture](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

### **Pick the right location**

Research shows that plots should be located:

- on level or slightly sloping ground
- next to extensively managed grassland where lapwings can feed their chicks
- on arable fields of at least 5ha, or 10ha if woodland forms at least a quarter of the field boundary
- away from waterlogged areas or land with weeds such as black-grass, wild oats or sterile brome
- at least 100m away from woods, in-field and hedgerow trees, buildings, overhead power-lines, main roads and public rights of way
- at least 200m away from wind turbines

This option can be used in a sequence with basic overwinter stubble to provide a continuity of habitat for species such as skylark and corn bunting.

### **How to establish the plots**

Plots can be established by cultivation or spraying to create the fallow.

On heavier soils, plots can be ploughed the previous autumn and allowed to weather down to provide suitable nesting conditions in early spring.

### **Managing the plots**

Machinery carrying out day to day farm operations such as spraying and fertilising can travel over these plots provided that the machinery keeps to the tramlines and is switched off when doing so.

Plots and plot tramlines should be checked for signs of nests prior to such travel taking place.

## **Nesting plots for stone curlews**

There are specific areas in England where stone curlews are the target farmland bird for nesting plots. These plots and their specific management requirements will be available under Higher Tier.



## **AB6: Enhanced overwinter stubble**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the enhanced overwinter stubble option.

### **How much will be paid**

£436 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Whole or part parcel

Rotational

Only on stubble that follows the harvest of:

- cereals (not maize)
- oilseed rape
- linseed

### **Where this option cannot be used**

- on parcels at risk of soil erosion or runoff, as identified on the Farm Environment Record (FER)
- from 1 January 2019, on land already receiving funding for Ecological Focus Areas (EFAs) declared for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS)

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It provides important winter food sources for seed-eating birds, spring and summer foraging and nesting habitat for other farmland birds and undisturbed habitat for other farmland wildlife including many pollinators.

If successful there will be:

- naturally occurring arable plants providing seed and forage during winter, spring and summer
- farmland birds and pollinating insects using the winter stubble and spring fallow area
- only low populations of blackgrass plants in the late spring that need targeted spraying

## Requirements

- retain the stubble and any subsequent regeneration until 31 July of the following year after harvest
- return the stubble to the farm rotation from 1 August each year

Do not:

- use pre-harvest desiccants
- apply fertilisers or manures to the stubble
- apply lime to the stubble
- apply pesticides to the stubble, except herbicides to control problem grass weeds by spraying the affected area from 15 May
- top or graze

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- location of option submitted with your annual claim

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

## Related Mid Tier options and supplements

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- [OR3 – Organic conversion – rotational land](#)
- [OT3 – Organic land management – rotational land](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

### **Pick the right location**

This option can be used on most soil types but ideally choose a location with:

- low levels of blackgrass or without a thistle problem as this avoids the need to spray after 15 May and lets arable flora set seed in late spring to early summer
- arable plants in the soil seedbank, which provide natural insect-rich habitats for foraging farmland birds

### **Block sizes or plots**

Spread enhanced stubble widely across the farm to help connect farmland wildlife with other farm habitats, and to provide some benefits for blackgrass control later in the season.

Make sure this option is planned into the farm rotation by selecting enough appropriately sized fields with a low blackgrass burden.

### **Rotational management**

Remember that the stubble should be in place from harvest until at least 31 December in year 5 of the agreement, after which time it can be returned to the rotation.

## **AB7: Whole crop cereals**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the whole crop cereals option.

### **How much will be paid**

£495 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on whole or part parcels on a rotational basis on:

- arable land
- temporary grassland

### **Where this option cannot be used**

On parcels at risk of soil erosion or runoff, as identified on the Farm Environment Record (FER)

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It provides a valuable seed source in grass-dominated areas, from any unripe spilt grain after harvest and from the stubble in winter. It also delivers resource protection benefits when compared to maize.

If successful there will be:

- areas of open crop growth
- a crop structure supporting a range of declining arable plants and other broad-leaved species
- plants providing summer foraging for declining and localised farmland birds, small mammals and pollinator species such as bees and other beneficial insects
- a weedy stubble providing over-wintering habitat for insects and seed-eating farmland birds

## Requirements

You must:

- establish a cereal crop (not maize) between February and April every year
- harvest as whole crop cereals - this means you must harvest the crop whole as grain and straw and remove from the field
- retain the stubble from harvest until 15 February

Do not:

- apply any herbicides except those on the list of permitted active ingredients – see the [Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option](#) section
- apply any insecticides between 15 March and the following harvest
- apply any fertilisers, manures or lime to the stubble
- top or graze

### Keeping records

On your annual payment claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- photographs of the stubble area

## Related Mid Tier options and supplements

You can locate the following options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [HS3 – Reduced-depth, non-inversion cultivation on historic and archaeological features](#)
- [HS9 – Restricted depth crop establishment to protect archaeology under an arable rotation](#)
- [OR3 – Organic conversion – rotational land](#)
- [OT3 – Organic land management – rotational land](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### **Stubbles in the rotation**

The best overwinter stubbles come from spring-sown crops, especially barley and those that receive limited herbicide. In addition, the spring crop following these stubbles can benefit farmland wildlife, especially if it is combined with another arable option.

For example, a low-input spring crop can provide habitats for spring-germinating arable plants, as well as nesting and feeding habitat for birds and brown hares.

### **Managing the whole crop option**

You can enhance whole crop cereal stubbles by broadcasting beneficial seed and nectar-producing plants, such as mustard and fodder radish, on small areas during or after harvest up to a maximum of 10% of the total whole crop stubble area. This will provide additional feeding and foraging value.

You can also use the stubbles as areas for supplementary feeding when they are next to winter bird food plots.

### **Rotational management**

Remember that stubbles should be in place from harvest to at least 31 December in year 5 of the agreement, after which you can return it to the rotation.

### **Managing AB7 for priority seed-eating farmland birds**

The AB7 whole crop cereals option can be very successful in supporting priority seed-eating birds such as circl buntings. Delaying harvest as late as possible is beneficial but you must still harvest it as a whole crop cereal.

### **Permitted active ingredients**

You can use the following herbicide active ingredients:

- Amidosulfuron

- Clodinafop-propargyl
- Fenoxaprop-P-ethyl
- Pinoxaden
- Tri-allate

Please note: the permitted active ingredients cannot necessarily be used on all eligible crops within options AB7, AB10 and AB14. It is your responsibility to confirm whether herbicides are approved for use on the affected crop. Always use pesticides in full accordance with the product label conditions of use.

## **Further information**

See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **AB8: Flower-rich margins and plots**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the flower-rich margins and plots option.

### **How much will be paid**

£539 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on whole or part parcels on:

- arable land
- temporary grassland
- bush orchards

### **Where this option cannot be used**

- Adjacent to Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSIs) or other botanically valuable sites as identified on the Environmental Information Map
- On land already receiving funding for Ecological Focus Areas (EFAs) declared for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS)

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

Flower-rich grass margins or plots provide important habitat and foraging sites for invertebrates (including wild pollinators) and birds.

If successful, there will be:

- an abundant supply of pollen and nectar-rich flowers throughout the summer
- pollinating and beneficial insects including bumblebees, solitary bees, butterflies and hoverflies using these flowers
- farmland birds such as yellowhammers foraging within or on the edges of the margins and plots



- annual production of flowers for the length of the agreement

## Requirements

You must:

- establish flower-rich margins and plots by sowing a seed mix which contains a minimum of 4 grass species and 10 flower species between 1 March and 15 September
- sow the flower species component at a minimum seed rate of 2 kg/ha with no individual flower species exceeding 25% of the total flower species component by weight. The grass component must not exceed 90% of the total seed mix by weight.

In the first 12 months after sowing you are allowed to regularly cut to help the sown species to establish.

You can find more details on what to sow in the [Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option](#) section.

When flower rich margins and plots are fully established (typically from the second spring after sowing) you must manage as follows:

- if plant growth is more than 15cm in height before 31 March, cut to achieve a plant height of between 5cm and 10cm from 1 April
- cut or graze 90% of the margin/plot area each year between 15 August and 31 October to leave a plant height of between 10cm and 20cm - leave 10% of the area uncut or ungrazed
- always remove or shred cuttings to prevent weed ingress and patches of dead material developing

## Keeping records

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- seed invoices
- field operations [at the parcel level](#), including associated invoices
- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels
- photographs of the margin or plot

We may ask to see these at any point during your agreement, this could be as part of an administrative check or during an inspection.

## Related Mid Tier options and supplements

You can locate the following options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [OR3 – Organic conversion – rotational land](#)
- [OR4 – Organic conversion – horticulture](#)
- [OR5 – Organic conversion – top fruit](#)
- [OT3 – Organic land management – rotational land](#)
- [OT4 – Organic land management – horticulture](#)
- [OT5 – Organic land management – top fruit](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### Pick the right location

You cannot use this option adjacent to SSSIs or other botanically valuable sites, as there is potential for contamination of natural plant communities with the sown species. Avoid fields (or parts of fields) in such locations.

Use lower yielding areas if they have a sunny aspect, or face south or south-southwest. Avoid planting under overhanging trees, next to tall hedges or on land facing north or east. Leave access to surrounding crops to allow for management.

### Block and plot sizes

Wide margins and big blocks let insects move to safety when you are spraying fields. Spacing 5 patches of 0.5ha evenly within 100ha meets the food needs of many pollinators.

### What to sow

The seed mix should contain at least 4 grass and 10 flower species such as those listed in the table below (other species not listed here can also be included):

Grasses

Flower species

---

common bent

agrimony

---

creeping bent

bird's-foot trefoil

---

crested dog's-tail

common knapweed

---

quaking grass

common sorrel

---

rough-stalked meadow grass

common vetch

---

sheep's fescue

cowslip

---

slender red fescue

field scabious

---

smaller cat's-tail

greater burnet

---

smooth-stalked meadow grass

greater knapweed

---

sweet vernal grass

hedge bedstraw

---

Grasses

Flower species

---

yellow oat-grass

kidney vetch

---

lady's bedstraw

---

meadow buttercup

---

meadow crane's-bill

---

meadow vetchling

---

musk mallow

---

ox-eye daisy

---

pignut

---

ribwort plantain

---

rough hawkbit

---

Grasses

Flower species

---

salad burnet

---

self heal

---

tufted vetch

---

wild carrot

---

wild marjoram

---

wild red clover

---

wild thyme

---

yarrow

---

yellow rattle

---

Sow at 15-20 kg/ha. The lower seed rate is appropriate on light/medium soils and the higher seed rate appropriate on heavier soils.

## **Existing flower-rich plots and margins**

Use existing suitable flower-rich plots or margins instead of re-sowing, provided they offer a variety of flowers that deliver a rich supply of pollen and nectar during the summer.

## **When to sow**

To meet option requirements, establish the mix in spring or autumn of year 1 of the agreement.

## **Controlling weeds**

Top emerging flowers and weeds at least 3 times in year 1 for spring sowings and at least twice in year 2 for autumn sowings. Regular topping prevents weeds smothering the slow-growing flowers so that all sown species establish successfully and toppings can be left.

Before the beginning of April each year make sure vegetation is short enough to allow flower species to grow without competition from dominant grasses. Cut and remove summer growth between 15 August and 31 October to help reduce soil fertility and boost flower numbers in subsequent years.

Always leave 10% of the option area uncut or ungrazed to provide overwinter nesting and safe refuges for pollinators and other invertebrates.

Remember to retain flower-rich margins and plots until at least 31 December in year 5 of the agreement.

## **Further information**

See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **AB9: Winter bird food**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the winter bird food option.

### **How much will be paid**

£640 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on whole or part parcels in rotation on:

- arable land
- temporary grassland
- bush orchards

### **Where this option cannot be used**

- On organic parcels or land in conversion
- On land already receiving funding for Ecological Focus Areas (EFAs) declared for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS)

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It provides important food resources for farmland birds, especially in autumn and winter.

If successful there will be:

- an abundant and available supply of small seeds during the autumn and winter months
- farmland birds eating the seeds from October and beneficial insects including bumblebees, solitary bees, butterflies and hoverflies using the flowers during the summer

## Requirements

You must:

- make sure blocks or strips are at least 6 metres (m) wide and a minimum of 0.4ha in size (the maximum individual plot size is 5ha)
- establish by sowing a seed mix which contains at least 6 seed bearing crops between 15 February and 15 June. Seed mixes may contain a maximum of 3 of the following cereal crops - barley, oats, rye, triticale and wheat. No individual crop group must exceed 90% of the total mix by weight
- re-establish one year mixes annually and two year mixes every other year, to maintain seed production
- re-sow winter bird plots that fail to establish
- keep winter bird food plots until 15 February each year

You can find more advice on what to sow/re-sow in the [Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option](#) section.

### Keeping records

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- seed invoices
- field operations [at the parcel level](#), including associated invoices
- photographs of the blocks or strips

We may ask to see these at any point during your agreement, this could be as part of an administrative check or during an inspection.

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### Pick the right location

Use this option on most areas of the farm, but mixtures work best in sunny locations and on fertile sites.

Avoid planting underneath overhanging trees or next to shading woodland, as this leads to poorer establishment, growth and seed production.



You should place winter bird food mixes next to a field edge but they can extend into the field. Leave access to surrounding crops to allow for management.

### **Block and plot sizes**

Creating wider and bigger areas of winter bird food allows more seeds to remain undiscovered for longer, which extends their value well into winter. It also reduces the edge effect from adjacent land, such as fertiliser or pesticide drift.

Smaller areas tend to suffer from birds eating all the food within a short time.

### **What to sow**

Sow plants that will provide an extended supply of seeds for farmland birds from autumn into late winter.

Annual mixtures can include a range of cereal, brassica or other small-seeded crops such as:

- dwarf sunflower
- fodder radish
- gold of pleasure
- linseed
- mustard
- quinoa
- red millet
- spring barley
- spring oats
- spring triticale
- spring wheat
- white millet

Include biennial crops such as kale, stubble turnip or teasel in 2-year mixtures.

Make sure a single crop group, such as cereals or brassicas, is not more than 90% of the total seed mix by weight. The table below shows the crops most commonly sown in winter bird food seed mixes.

Crop group	Crops most commonly sown in winter bird food seed mixes
------------	---

---

Cereal	Barley
--------	--------

---

	Oats
--	------

---

	Red millet
--	------------

---

	Rye
--	-----

---

	Triticale
--	-----------

---

	Wheat
--	-------

---

	White millet
--	--------------

---

Brassica	Fodder radish
----------	---------------

---

	Forage rape
--	-------------

---

Crop  
group

Crops most commonly sown in winter bird food seed  
mixes

---

Gold of pleasure

---

Kale

---

Mustard

---

Oilseed rape

---

Stubble turnip

---

Other

Buckwheat

---

Chicory

---

Dwarf sunflower

---

Linseed

---

Teasel

---

To minimise the build-up of diseases, pests and weeds over time consider alternating between sowing cereal and brassica-based mixes on non-rotational plots every few years.

### **When and how to sow**

Establish the plot between 1 March and 15 June, but ideally between mid-March and early June.

Create a fine and firm seedbed with seed sown at a depth between 1.5 centimetres (cm) and 2.5cm. Moisture and warmth will help any brassicas establish quickly to protect against flea beetle damage.

### **Managing the option**

Apply nitrogen at a minimum of 50 kilograms (kg) per ha to create sufficient growth to smother annual weeds and produce plenty of seed. You can use herbicides in some winter bird food mixes; check with a BASIS-qualified agronomist. Rotate this option to a new site of clean ground if weed problems start to build up.

Remember that winter bird food should be in place until at least 31 December in year 5 of the agreement.

### **Further information**

See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **AB10: Unharvested cereal headland**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the unharvested cereal headland option.

### **How much will be paid**

£640 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on whole or part parcels in rotation on:

- arable land
- temporary grassland

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It provides an important food source for farmland birds throughout the year and insects in the summer, and provides both grain and seeding arable plants in winter.

If successful there will be:

- areas of open crop growth, allowing access for foraging farmland birds
- a crop structure supporting a range of declining arable plants and other broad-leaved plants
- plants providing summer and winter foraging for declining and localised farmland birds (especially grey partridge), mammals and important farmland pollinator species, such as bees and other beneficial insects
- strips or areas of weedy unharvested cereals providing over-wintering habitat for insects and food for seed-eating farmland birds

### **Requirements**

You must:

- establish a cereal crop (not maize) between 1 February and 30 April

- manage as strips or plots at least 6m wide on a part or whole field basis
- create an open crop structure by managing the crop to deliver between 450 and 700 fertile tillers per square metre
- keep the unharvested cereal headland until 15 February

Do not:

- apply any herbicides except those on the list of permitted active ingredients, see the [Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option](#) section
- apply any fertilisers, manures or lime
- apply any insecticides after 15 March

### **Keeping records**

On your annual claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- records at parcel level of field operations, including seed invoices

### **Related Mid Tier options and supplements**

You can locate the following options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [HS3 – Reduced-depth, non-inversion cultivation on historic and archaeological features](#)
- [HS9 – Restricted depth crop establishment to protect archaeology under an arable rotation](#)
- [OR3 – Organic conversion – rotational land](#)
- [OT3 – Organic land management – rotational land](#)

### **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item..

#### **Pick the right location**

This option can be successful on most soil types but ideally choose a location with low levels of thistles or problem weeds such as blackgrass.

This will help the beneficial arable plants in the soil seedbank to grow without competition and provide a range of valuable habitats during the growing season. It will also allow the arable flora to set seed during the early summer period and retains the insect-rich habitat for foraging farmland birds.

## **Sowing the crop**

It is important to make sure that the crop delivering the unharvested headland is not too dense, which restricts the foraging opportunities for farmland birds such as grey partridge. Managing the seed rate by considering drilling date, seed thousand grain weight, varietal tillering capacity and soil conditions will help achieve the required open crop structure.

## **Using herbicides**

The objective for this option is to encourage the natural populations of arable plants that support both insects and farmland birds. Applying broad-spectrum herbicide during the cropping season and non-selective herbicides to help with harvest stops this from happening. As a result, only a limited number of herbicide actives are permitted in this option.

## **Permitted active ingredients**

The following herbicide active ingredients can be used:

- Amidosulfuron
- Clodinafop-propargyl
- Fenoxaprop-P-ethyl
- Pinoxaden
- Tri-allate

Please note: the permitted active ingredients cannot necessarily be used on all eligible crops within options AB7, AB10 and AB14. It is your responsibility to confirm whether herbicides are approved for use on the affected crop. Always use pesticides in full accordance with the product label conditions of use.

## Further information

See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.



## **AB11: Cultivated areas for arable plants**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the cultivated areas for arable plants option.

### **How much will be paid**

£532 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Whole or part parcel

Rotational

Only on arable land:

- where evidence or records exist for important arable plants ([Plantlife IAPA](#) classification 4 and above – see Appendix II, page 19). These records can either be historic (within the last 40 years) or from recent arable plant survey results
- where arable plant records do not exist but the land is part of the Wild Pollinator and Farm Wildlife Package

### **Where this option cannot be used**

- from 1 January 2019, on land already receiving funding for Ecological Focus Areas (EFAs) declared for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS)

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It creates uncropped, cultivated areas for a wide range of scarce and declining arable plants, and provides areas of less densely vegetated ground for insects and other invertebrates, and summer foraging habitats for declining farmland birds.

If successful there will be:

- vulnerable species of arable plants germinating and completing their life cycle, which will increase their populations over time
- foraging insects such as bumblebees, solitary bees and hoverflies visiting flowers and the bare ground created
- declining farmland birds, such as grey partridge and turtle dove, foraging in the arable plant area

## Requirements

- create the fallow margins or plots annually
- cultivate in the spring between February and April or in the autumn between September and November - work the soil sufficiently to produce a fine surface across the whole area

Do not:

- disturb cultivated areas before 31 August
- apply any fertilisers or manures
- apply any lime
- use any pesticides, except for herbicides to weed-wipe or spot-treat for the control of injurious weeds, invasive non-natives, nettles or bracken

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- records at parcel level of your field operations, including any associated invoices

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

## Related Mid Tier options and supplements

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- [HS3 – Reduced-depth, non-inversion cultivation on historic and archaeological features](#)
- [HS9 – Restricted depth crop establishment to protect archaeology under an arable rotation](#)

- [OR3 – Organic conversion – rotational land](#)
- [OR4 – Organic conversion - horticulture](#)
- [OT3 – Organic land management – rotational land](#)
- [OT4 – Organic land management – horticulture](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

### **Pick the right location**

Where sites have important arable plant species present or where they could be released from the seed bank (historic or local records will help identify them), this option can deliver tailored management for them. The Plantlife Important Arable Plant Areas (IAPA) handbook referenced above scores individual species: if there are records of plants which score 4 or above this option is available.

The richest areas for arable plants are at the edges of fields, adjacent to old farm tracks and boundary features, so margins up to 6m wide will work best here.

Fields with a long history of cultivation, together with old grass margins that were previously arable, should also be considered.

Some of the more common species of arable plants are good ‘indicator’ species and indicate the potential of an area to hold rich arable flora in the seed bank, so it is important to focus on these sites, as well as those containing the rarest species.

### **Managing your plots**

Rotating the cultivated areas around the farm can help control and prevent a build-up of undesirable weed species.

Varying cultivation timing and depth can also help control undesirable species while providing suitable conditions for germinating arable plants in the spring and autumn.

Topping at a height of around 30cm to prevent seeding of undesirable weed species such as wild oats and creeping thistle is allowed during the

growing season, as many of the desirable arable plant species are shorter than this. Where this weed burden develops on more than 40% of the area, targeted broad-spectrum herbicides can be used once annual species have set seed (normally in September).

If grass weeds become a problem, periodically (one year in 3) creating a stale autumn seedbed and cultivating in mid-March can help control them. This is particularly relevant on heavy clay sites. Ploughing can also be useful for controlling grass weeds.

Use this option as part of a sequence of arable options which can occupy the same area of land at different times of the year, such as overwinter stubbles.

## **AB12: Supplementary winter feeding for farmland birds**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the supplementary winter feeding for farmland birds option.

### **How much will be paid**

£632 per tonne for every 2 hectares (ha) of winter bird food.

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on whole or part-parcels in rotation on:

- arable land
- temporary grassland
- bush orchards

Only where a qualifying area of [AB9 - Winter bird food](#) is included in the agreement (2ha of AB9 winter bird food allows 500kg per annum of supplementary feeding, at each of 2 separate feeding stations).

### **Where this option cannot be used**

On organic parcels or land in conversion.

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

#### **Winter supplementary feeding**

It provides important food resources for farmland birds in late winter and early spring on arable and mixed farms, by supplementing crops of winter bird food with additional seed, such as cereal, oilseed and specialised grains. It gives the birds food through the late winter period when seed is in short supply (known as the hungry gap) and as they enter the breeding season.

If successful there will be seed-eating farmland birds using the feeding areas from December to April, including:

- yellowhammer
- grey partridge
- tree sparrow
- corn bunting
- linnet
- turtle dove (seen during the spring and summer)

Target birds will be seen more frequently on the farm in the spring and there will be increased breeding success there.

### **Summer supplementary feeding**

You can also use this option in combination with the [SP9 Threatened species supplement](#) to deliver summer supplementary feeding for turtle doves in priority areas.

You can find more information on how to carry out summer supplementary feeding for turtle doves in the [Where to use this option](#), [Requirements](#) and [Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option](#) sections for [SP9](#).

### **Requirements**

You must:

- make sure the winter supplementary feeding mix must include both cereals (not maize) and other small seeds.
- make sure the other small seeds component is a minimum of 30% of the total mix by weight and contain at least 3 of the following, with no individual species being more than 50% of the total small seed component by weight:
  - canary seed
  - linseed
  - oilseed rape
  - red millet
  - sunflower hearts

- white millet
- spread the winter supplementary feeding mix at a rate of 25kg once a week for 20 weeks between 1 December until 30 April, at each of 2 separate feeding locations - you can vary the amount to be fed by up to 5kg per week to match demand as necessary
- select feeding areas that are firm and free-draining, such as farm tracks or hard standing areas, and in close proximity to enhanced overwinter stubbles, game cover or wild bird seed mixtures

For advice on what to feed, see the [Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option](#) section.

Do not:

- use hoppers to supply more than 10% of the total amount of feed provided during the specified feeding period
- use tailings (small seeds and chaff removed from the harvested crop) as supplementary feed

### **Keeping records**

On your annual claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- details of the mixture used (weight of components and cost)
- dates of feeding
- method of feeding (hopper or spreading)
- amount of feed
- the location of the feeding areas

### **Related Mid Tier options**

You can locate the following options on the same area as this option:

- [SP9 Threatened species supplement](#)

### **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

## **Pick the right location**

When planning which feeding sites to use, make sure they can be reached regularly. This is especially important if bad weather will cause problems travelling to them during the winter.

It is important for the health of the birds benefiting from the supplementary feeding that you maintain clean and healthy feeding areas. It's very important to rotate feeding sites around the farm, but each site should be near existing sown resources.

## **Manage how and when to supplementary feed**

Having 2ha of [AB9 Winter bird food](#) in the agreement allows you to spread 1 tonne of supplementary feed each year, split equally between 2 feeding stations, so 500kg per year per feeding station. Where less than 2ha of AB9 is put into the agreement, you can include a pro-rata amount of AB12. For example, the minimum area allowed of AB9 is 0.4ha. This would allow you to include 200kg of AB12, spread equally between two feeding stations, so 100kg per year per feeding station.

You should start supplementary feeding before the sown winter bird food runs out. This keeps farmland birds using the areas and prevents a dip in their winter condition.

Distribute enough supplementary food to match the birds' consumption, so that seed is not left uneaten. This will make sure that a fresh supply of food is maintained, which will keep birds healthy and reduce any rodent problems. This is particularly important when ground feeding, or if hoppers are left unprotected.

Where possible stagger feeding at different feeding stations to reduce the risk of seeds being left uneaten. Staggered feeding can also reduce non target species such as rodents, crows and pigeons from eating the supplementary feed. Do not leave the feed in piles – make sure it is well dispersed.

Prepare to be flexible, so that if the winter period is extended through bad weather, you can adjust the amount of feeding planned and extend for any additional days or weeks that are needed. This makes sure that birds are not left with a 'hungry gap' before the natural seed resources on the farm become available.



## **What seed mix to use**

The following example mix will supply a range of seeds readily taken by most farmland birds:

- 70% wheat
- 10% white millet
- 10% oilseed rape
- 5% canary seed
- 5% sunflower hearts

## **Further information**

See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **AB13: Brassica fodder crop**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the brassica fodder crop option.

### **How much will be paid**

£100 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Whole or part parcel

Rotational

Only on:

- arable land
- temporary grassland

### **Where this option cannot be used**

- on parcels identified as being at medium to high erosion risk on the Farm Environment Record (FER)
- on parcels immediately adjacent to a watercourse
- on historic or archaeological features identified in your HEFER or FER

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It provides foraging sites for seed-eating birds in pastoral areas where broad-leaved plants can persist in the crop and set seed.

If successful, there will be:

- a weedy fodder crop during the summer and autumn
- an open grazed stubble which provides some winter cover and feeding areas for farmland birds

## Requirements

- establish a whole or part field of fodder brassica or fodder root crop before 31 July
- commence grazing after 15 October
- return the stubble to the farm rotation from 15 February

Do not:

- apply any herbicides or insecticides

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

All applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- map showing the location of watercourses - these can be marked on any map including the Farm Environment Record (FER)

## Related Mid Tier options and supplements

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- [OR3 – Organic conversion – rotational land](#)
- [OT3 – Organic land management – rotational land](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

## **Managing livestock in the option area**

As set out in the scheme requirements make sure that grazing on the option does not create poaching or soil erosion. The open structure of the fodder crop increases the risk of both occurring when it is being grazed. Supplementary feeding could also result in poaching and soil compaction, so should be avoided.

## **Rotational management**

Remember that stubbles should be in place from harvest until at least 31 December in year 5 of the agreement, after which time it can be returned to the rotation.

## **AB14: Harvested low input cereal**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the harvested low input cereal option.

### **How much will be paid**

£266 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier, on whole or part parcels in rotation, on:

- arable land
- temporary grassland

### **Where this option cannot be used**

After the following break crops:

- oilseed rape
- potatoes
- beans
- peas

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

An open-structured cereal crop provides summer foraging sites for declining and localised farmland birds and habitat for brown hare, rare arable plants and pollinator species, such as bees and beneficial insects.

If successful there will be:

- areas of open crop growth suitable for crop nesting birds such as skylarks, and a range of declining arable plants and other broadleaved species

- brown hare and foraging farmland birds such as yellowhammer and reed bunting using the crop
- important farmland pollinator species, such as bumblebees, solitary bees, butterflies and hoverflies, visiting the flowers in these areas

## Requirements

You must:

- establish a cereal crop (not maize) each year between 1 October and 30 April. Manage as strips or plots at least 6m wide on a part or whole field basis
- create an open crop structure by managing the crop to deliver between 450 and 700 fertile tillers per square metre

Do not:

- harvest the crop before 15 July
- apply any herbicides except those on the list of permitted active ingredients - see the [Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option](#) section
- apply insecticides after 15 March

## Keeping records

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- records at parcel level of field operations, including any associated invoices

## Related Mid Tier options and supplements

You can locate the following options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [HS3 – Reduced-depth, non-inversion cultivation on historic and archaeological features](#)
- [HS9 – Restricted depth crop establishment to protect archaeology under an arable rotation](#)
- [OR3 – Organic conversion – rotational land](#)
- [OT3 – Organic land management – rotational land](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### **Pick the right location**

Sites with low levels of pernicious weeds such as couch, blackgrass, brome, ryegrass and wild oats are best, although you may need to use this option on sites with higher weed burdens if important populations of target plants or birds are present.

### **Managing the crop**

Using lower seed rates between 50kg per ha and 100kg per ha will help make sure that the crop is not too dense. It will allow broadleaved plants to establish and provide foraging options for fledged farmland bird chicks.

There are a range of cereals that you can use for this option, including wheat, barley, triticale, oats and rye. Do not use maize, sorghum of any kind or millet as the cereal in this option – the herbicide and fertiliser management and dense ground-covering traits are not suitable to deliver the outcomes of this option.

### **Permitted active ingredients**

The following herbicide active ingredients can be used:

- Amidosulfuron
- Clodinafop-propargyl
- Fenoxaprop-P-ethyl
- Pinoxaden
- Tri-allate

Please note: the permitted active ingredients cannot necessarily be used on all eligible crops within options AB7, AB10 and AB14. It is your responsibility to confirm whether herbicides are approved for use on the affected crop. Always use pesticides in full accordance with the product label conditions of use.

## Further information

See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.



## **AB15: Two year sown legume fallow**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the two year sown legume fallow option.

### **How much will be paid**

£522 hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on whole or part parcels in rotation, but only on:

- arable land
- temporary grassland

### **Where this option cannot be used**

- On organic parcels or land in conversion
- On land already receiving funding for Ecological Focus Areas (EFAs) declared for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS)

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It provides food for farmland wildlife, such as pollen and nectar for pollinators, and invertebrate chick food for farmland birds. It can also be a useful part of a rotation aimed at reducing blackgrass populations.

If successful there will be:

- a reduction in flowering blackgrass and an abundant supply of sown pollen and nectar-rich flowers between early and late summer in year 3 and year 5 of the agreement
- pollinating and beneficial insects such as bumblebees, solitary bees, butterflies and hoverflies using these flowers
- some adult farmland birds and chicks foraging in and around the sown fallow between April and July

## Requirements

You must:

- establish by sowing a seed mix containing a minimum of 6 flower species as soon as possible after harvest and before 15 September, in year 1 and year 3 of your agreement
- cut at least twice during the first 12 months after sowing to stop blackgrass heading. You can only cut between 1 March and 31 October
- keep until 15 August in the second summer after sowing

In the second year after establishment you are allowed to cut between 1 March and 15 May to control blackgrass.

You can find advice on what to sow in the [Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option](#) section.

Do not:

- graze or conserve forage

### Keeping records

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- records of field operations [at the parcel level](#), including any associated invoices

We may ask to see these at any point during your agreement, this could be as part of an administrative check or during an inspection.

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### Pick the right location

It works best where some blackgrass germinates after cultivation in the autumn and more can grow from the seedbank during the winter and following spring. Mow the area as often as is needed to prevent the blackgrass from seeding.

## Size of blocks or plots

Plan this option into the rotation, selecting fields on a part or whole-field scale. This will give most benefits for blackgrass reduction and biodiversity.

Spread the legume fallow areas widely across the farm to help connect insects with other farm habitats.

## What to sow

### Agreements starting on or before 1 January 2020

In the autumn, sow a mixture (based on the suggestions below) at an overall seed rate of around 30 kilograms (kg) per ha, and retain for 2 years before re-establishment:

Flower species	% inclusion rate
Intermediate or late perennial ryegrass	66
Red clover	15
Common vetch	10
Bird's-foot trefoil	7
Common knapweed	2

If soils are dry at sowing, substitute some of the ryegrass with cocksfoot (up to 30%) or timothy to help to establish ground cover more quickly.

## Agreements starting on or after 1 January 2021

In the autumn, sow a mixture (based on the suggestions below) and retain for 2 years before re-establishment:

Flower species	% inclusion rate
Alsike clover	10
Bird's-foot trefoil	5
Black medick	5
Common vetch	50
Lucerne	15
Red clover	15
Total	100

Sow the seed mix at 15-20 kg/ha with the lower seed rate appropriate on light/medium soils and the higher seed rate appropriate on heavier soils.

You can also include grasses such as cocksfoot, perennial ryegrass or timothy in seed mix to help smother blackgrass and other competitive grass weeds.

## **When to sow**

Establish the legume fallow as soon as possible after harvest in year 1 and year 3 of the agreement (ideally by the end of August).

## **When to cut**

Cut at least twice in the first year following the autumn sowing to control emerging blackgrass. But be prepared for subsequent cuts to be as close as 3 weeks apart as blackgrass re-heads more rapidly after each cut.

Cutting before the end of March in year 2 controls any remaining blackgrass, before the legume fallow mixture grows away rapidly from April.

The aim of this option is to provide an abundant supply of pollen and nectar-rich flowers, and this cannot be achieved if the option area is grazed, or if fertilisers and sprays are used.

## **Return the option area to crop production**

Spray the legume fallow mix with a non-selective herbicide if needed, before the area is cultivated for the next crop.

Return the area to the farm rotation from 15 August.

## **Further information**

See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **AB16: Autumn sown bumblebird mix**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the autumn sown bumblebird mix option.

### **How much will be paid**

£550 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier, on whole or part parcels in rotation on:

- arable land
- temporary grassland
- bush orchards

### **Where this option cannot be used**

- On land already receiving funding for Ecological Focus Areas (EFAs) declared for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS)

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It provides important food resources for farmland birds and a range of nectar feeding insects, including butterflies and bumblebees, on arable and mixed farms.

If successful there will be:

- an abundant supply of small seeds during the winter months
- farmland birds such as tree sparrow and corn bunting eating these seeds
- an abundant supply of pollen and nectar-rich flowers between early and late summer
- pollinating and beneficial insects including bumblebees, solitary bees, butterflies and hoverflies using these flowers

## Requirements

You must:

- make sure blocks or strips must be at least 6m wide and a minimum of 0.4ha in size - the maximum individual plot size is 5ha
- establish as soon as possible after harvest and before 15 September, in year 1 and year 3 of your agreement by sowing a seed mix containing a minimum of six flower species and six seed-bearing crops
- make sure seed mixes contain a maximum of three of the following cereal crops:
  - barley
  - oats
  - rye
  - triticale
  - wheat
- re-sow autumn sown bumblebird mix plots that fail to establish
- top the established mixture between mid-February and mid-March in the second spring after sowing, to promote legume flowering during early and mid-summer
- keep until 15 August in the second summer after sowing
- re-establish the mixture every 2 years to maintain seed and flower provision

For advice on what to sow and re-sow refer to the [Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option](#) section.

### Keeping records

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- photographs of the blocks or strips

### Related Mid Tier options and supplements

You can locate the following options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [OR3 – Organic conversion – rotational land](#)
- [OR4 – Organic conversion – horticulture](#)
- [OR5 – Organic conversion – top fruit](#)
- [OT3 – Organic land management – rotational land](#)
- [OT4 – Organic land management – horticulture](#)
- [OT5 – Organic land management – top fruit](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### **Pick the right location**

This option works well on most soil types and, as with conventional crops, there will be more seeds and flowers produced where you locate it on better ground. Ideally, pick sheltered sites that face south or west for maximum benefits to pollinators.

It also works on heavier soils where spring-sowing of winter bird food plots is difficult.

Avoid sites with high weed burdens to reduce competition from aggressive weeds such as thistles, blackgrass and sterile brome.

### **Size of blocks or plots**

Sow larger plots as they are easier to manage and provide food for seed-eating farmland birds longer into the winter. Creating wider, bigger blocks also helps insects to move to safety when neighbouring crops are treated.

### **What to sow**

Sow a mixture in the autumn based on the suggestions below, at an overall seed rate of around 50kg per ha and keep for 2 years before re-establishment.



Crop	kg/ha	Flower species	kg/ha
Winter triticale	20	Alsike clover	0.6
Winter wheat	20	Bird's-foot trefoil	0.6
Fodder radish	1	Common vetch	4
Gold of pleasure	2	Crimson clover	3
Kale	2	Lucerne	0.6
Winter linseed	5	Phacelia	0.6
		Red clover	0.6
Total	50kg/ha	Total	10kg/ha

### **When to sow**

Establish the mixture as soon as possible after harvest in year 1 and year 3 of the agreement (ideally by 1 September).

Plots can receive 50kg per ha of nitrogen in the first spring after establishment to help increase seed production in the following winter.

## **When to cut**

Cut a few centimetres below the tops of the flowering plants in the spring of the second year to remove any overwinter seed plants. This allows flowering plants to develop with less competition.

The aim of this option is to provide an abundant supply of small seeds and an abundant supply of pollen and nectar-rich flowers, and this cannot be achieved if the option area is grazed.

## **Return the area to crop rotation**

The option area returns to the farm rotation on 15 August, which allows time to incorporate any legume biomass for healthier soils before drilling the next crop.

If a following spring crop is planned, the legume mix can be left in the ground until Jan/Feb/Mar of the crop sowing year to maximise the nutrient and soil conditioning benefits of the sown bumblebird plants.

## **Further information**

See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **AC1: Access capital items**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the access capital items item.

### **How much will be paid**

Up to 100% of actual cost.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Higher Tier.

Only for new structures.

Where this item cannot be used

- when the agreement holder is obliged to offer structures for public access to the holding
- to maintain existing structures

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

If successful there will be greater public accessibility of the countryside or enhanced educational visits.

### **Requirements**

- agree with Natural England a detailed specification for the item
- get at least 3 written quotations for the work, making sure they identify associated costs
- have Natural England agree the quote
- create, install and complete the access capital item according to the specification agreed with Natural England

Do not:

- carry out any construction work related to the item unless it has been approved by Natural England

## **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- evidence of demand and need for the access capital item, eg documentation from supporters, potential users and partner organisations
- photographs of site before works start
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is not available
- photographs of the completed work
- detailed specification document
- copies of any planning or other permission

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- quotes for completion of the work

If consent or permission is required, you will need to have this before you carry out any work. You will need to submit this consent with your payment claim. If you have already provided this with your application then you do not need to resubmit this with your claim.

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

## **AC2: Countryside educational access visits accreditation**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the countryside educational access visits accreditation item.

### **How much will be paid**

£175 once per agreement.

### **Where to use this item**

It is available for Higher Tier on agreements that contain:

- [ED1 - Educational access](#)

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

This allows one member from the agreement holding to go to a training course and become accredited at carrying out enhanced educational experiences.

### **Requirements**

You must:

- send one person from the holding to a [CEVAS training course](#)

### **Keeping records**

You must keep the following records and send a copy with your payment claim:

- a copy of the accreditation certificate

### **Further information**

You can find more information on the [CEVAS website](#).

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **BE1: Protection of in-field trees on arable land**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the protection of in-field trees on arable land option.

### **How much will be paid**

£420 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on part parcels, only on:

- arable land
- temporary grassland
- trees (dead or alive) at least 30cm diameter at breast height (DBH)

### **Where this option cannot be used**

On a group or line of 4 or more trees whose canopies overlap.

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

If successful, trees will be protected from agricultural operations and kept as important features in the local landscape. Tree roots will be protected from damage by cultivations with a fertiliser-free grass buffer. Undisturbed standing and fallen deadwood will provide habitat for invertebrates.

### **Requirements**

You must:

- protect trees from damage by livestock and wild animals
- make sure tree guards do not damage growing trees
- keep all fallen branches within the option area
- leave trees in place if they die or fall, and continue with the management requirements

In year 1 maintain or allow a grass sward to develop around each tree by natural regeneration.

Tree diameter at breast height (DBH)	Sward radius	Area per tree
30cm to 99cm	10m	0.03ha
100cm to 199cm	20m	0.12ha
200cm or more	30m	0.28ha

Once established, manage the sward:

- make sure that no more than 5% is covered in weeds or bare ground
- only cut to control woody growth

Do not:

- apply any fertilisers or manures
- apply any lime
- plough, cultivate or re-seed
- use supplementary feed
- harrow or roll
- use pesticides, except for herbicides to spot-treat or weed-wipe to control nettles, bracken, injurious weeds or invasive non-natives
- remove any tree limbs, including lower limbs, or mature ivy growth
- carry out any drainage works, including modifying existing drainage, without Natural England's written permission before any work takes place

## Keeping records

On your annual claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- the diameter at breast height (DBH) for each tree
- photographs of each tree entered into the option
- photographs of the sward buffer

## Related Mid Tier options

You can locate the following options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [OR3 - Organic conversion - rotational land](#)
- [OR4 - Organic conversion - horticulture](#)
- [OT3 - Organic land management - rotational land](#)
- [OT4 - Organic land management - horticulture](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### Storing fallen branches

Do not cut fallen branches into pieces, stack in piles:

- with one pile in a sunny spot and one in a shady spot
- not too high, to stop the timber drying out
- with as much timber as possible in contact with the ground

### Setting tree guards

Do not attach tree guards to the trees as this can damage them.



## **Using pesticides**

Avoid damaging the trees when spot-treating or weed-wiping. Use chemical as a last resort, as they can damage root fungi in the soil and trees depend on fungi for future good health.

## **Controlling livestock damage**

To prevent livestock damage:

- provide alternative shelter with water to attract animals away from trees
- fence off trees to stop animals rubbing and stripping bark or trampling the base

If you use fences, place them at the edge of the option area.

## **Further information**

See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **BE2: Protection of in-field trees on intensive grassland**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the protection of in-field trees on intensive grassland option.

### **How much will be paid**

£190 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on part parcels, only on:

- grassland receiving more than 100kg per ha of nitrogen a year in fertilisers or manures
- trees (dead or alive) at least 30cm diameter at breast height (DBH)

### **Where this option cannot be used**

On a group or line of 4 or more trees whose canopies overlap.

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

If successful, trees will be protected from agricultural operations and kept as important features in the local landscape. Tree roots will be protected from damage by cultivations with a fertiliser-free grass buffer. Undisturbed standing and fallen deadwood will provide habitat for invertebrates.

### **Requirements**

You must:

- protect trees from damage by livestock and wild animals
- make sure tree guards do not damage growing trees
- keep all fallen branches within the option area
- leave trees in place if they die or fall and continue with the management requirements

In year 1 maintain or allow a grass sward to develop around each tree by natural regeneration.

Tree diameter at breast height (DBH)	Sward radius	Area per tree
30cm to 99cm	10m	0.03ha
100cm to 199cm	20m	0.12ha
200cm or more	30m	0.28ha

Once established, maintain the sward:

- make sure that no more than 5% is covered in weeds or bare ground
- only cut to control woody growth

Do not:

- apply any fertilisers or manures
- apply any lime
- plough, cultivate or re-seed
- use supplementary feed
- harrow or roll
- use pesticides, except for herbicides to spot-treat or weed-wipe to control nettles, bracken, injurious weeds or invasive non-natives
- remove any tree limbs, including lower limbs, or mature ivy growth
- carry out any drainage works, including modifying existing drainage, without Natural England's written permission before any works take place

## Keeping records

On your annual claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- the diameter at breast height (DBH) for each tree
- photographs of each tree entered into the option
- photographs of the sward buffer

## Related Mid Tier options

You can locate the following options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### Storing fallen branches

Do not cut fallen branches into pieces but stack in piles:

- with one pile in a sunny spot and one in a shady spot
- not too high, to stop the timber drying out
- with as much timber as possible in contact with the ground

### Setting tree guards

Do not attach tree guards to the trees as this can damage them.

### Using pesticides

Avoid damaging the trees when spot-treating or weed-wiping. Use chemicals as a last resort, as they can damage root fungi in the soil and trees depend on fungi for future good health.

## **Controlling livestock damage**

To prevent livestock damage:

- provide alternative shelter with water to attract animals away from trees
- fence off trees to stop animals rubbing and stripping bark or trampling the base

If you use fences, place them at the edge of the option area.

## **Further information**

See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **BE3: Management of hedgerows**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the management of hedgerows option.

### **How much will be paid**

£8 per 100 metre (m) for 1 side of a hedge.

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on boundary lines of shrubs, which are:

- composed of woody plants with less than 2m between the ground and the base of the leafy layer
- over 20m long
- less than 5m wide between major woody stems at the base
- made up of at least 80% native shrubs

### **Where this option cannot be used**

- On features that are trees for most of their length
- In Mid Tier agreements, lengths of hedge managed under this option are not eligible for the capital item [BN5 - Hedgerow laying](#), [BN6 – Hedgerow coppicing](#) and [BN7 - Hedgerow gapping-up](#) but may be eligible for other capital item payments
- In Higher Tier agreements, lengths of hedge managed under this option are not eligible for the capital item [BN7 - Hedgerow gapping-up](#) but may be eligible for other capital item payments.

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

This item increases the availability of blossom for invertebrates. By allowing fruit and berries to ripen it provides food for overwintering birds. It also improves the structure and longevity of hedgerows.

If successful there will be:

- taller and wider hedges, with gaps forming less than 10% of the hedge length
- a mix of hedges of different heights and width across the farm
- production of 2 to 4 times the weight of berries when compared with hedges cut every year
- an increase in the blossom available to insect pollinators
- dense cover, which is important for successful breeding for a variety of wildlife
- an improvement in overall hedge condition to maintain them as distinctive and historic landscape features

## Requirements

You must:

- maintain a hedge at least 2m tall and 1.5m wide by year 2, except for sections gapped up, laid or coppiced during the agreement term
- cut hedgerows:
  - either no more than 1 year in 3 between 1 September and 28 February - leave at least two-thirds of hedges untrimmed each year
  - or no more than 1 year in 2 between 1 January and 28 February - leave at least one-half of hedges untrimmed each year
- gap up any length of hedge with more than 10% gaps within the first 2 years

If you need to fell trees, [check if you need a felling licence](#) from the Forestry Commission. If you do, make sure it is in place before you start to fell, otherwise you may be prosecuted.

Do not:

- remove any tree limbs, including lower limbs, or mature ivy growth from hedgerow trees
- remove any standing deadwood
- supplementary feed livestock within 2m of the centre of the hedge

## **Keeping records**

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- hedgerow management records
- photographs of each hedge entered into the option

We may ask to see these at any point during your agreement, this could be as part of an administrative check or during an inspection.

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### **Pick the right hedge**

If you do not have management control of both sides of a hedge then only enter 1 side into the option. If there is no parcel number listed under your SBI for the land on one side of the hedgerow, for example where it is a road or track verge, or the land belongs to a neighbour, you cannot enter that side of the hedgerow into BE3 on your application.

Select hedges that:

- are connected to other hedges or habitats (such as woodlands and ponds)
- have other components such as hedgerow trees, bases or banks rich in flowers, or an adjacent ditch or margin

Use the option to improve the condition and longevity of hedges which are of particular historic interest, such as parish boundaries, or are especially important in the landscape.

### **Managing the hedges**

If you use the correct rotor and forward speeds, well-maintained flails are effective for cutting 2 to 3 year-old growth of most woody species.

You may need to use heavier duty flails or more powerful cutting heads on fast growing species, such as ash or willow. Alternatively, use a circular saw or leave hedges uncut. There is no requirement to trim hedges at all during the agreement. Instead, leave them to grow and manage in a coppicing or laying rotation.



Cutting incrementally, rather than trimming back to the same point, allows hedges to increase in height and width by several centimetres at each cut, this encourages a dense, healthy hedgerow.

Use native shrubs species that already occur in hedgerows in the local area to gap up. A gap is a complete break in the canopy. Where a tree canopy overlaps the hedgerow canopy it is not counted as a gap.

## **Further information**

You can find more information on hedgerows in the following:

- the [hedgerow management cycle](#)
- [common questions on hedge cutting](#)
- See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **BE4: Management of traditional orchards**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the management of traditional orchards option.

### **How much will be paid**

£212 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on whole or part-parcels on traditional orchards (apple, pear, cherry, plum, damson or cobnut plats) where at least one-third of the original stations are occupied by trees over 25 years old.

In Mid Tier you can only use this option if it meets the relevant criteria and you have written approval from RPA. The orchard must also be mapped as a traditional orchard on the Priority Habitat Inventory (see the [MAGIC](#) website.)

### **Features that can be included in this option**

You can include the following features if they are part of the parcel, even if they are not eligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS).

- ditches
- drains
- dykes
- rivers and streams (boundary or internal)

The features must be less than 4 metres (m) wide for the majority of their length in the parcel.

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

If successful there will be a well-managed traditional orchard with a range of healthy young and old trees. This includes established grass, tall bushy

hedges, scrub and tall herb vegetation abundant with invertebrates, birds and wildflowers.

## Requirements

You must:

- record the location, species, variety and age class of trees
- manage grassland by grazing or hay cutting
- maintain the characteristic tree form by pruning
- restore tree numbers
- protect trees from damage by livestock
- keep and protect all mature and over-mature standing trees
- keep some standing deadwood and some deadwood on living trees
- control scrub and invasive species
- agree all drainage works, including modification to existing drainage, in writing with Natural England before you carry out any work
- from 1 September to 28 February, inclusive, allow at least 5-10% of the total area covered by this option to support grasses that have been allowed to go to seed and with the seed heads left undisturbed

Do not:

- plough, cultivate or re-seed
- roll or harrow
- apply any fertilisers or manures
- apply lime
- carry out supplementary feeding

### Keeping records

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with any work
- records of all management activity on the option area for each parcel
- dates and locations of formative or maintenance pruning carried out for each parcel

- a base map or table showing the location, species, rootstock, variety and age class of trees present in each parcel
- a monthly record of stock numbers grazing each parcel
- photographs of trees entered into the option and cut areas of scrub
- if managing by hay cutting, photographs of the areas cut and uncut in each parcel

We may ask to see these at any point during your agreement, this could be as part of an administrative check or during an inspection.

On your annual claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

## Related options

You can locate the following options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [BE6 - Veteran tree surgery](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [BE7 - Supplement for restorative pruning of fruit trees](#)
- [ED1 - Educational access](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [GS15 - Haymaking supplement](#)
- [OR2 - Organic conversion - unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [OR5 - Organic conversion - top fruit](#)
- [OT2 - Organic land management - unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT5 - Organic land management - top fruit](#)
- [SP1 - Difficult sites supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP3 - Bracken control supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

## **Traditional orchards**

Traditional orchards are defined as groups of fruit and nut trees planted on vigorous rootstocks at low densities in permanent grassland, and managed in a low intensity way. This includes cobnut plots.

## **Preventing weeds**

Prevent weeds from competing with newly planted trees for water and nutrients. Keep a 1m diameter circle clear of all vegetation for at least the first 3 years after planting.

## **Further information**

See the [Higher Tier](#) or [Mid Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **BE5: Creation of traditional orchards**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the creation of traditional orchards option.

### **How much will be paid**

£281 per hectare (ha).

### **How long the option lasts**

This option will last for 10 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme.

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Higher Tier on whole and part-parcels only on:

- traditional orchards (apple, pear, cherry, plum, damson or cobnut plots) where less than one-third of the original stations are occupied by trees over 25 years old
- sites with evidence (such as maps or photographs) that a traditional orchard was once there - this includes sites currently under arable cultivation
- sites where creation extends, links or buffers existing areas of a traditional orchard

### **Features that can be included in this option**

You can include the following features if they are part of the parcel, even if they are not eligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS).

- ditches
- drains
- dykes
- rivers and streams (boundary or internal)

The features must be less than 4m wide for the majority of their length in the parcel.

## **How this option will benefit the environment**

If successful there will be a well-managed traditional orchard with a range of healthy young and old trees. This includes established grass, tall bushy hedges, scrub and tall herb vegetation abundant with invertebrates, birds and wildflowers.

### Requirements

You must:

- establish and then manage grassland by grazing or hay cutting
- maintain the characteristic tree form by pruning
- restore tree numbers
- protect trees from damage by livestock
- keep and protect all mature and over-mature standing trees
- keep some standing deadwood and some deadwood on living trees
- control scrub and invasive species

Do not:

- plough, cultivate or re-seed
- roll or harrow
- use any manures, fertilisers, pesticides or supplementary feed

### **Keeping records**

On your annual claim must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- records of all management activity on the option area for each parcel
- dates and locations of formative or maintenance pruning carried out for each parcel

- a base map or table showing the location, species, rootstock, variety and age class of trees present in each parcel
- a monthly record of stock numbers grazing each parcel
- if managing by hay cutting, photographs of the areas cut and uncut in each parcel
- photographs of cut areas of scrub
- photographs of each tree and all standing deadwood entered into the option

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. You should discuss and agree these requirements with your adviser.

## Related options

You can locate these options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [BE6 – Veteran tree surgery](#)
- [BE7 - Supplement for restorative pruning of fruit trees](#)
- [ED1 - Educational access](#)
- [GS15 - Haymaking supplement](#)
- [OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OR2 - Organic conversion – unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [OR5 - Organic conversion - top fruit](#)
- [OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT2 - Organic land management - unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT5 - Organic land management - top fruit](#)
- [SP1 - Difficult sites supplement](#)
- [SP3 - Bracken control supplement](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.



## **Traditional orchards**

Traditional orchards are defined as groups of fruit and nut trees planted on vigorous rootstocks at low densities in permanent grassland, and managed in a low intensity way. This includes cobnut plots.

## **Preventing weeds**

Prevent weeds from competing with newly planted trees for water and nutrients. Keep a 1m diameter circle clear of all vegetation for at least the first 3 years after planting.

## **Further information**

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **BE6: Veteran tree surgery**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the veteran tree surgery option.

### **How much will be paid**

£221 per tree.

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Higher Tier:

- on veteran open grown trees and trees in open canopy woodlands
- where specialist tree surgery is agreed by Natural England

### **Where this option cannot be used**

On the same trees as the following capital items or supplements:

- [BE7 - Supplement for restorative pruning of fruit trees](#)
- [TE10 - Coppicing bankside trees](#)
- [TE11 - Tree surgery](#)

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It reduces the rate of loss of veteran trees by carrying out specialist tree surgery to extend their lifespan.

If successful, veteran trees at risk of collapse will be stabilised, resulting in the continuation of:

- living trees with standing deadwood
- trees forming distinctive features in the landscape
- trees providing valuable habitat
- areas under tree canopies free from scrub, soil compaction, or anything which threatens the tree's longevity

## Requirements

You must:

- carry out agreed tree surgery works within the agreed timetable and dates
- remove secondary growth from around veteran trees
- keep all material close to the tree (not stacked against the veteran tree) and leave undisturbed

Stack cut material in a shaded location. Do not cut it up any more than is necessary to allow safe movement. Do not burn cut material.

## Keeping records

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- photographs of each tree
- photographs of the completed work

## Related options

You can locate these options, supplements and capital items on the same area as this option:

- [BE1 - Protection of in-field trees on arable land](#)
- [BE2 - Protection of in-field trees on intensive grassland](#)
- [BE3 - Management of hedgerows](#)
- [BE4 – Management of traditional orchards](#)
- [BE5 – Creation of traditional orchards](#)
- [WD4 - Management of wood pasture and parkland](#)
- [WD5 - Restoration of wood pasture and parkland](#)
- [WD6 - Creation of wood pasture](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

Tree surgery must be identified in a report by a professionally qualified arboriculturalist. Individual plans for each tree may be required. The timing of work should take account of the impact on the tree, bird breeding season, presence of European Protected Species and so on. Permissions may be required.

Many veteran trees have only grown so old through active management, mostly long abandoned. Reinstating management would pose great risk but they can be at significant risk of catastrophic failure due to crown weight.

Do not prune a tree in general decline any more than necessary to prevent catastrophic failure.

As trees die back, the importance of lower canopy branches increases so avoid removing them.

Do not remove epicormic shoots (small side shoots) as they can take over if the main part of the stem is lost.

Keep dead and decaying branches, as well as any live material, you remove from the tree close to the source without cutting it up.

Previously open grown trees now surrounded by others may require opening up. Avoid sudden exposure of trees shaded for many years. Clear around the tree at least a year before any tree surgery, possibly in stages over a few years. Make sure any species of interest such as lichens, fungi and invertebrates, as well as hole-nesting birds and roosting bats, are known and the impact of any work assessed.

Burning damages dead wood and soil structure, killing living organisms and harming trees if too close.

Avoid activities which damage and compact tree roots, including those by stock.

Be aware that various consents and permissions may apply:

- the Tree Preservation Orders (TPOs) and Conservation Orders may apply to the trees on site
- veteran trees often host European Protected Species, such as bats

You can read more about tree management, safety information and felling licences on the [Forestry Commission](#) website.

Fruit trees in traditional orchards are not normally eligible. See instead [BE7 - Supplement for restorative pruning of fruit trees](#).

## **Further information**

You can find more information on managing ancient or veteran trees in the following guidance booklets:

- [Ancient tree guides \(booklets 1 to 8\)](#)
- [Lonsdale, D \(ed\) 2013 Ancient and other veteran trees: further guidance on management](#) (Tree Council)
- [Read, H. 2000 Veteran trees: A guide to good management. Veteran Trees Initiative](#)

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **BE7: Supplement for restorative pruning of fruit trees**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the supplement for restorative pruning of fruit trees supplement.

### **How much will be paid**

£62 per tree.

### **Where to use this supplement**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier but only:

- for a maximum of 3 years on an individual tree
- on neglected fruit trees with options:
  - [BE3 - Management of hedgerows](#) (Higher Tier only)
  - [BE4 - Management of traditional orchards](#)
  - [BE5 - Creation of traditional orchards](#) (Higher Tier only)

In Mid Tier you can only use this option if it meets the relevant criteria, you have written approval from RPA and you use it with BE4.

### **How this *supplement* will benefit the environment**

If successful there will be restored mature fruit trees with undisturbed standing and fallen deadwood providing a habitat for a wide range of invertebrates.

### **Requirements**

You must:

- restore the tree form by pruning
- keep some standing deadwood or dead wood on living trees

## Keeping records

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- photographs of trees entered into the supplement and the management undertaken

## Related supplements

You can locate this supplement on the same tree as the following supplement:

- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)

## Further information

- See the [Higher Tier](#) or [Mid Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **BN1: Stone-faced bank repair**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the stone-faced bank repair item.

### **How much will be paid**

£31 per metre (m).

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier, Higher Tier and hedgerows and boundaries grant.

Only on lengths of stone-faced bank where less than 50% of the original height needs to be rebuilt.

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

If successful there will be a rebuilt length of stone-faced bank.

### **Requirements**

- build the bank back to its original height and profile to reflect other banks found locally
- carefully strip any loose stone back by hand, without disturbing the basal courses, until there are firm stones to build on
- use the original facing stone if it is available
- only use imported stone that matches the type, size and style traditional to the area
- haul the stone only when ground conditions are firm enough to prevent damage to neighbouring fields
- build the stone up in courses, using progressively smaller stones nearer the top, and making sure that the stones sit firmly on the course below
- back-fill each course with earth and small stones, or closely packed small stones
- tamp each course down to form a solid core before continuing with the next course



- stagger joints and incorporate long stones at intervals so that they run lengthways into the middle of the bank as tie stones
- build each face of the bank so it has a slight 'batter' (slope)
- finish off the top with a row of large flat stones, vertical stones or a layer of turf, depending on local practice
- make sure the top line of the bank is level with the ground
- make sure that no healthy mature trees are disturbed
- finish the ends of the bank at gateways with turfing or stone-facing, and protect it from being damaged by livestock and machinery
- retain and restore old features such as creep holes, built granite troughs or stone around gateways
- restore any stiles or gates to their original construction
- remove any surplus earth-fill and stones from the site after completion of the work and restore the ground around it

Do not:

- block or restrict [access to open access land](#)
- carry out work between 1 March and 31 August if the bank is topped by a hedge
- take stone from other walls, banks or buildings
- remove soil from other banks, even if they are derelict
- damage the roots of mature trees growing on the banks with machinery
- place stone on features of archaeological, historic or wildlife value as identified on your FER, Environmental Information Map or HEFER (where applicable)

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of each length of stone-faced bank entered into the item

- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Mid Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs during and after work has been completed

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following section gives advice on carrying out the item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

Determine the original height and profile of stone-faced banks by referring to other banks in good condition nearby. These are usually at least 1.3m wide at the base, 1.3m high, and 600mm to 800mm wide at the top.

## **BN2: Stone-faced bank restoration**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the stone-faced bank restoration item.

### **How much will be paid**

£86 per metre (m).

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier, Higher Tier and hedgerows and boundaries grant

Only on lengths of stone-faced bank where more than 50% of the original height needs to be rebuilt.

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

If successful there will be a rebuilt length of stone-faced bank.

### **Requirements**

- build the bank back to its original height and profile to reflect other banks found locally
- carefully strip any loose stone back by hand, without disturbing the basal courses, until there are firm stones to build on
- use the original facing stone if it is available
- only use imported stone that matches the type, size and style traditional to the area
- haul the stone only when ground conditions are firm enough to prevent damage to neighbouring fields
- build the stone up in courses, using progressively smaller stones nearer the top, and making sure that the stones sit firmly on the course below
- back-fill each course with earth and small stones, or closely packed small stones
- tamp each course down to form a solid core before continuing with the next course

- stagger joints and incorporate long stones at intervals so that they run lengthways into the middle of the bank as tie stones
- build each face of the bank so it has a slight 'batter' (slope)
- finish off the top with a row of large flat stones, vertical stones or a layer of turf, depending on local practice
- make sure the top line of the bank is level with the ground
- make sure that no healthy mature trees are disturbed
- finish the ends of the bank at gateways with turfing or stone facing, and protect it from being damaged by livestock and machinery
- retain and restore old features such as creep holes, built granite troughs or stone around gateways
- restore any stiles or gates to their original construction
- remove any surplus earth-fill and stones from the site after completion of the work and restore the ground around it

Do not:

- block or restrict [access to open access land](#)
- carry out work between 1 March and 31 August if the bank is topped by a hedge
- take stone from other walls, banks or buildings
- remove soil from other banks, even if they are derelict
- damage the roots of mature trees growing on the banks with machinery
- place stone on features of archaeological, historic or wildlife value as identified on your FER, Environmental Information Map or HEFER (where applicable)

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of each length of stone-faced bank entered into the item

- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs during and after work has been completed

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following section gives advice on carrying out the item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

Determine the original height and profile of stone-faced banks by referring to other banks in good condition nearby. These are usually at least 1.3m wide at the base, 1.3m high, and 600mm to 800mm wide at the top.

## **BN3: Earth bank creation**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the earth bank creation item.

### **How much will be paid**

£13.50 per metre (m).

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only on sites of former earth banks, as evidenced by historic maps, or where other records show that earth banks are a feature of a specific location or landscape.

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

If successful there will be a new length of earth bank which will conserve and enhance landscape character and provide a valuable wildlife habitat.

#### Requirements

- build the bank to reflect the style and profile of other banks in a good condition nearby
- build up moist soil in consolidated layers, allowing it to settle at each stage to make sure it is stable
- build each face of the bank so that it slopes inwards (approximately 0.3m for every 1m in height), to create a 'batter' (slope)
- make the base of the bank wider than the top by roughly 45cm to 60cm on each side
- take turves up to the full height of the new bank in areas where existing banks are faced with turves
- finish off the top with loose soil or turf (unless a hedge is being planted)
- make sure the top line of the bank is level with the ground

- finish the ends of the bank at gateways with turving or stone facing, and protect it from being damaged by livestock and machinery
- remove any surplus earth-fill and stones from the site after the work has been completed and restore the ground around it

Do not:

- block or restrict [access to open access land](#)
- remove soil from other banks, even if they are derelict

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs to show the planned location for each length of earth bank creation
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs during and after work has been completed

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- historic maps or other records to evidence that the proposed location of the bank creation is on an original footprint, or is a feature of a specific location or landscape - this can be marked on any map including the Farm Environment Record (FER)

## **BN4: Earth bank restoration**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the earth bank restoration item.

### **How much will be paid**

£7 per metre (m).

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier, Higher Tier and hedgerows and boundaries grant

Only on lengths of earth bank that need to be rebuilt to their original height.

How this item will benefit the environment

If successful there will be a length of rebuilt earth bank which will conserve and enhance landscape character and provide a valuable wildlife habitat.

### **Requirements**

- restore the bank to reflect the style and profile of other banks in a good condition nearby
- rebuild the bank using original soil that has slipped from it
- build up moist soil in consolidated layers, allowing it to settle at each stage to ensure stability
- use subsoil and small stones for the lower layers and topsoil with no stones for the upper layers



- build each face of the bank so that it slopes inwards (approximately 0.3m for every 1m in height), to create a 'batter' (slope)
- make the base of the bank wider than the top by roughly 45cm to 60cm on each side
- take turves up to the full height of the new bank in areas where existing banks are faced with turves
- finish off the top with loose soil or turf (unless a hedge is being planted)
- make sure the top line of the bank is level with the ground
- finish the ends of the bank at gateways with turving or stone facing, and protect it from being damaged by livestock and machinery
- make sure that no healthy mature trees are disturbed
- restore any stiles and gates to their original construction
- remove any surplus earth-fill and stones from the site after the work has been completed and restore the ground around it

Do not:

- block or restrict [access to open access land](#)
- carry out work between 1 March and 31 August if the bank is topped by a hedge
- remove soil from other banks, even if they are derelict
- damage the roots of trees growing on the bank with machinery

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of each length of earth bank entered into the item
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs during and after work has been completed

## **BN5: Hedgerow laying**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the hedgerow laying item.

### **How much will be paid**

£9.40 per metre (m).

### **Where to use this item**

It is available for Mid Tier, Higher Tier and the Hedgerows and Boundaries Grant on planted boundary lines of shrubs that are:

- over 20m long
- less than 5m wide between major woody stems at the base
- formed of at least 80% native shrubs

### **Where this option cannot be used**

- In Mid Tier agreements, lengths of hedge managed under this option are not eligible for the revenue option [BE3 – Management of hedgerows](#), or capital items [BN6 – Hedgerow coppicing](#) and [BN7 - Hedgerow gapping-up](#) but may be eligible for other capital item payments

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

Lengths of hedgerow will rejuvenate with new growth to form a continuous hedge.

### **Requirement**

You must:

- carry out work between 30 September and 31 March when the hedge is still dormant
- remove old fencing and wire
- cut and pull out bramble, clematis or other scrambling plants

- cut out elder plants and prevent re-growth of stumps
- partially cut through stems near ground level, laying the pleachers (cut stems) over at an angle from horizontal to form a stock-proof barrier
- remove the uncut heel from each pleacher
- keep pleachers in position by crooking, staking, or staking and binding
- keep all existing hedgerow trees
- remove all cut material from the immediate site after completion of the work
- control weeds during the first growing season after laying
- prevent livestock and grazing animals from damaging the hedge by setting fencing at least 1.2m from the centre of the hedge or, if there is a bank, as close to the base of the bank as possible
- trim the hedge for 3 years after laying, allowing the hedge to become taller and wider at each cut

If you need to fell trees, [check if you need a felling licence](#) from the Forestry Commission. If you do, make sure it is in place before you start to fell, otherwise you may be prosecuted.

Do not:

- lay hedges downhill
- obstruct or block [access to open access land](#)
- disturb breeding birds

### **Keeping records**

You must send the following with your application:

- a map showing the location of existing hedgerow trees in each length of hedge (this can be the Farm Environment Record (FER))

You must keep the following records and supply them with your payment claim:

- photographs of the completed work

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work

- receipted invoices or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of each length of hedge entered into the item before work starts
- the date, location and method of any weed control undertaken
- the dates of preparation works and laying
- the dates of post-laying trimming

Please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the relevant manual ([Mid Tier](#), [Higher Tier](#) or [Hedgerows and Boundaries](#)) for more detail.

## Related Mid Tier items

You can use this item on the same length as the following items and supplements:

- [BN8 - Hedgerow supplement - casting up](#)
- [BN9 - Hedgerow supplement - substantial pre-work](#)
- [BN10 - Hedgerow supplement - top binding and staking](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### Pick the right hedge

Use the [hedgerow management cycle](#) to help decide what management is needed.

Choose a hedge which:

- has few gaps and enough stems to lay to achieve a continuous length of hedge
- has stems between 5 centimetres (cm) to 15cm in diameter - however, it is possible to cut larger stems with a chainsaw
- is tall enough to lay (at least 2.5m, and ideally 4m)

### Hedge laying

To undertake hedge laying successfully:

- only cut using hand-tools (including chainsaws)
- lay the hedge in the regional style
- cut each stem as low as possible (no more than 10cm from the ground)
- choose stems which when laid do not leave large gaps
- protect the newly laid hedge from damage by grazing animals - rabbit fencing may be needed if local populations are high
- leave as much side growth on the branches as possible
- lay stems at an angle of about 35 to 45 degrees from horizontal
- keep any existing trees and leave the occasional 'standard' hawthorn or other species if this fits in with the local landscape
- keep deadwood where possible
- plant up gaps using native species to improve the continuity of the hedge

Fencing may only need to be temporary and in place for as long as it takes the hedge to grow sufficiently.

## **Hedge management**

Control competitive weeds (including brambles, nettles and grasses) during the first growing season. These weeds reduce the re-growth rate of the laid stems by competing for soil moisture, nutrients and light.

Encourage dense bushy growth of the newly laid hedge by:

- trimming lightly for 3 years
- never cutting back to the same point, but allowing the hedge to gradually increase in height and width by several centimetres at each cut

In following years you can leave the hedge to grow unchecked until it requires laying or coppicing, or be managed by trimming.

## **Further information**

See the [Mid Tier](#), [Higher Tier](#) or [Hedgerows and Boundaries Grant manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **BN6: Hedgerow coppicing**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the hedgerow coppicing item.

### **How much will be paid**

£4 per metre (m).

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier, Higher Tier and hedgerows and boundaries grant

Only on planted boundary lines of shrubs that are:

- over 20m long
- less than 5m wide between major woody stems at the base
- composed of at least 80% native shrubs

How this item will benefit the environment

If successful there will be lengths of hedgerow rejuvenated with new growth to form a continuous hedge.

### **Requirements**

- carry out work between 30 September and 31 March when the hedge is still dormant
- remove old fencing and wire
- cut and pull out bramble, clematis or other scrambling plants
- cut out elder plants and prevent re-growth of stumps
- encourage vigorous re-growth from the base of the plant by cutting the stems down to ground level (less than 10cm)
- angle cuts so that water can easily run off
- keep all existing hedgerow trees

- cuttings can be placed over newly coppiced stools to prevent browsing by livestock or wild animals, or to leave dead wood for wildlife; however, they must not prevent new growth
- remove all unused cut branches from the immediate site after completion of the work
- control weeds during the first growing season after laying
- prevent livestock and grazing animals from damaging the hedge by setting fencing at least 1.2m from the centre of the hedge, or, if there is a bank, as close to the base of the bank as possible
- trim the hedge for 3 years after coppicing, allowing the hedge to become taller and wider at each cut

Do not:

- obstruct or block [access to open access land](#)
- disturb breeding birds

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- the date, location and method of any weed control undertaken
- the dates of preparation works and coppicing
- the dates of post-coppicing trimming
- a photograph of the each length of hedge entered into the item
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:



- a map showing the location of existing hedgerow trees in each length of hedge (this can be the FER)

### **Related Mid Tier options**

This item can be used on the same length as the following supplement:

- [BN8 - Hedgerow supplement - casting up](#)
- [BN9 - Hedgerow supplement - substantial pre-work](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out the item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

### **Pick the right hedge**

Use the [hedgerow management cycle](#) to help decide what management is needed.

Choose a hedge which:

- is gappy and has too few stems to lay
- has stems too large to lay (more than 15cm diameter)
- is too short to lay (less than 2.5m tall)

Most woody species coppice well, stimulating dense growth from the cut stems, apart from:

- holly
- mature beech
- mature hawthorn which is showing signs of rot

### **Hedge coppicing**

To undertake hedge coppicing successfully:

- keep any existing trees and leave the occasional 'standard' hawthorn or other species when this fits in with the local landscape
- keep deadwood where possible
- plant up gaps at the same time as coppicing to improve the continuity of the hedge - plant native species that already occur in hedgerows in the local area

- protect the newly coppiced hedge from damage by grazing animals - rabbit fencing may be needed if local populations are high

Fencing may only need to be temporary and in place for as long as it takes the hedge to grow sufficiently.

### Hedge management

Control competitive weeds (including brambles, nettles and grasses) during the first growing season. These weeds reduce the re-growth rate of the coppiced stems by competing for soil moisture, nutrients and light.

Encourage dense bushy growth of the newly coppiced hedge by:

- trimming lightly for 3 years
- never cutting back to the same point, instead allowing the hedge to gradually increase in height and width by several centimetres at each cut.

In following years the hedge can either be left to grow unchecked until it requires coppicing or laying, or be managed by trimming.

## **BN7: Hedgerow gapping-up**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the hedgerow gapping-up item.

### **How much will be paid**

£9.50 per metre (m).

### **Where to use this item**

It is available for Mid Tier, Higher Tier and Hedgerows and Boundaries Grants on planted boundary lines of shrubs that are:

- over 20m long
- less than 5m wide between major woody stems at the base
- made up of at least 80% native shrubs

### **Where this item cannot be used**

On lengths of hedge managed under the [BE3 - Management of hedgerows](#) option.

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

Lengths of hedgerow with gaps planted up will create a continuous length of hedge.

### **Requirements**

You must:

- carry out work between 1 November and 31 March when the hedge is still dormant
- prepare the ground along a 1.5m wide strip to provide good soil conditions and as little competition from other vegetation as possible
- apply any herbicide to the 1.5m strip in the August or September prior to planting

make sure plants are:

- 2-year-old transplants
- at least 450 millimetres (mm) to 600mm high
- native species, with no one species making up more than 70% of the total
- planted in a staggered double row 40 centimetres (cm) apart with a minimum of 6 plants per metre
- kept clear of weeds until they are established
- prevent livestock and grazing animals from damaging the hedge by setting fencing at least 1.2m from the centre of the hedge, or, if there is a bank, as close to the base of the bank as possible
- remove individual guards and tree shelters once the plants are established
- replace all failures in the following planting season

Do not:

- obstruct or block [access to open access land](#)

### **Keeping records**

You must keep the following records and supply them with your payment claim:

- photographs during and after work has been completed

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- the date, location and method of any weed control undertaken
- the dates of planting
- details of age, height and species planted
- a photograph of the each length of hedge entered into the item before work starts

Please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the relevant manual ([Mid Tier Higher Tier](#) or [Hedgerows and Boundaries Grant](#)) for more detail.

## **Related Mid Tier items**

You can use this item on the same length as the following supplement:

- [BN9 - Hedgerow supplement - substantial pre-work](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### **When to plant**

November is generally the best time to plant; however, if planting into clay soils wait until March. Do not plant in freezing weather or on waterlogged ground. If planting into a newly restored earth bank, plant the following autumn.

### **Planting**

To undertake hedge gapping-up successfully:

- prepare the ground so the soil becomes friable (has a crumbly texture) and is free of other growth
- plant native species that already grow in the local area
- take care of roots before planting by keeping them covered at all times, especially when it is sunny or windy
- avoid opening more than one bag of plants at a time

Consider planting new hedgerow trees if they are characteristic of the local landscape.

### **Control weeds**

Control competitive weeds (including brambles, nettles and grasses) during the first growing season. These weeds reduce the growth rate of the new plants by competing for soil moisture, nutrients and light. Avoid using a strimmer as these can damage the plants.

## **Protect the plants**

Fence off the plants if sheep, cattle or horses graze the land. Keep fences far enough away so the hedgerow can grow at least 1.5m in width.

If there is a known problem with rabbits or hares you may need rabbit netting, either on its own or with stock fencing.

Avoid using spiral guards as they limit the amount of dense growth at the base of each plant, are unsightly and difficult to remove.

## **Further information**

See the [Mid Tier](#), [Higher Tier](#) or [Hedgerows and Boundaries Grant manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **BN8: Hedgerow supplement - casting up**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the hedgerow supplement - casting up item.

### **How much will be paid**

£3 per metre (m).

### **Where to use this supplement**

Available for Mid Tier, Higher Tier and hedgerows and boundaries grant.

Only on hedgerows which are both:

- being restored using options [BN5 - Hedgerow laying](#) or [BN6 - Hedgerow coppicing](#)
- being cast-up by machine

### **How this supplement will benefit the environment**

If successful there will be lengths of hedgerow which have been re-profiled and had slipped soil replaced.

### **Requirements**

- cast up the bank to reflect the local style and build it back to its original profile (this must be established by reference to other banks in good condition nearby)
- rebuild the bank using the original soil that has slipped from it
- build each face of the bank so that it slopes inwards (approximately 0.3m for every 1m in height), to create a 'batter' (slope)
- make the base of the bank wider than the top by roughly 45cm to 60cm on each side
- ensure the top line of the bank is level with the ground
- make sure that no healthy mature trees are disturbed
- restore any stiles and gates to their original construction

- remove any surplus earth-fill and stones from the site after completion of the work and restore the ground around it

Do not:

- cast up between 1 March and 31 August
- remove soil from other banks, even if they are derelict
- bury newly laid or coppiced material in deep earth
- damage the roots of trees growing on the bank with machinery

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of each length of hedge entered into the supplement
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Related Mid Tier items

This supplement can be used on the same length as the following items and supplements:

- [BN5 - Hedgerow laying](#)
- [BN6 - Hedgerow coppicing](#)
- [BN10 - Hedgerow supplement - top binding and staking](#)



## **BN9: Hedgerow supplement - substantial pre-work**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the hedgerow supplement - substantial pre-work item.

### **How much will be paid**

£4.10 per metre (m).

### **Where to use this supplement**

Available for Higher Tier.

Only on:

- hedgerows being restored using the following options:
  - [BN5 - Hedgerow laying](#)
  - [BN6 - Hedgerow coppicing](#)
  - [BN7 - Hedgerow gapping-up](#)
  - [BN11 - Planting new hedges](#)
- hedgerows which:
  - have extensive bramble, elder or brash that needs removing
  - are more than 5m wide after the previous season's growth is removed
  - are on a slope of more than 20 degrees

Where this supplement cannot be used

To:

- remove old fences within hedgerows
- remove free-standing fences alongside hedgerows
- undertake weed control
- undertake routine preparation before gapping-up or planting

How this supplement will benefit the environment

If successful, lengths of restored hedgerow which required substantial pre-work or were located on difficult sites will be restored.

## Requirements

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- carry out the work agreed with Natural England
- complete the associated hedge restoration item to the relevant specification

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of each length of hedge entered into the supplement
- supply item specification if required
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

## Related items

This supplement can be used on the same length as the following items and supplements:

- [BN5 - Hedgerow laying](#)
- [BN6 - Hedgerow coppicing](#)
- [BN7 - Hedgerow gapping-up](#)

- [BN8 - Hedgerow supplement - casting up](#)
- [BN10 - Hedgerow supplement - top binding and staking](#)
- [BN11 - Planting new hedges](#)

## **BN10: Hedgerow supplement - top binding and staking**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the hedgerow supplement - top binding and staking item.

### **How much will be paid**

£3.40 per metre (m).

### **Where to use this supplement**

Available for Mid Tier, Higher Tier and the hedgerows and boundaries grant.

Only on hedgerows being restored using [BN5 - Hedgerow laying](#).

How this supplement will benefit the environment

If successful there will be lengths of hedgerow rejuvenated with new growth to form a continuous hedge.

### **Requirements**

- use stakes made of straight and clean lengths of hazel, ash or sweet chestnut
- use binders made of straight lengths of hazel, ash or willow, with no side shoots

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of each length of hedge entered into the supplement

- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Related Mid Tier items

This supplement can be used on the same length as the following items and supplements:

- [BN5 - Hedgerow laying](#)
- [BN8 - Hedgerow supplement - casting up](#)
- [BN9 - Hedgerow supplement - substantial pre-work](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

This item is to strengthen layed hedges. It should only be used where the [local style of hedge laying](#) includes top binding and staking. These include the Midland and South of England style and Welsh Border styles which include stakes (or crops) and binding. It is not typical of Lancashire/Westmorland styles of hedge laying in the north of England.

## **BN11: Planting new hedges**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the planting new hedges item.

### **How much will be paid**

£11.60 per metre (m).

### **Where to use this item**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier only on one of the following:

- sites of former hedgerows - as shown on historic maps or other records
- sites where creation would extend or link existing lengths of hedgerow
- sites where creation will help reduce soil erosion and runoff

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

There will be new lengths of hedgerow planted with locally occurring native species.

### **Requirements**

You must:

- carry out work between 1 November and 31 March
- prepare the ground along a 1.5m wide strip to provide good soil conditions and as little competition from other vegetation as possible
- apply any herbicide to the 1.5m strip in the August or September prior to planting only

plants must be:

- 2-year-old transplants
- at least 450 millimetres (mm) to 600mm high
- native species, with no one species making up more than 70% of the total

- planted in a staggered double row 40 centimetres (cm) apart with a minimum of 6 plants per metre
- kept clear of weeds until they are established
- remove individual guards and tree shelters once the plants are established
- replace all failures in the following planting season
- trim the newly planted hedge in at least the first 2 years to encourage bushy growth, allowing the hedge to become taller and wider at each cut
- prevent livestock and grazing animals from damaging the hedge by setting fencing at least 1.2m from the centre of the hedge, or, if there is a bank, as close to the base of the bank as possible

Do not:

- obstruct or block [access to open access land](#)

### **Keeping records**

You must send the following with your application:

- historic map or other records to show that the proposed location of the hedge planting is on an original footprint or extends existing hedges or contributes to the reduction of soil erosion and run-off - this can be marked on any map including the Farm Environment Record (FER)

You must keep the following records and supply them with your payment claim:

- photographs of the completed work

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- the date, location and method of any weed control undertaken
- the dates of planting
- details of age, height and species planted
- photographs to show the planned location for each length of hedge planting

Please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the relevant manual ([Mid Tier](#), [Higher Tier](#) or [Hedgerows and Boundaries](#) for more detail.

## Related Mid Tier items

You can use this item on the same length as the following supplement:

- [BN9 - Hedgerow supplement - substantial pre-work](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### When to plant

November is generally the best time to plant; however, if you are planting into clay soils wait until March. Do not plant in freezing weather or on waterlogged ground. If you are planting into a newly restored earth bank, plant the following autumn.

### Planting

To plant a hedge successfully:

- prepare the ground so the soil becomes friable (has a crumbly texture) and is free of other growth
- plant native species that already grow in the local area
- take care of roots before planting by keeping them covered at all times, especially when it is sunny or windy
- avoid opening more than one bag of plants at a time

If the landscape is characterised by a single-species hedgerows then the planting mix should reflect this. If not, then one of the following species should make up at least 70% of the planting mix:

- hawthorn
- blackthorn
- hazel

Use other native shrub species intermixed randomly with the main species, rather than planted in a block or blocks.



Consider planting new hedgerow trees if they are characteristic of the local landscape.

### **Control weeds**

Control competitive weeds (including brambles, nettles and grasses) during the first growing season. These weeds reduce the growth rate of the new plants by competing for soil moisture, nutrients and light. Avoid using a strimmer as these can damage the plants.

### **Protect the plants**

Fence off the plants if sheep, cattle or horses graze the land. Keep fences far enough away so the hedgerow can grow at least 1.5m in width.

If there is a known problem with rabbits or hares you may need rabbit netting, either on its own or with stock fencing.

Avoid using spiral guards as they limit the amount of dense growth at the base of each plant, are unsightly and are difficult to remove.

### **Further information**

New hedgerow planting can help control soil erosion and runoff. Hedgerows planted along contours will decrease slope length, reduce the force of surface flow, and encourage infiltration. Hedges planted alongside watercourses are also effective.

Look out for signs of soil damage and erosion such as capping, rilling and brown water runoff on long or steep slopes (particularly on sandy soils) and prioritise areas of high erosion risk, in particular areas adjacent to watercourses.

See the [Mid Tier](#), [Higher Tier](#) or [Hedgerows and Boundaries Grant manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **BN12: Stone wall restoration**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the stone wall restoration item.

### **How much will be paid**

£25 per metre (m).

### **Where to use this item**

It is available for Mid Tier, Higher Tier and Hedgerows and Boundaries grants on walls where at least one-third of the original height has to be dismantled and rebuilt in order to complete the restoration.

### **Where this item cannot be used**

On walls that are in receipt of stone wall protection and maintenance (EB11) or stone wall protection and maintenance on or above the moorland line (UB11) under live ELS or UELS agreements.

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

There will be a rebuilt stone wall which will help to control livestock and conserve traditional landscapes.

### **Requirements**

You must:

- rebuild walls to their original height in the local style - refer to the height and style of other stone walls nearby that are in good condition
- dismantle (by hand) the existing structure back to a sound construction
- rebuild the wall so there is an even top line, a consistent batter (slope), and no bulges or depressions along the face of the wall
- add a filling of solid rocks with each course where it is part of the traditional construction

- keep all existing wall-side trees and saplings. A wall-side tree is one that forms part of the boundary feature or is attached to it such that livestock do not pass between it and the wall
- make stockproof (with wooden rails) any gaps left in the wall to allow for tree growth
- rebuild stone features into the wall such as sheep creeps, troughs and stiles
- use original stone where it is available
- make sure imported stone matches the ones traditional to the area in type, size and style
- haul stone only when ground conditions are firm enough to prevent damage to the fields next to the wall
- remove any leftover materials used to complete the wall from the site, and restore the ground where you have carried out the work

Do not:

- disturb foundation stones unless it is necessary to create a firm base
- use topsoil, earth, sand or fine gravel as filling between courses
- use concrete or mortar
- take stone from other walls, banks or buildings on the holding
- place stone on features of archaeological, historic or wildlife value as identified on the Farm Environment Record (FER), Environmental Information Map or Historic Environment Farm Environmental Record (HEFER) (where applicable)

### **Keeping records**

You must send the following with your application:

- a map showing the location of any wall-side trees, saplings and stone features (this can be the FER)

You must keep the following records and supply them with your payment claim:

- photographs of the completed work

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work

- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of each length of wall to be restored before work starts

Please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the relevant manual ([Mid Tier](#), [Higher Tier](#) or [Hedgerows and Boundaries](#) for more detail.

## Related Mid Tier items

You can use this item on the same length as the following items:

- [BN13 - Top wiring – stone walls](#)
- [BN14 - Stone wall supplement - stone from quarry](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### Choose the right style for the wall

Restore the wall so that it matches the stone types and wall styles in the immediate area. There can be distinctive local variations, often in relatively small areas. The style is determined by the composition, shape and size of the stone used and the way it can be split and shaped. Using the right type of stone will make sure that you can match the required style.

### Restoring the wall

You should:

- dismantle the existing structure by hand, separating and sorting copings (covering stones), through stones and building stones for reuse
- lay stones level and pack under each one so that it will not move
- if using filling, always bring up the level of the middle of the wall for each course before going to the next one - it should not be possible to see daylight through the wall
- place through stones where the wall is double-faced (they cannot stick out more than 15 centimetres (cm), so weight and stresses are spread evenly

- place stones next to each other so they touch as much as possible, covering joints below as you build (for example 1 stone on 2, then 2 stones on 1)
- place each stone with its length reaching well into the wall, not along the outside
- pack coping stones (stones placed along the top of the wall, 'capping' it) as firmly as possible to tie the whole wall together
- finish the entrances and wall ends with a well-built cheek end

The sides of the wall should slant evenly on both sides, creating an even 'batter' from a wide base to a narrower top of the wall. Avoid creating bulges as it weakens the wall and may cause collapse.

## **Further information**

See the [Mid Tier](#), [Higher Tier](#) or [Hedgerows and Boundaries Grant manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **BN13: Top wiring - stone wall**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the top wiring - stone wall item.

### **How much will be paid**

£3.60 per metre (m).

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier, Higher Tier and hedgerows and boundaries grant

Only on:

- walls being rebuilt with the [BN12 - Stone wall restoration](#) item
- to exclude stock from new woodland planting or other land management options

### **How it benefits the environment**

If successful there will be a rebuilt stone wall with top-wiring which will help to control livestock and conserve traditional landscapes.

### **Requirements**

- use round timber posts with a top diameter of 75mm
- set the posts at centres no wider than 3m (for mild steel wire) or 10m (for high-tensile wire)
- use posts long enough so that the top wire can be fixed at no more than 300mm above the top of the wall
- use timber that is fully peeled and tanalised or treated with an appropriate preservative
- knock the posts into the ground and either set them leaning against the wall or set them alternately on opposite sides of the wall
- secure the posts

- staple either half height sheep netting or 2 lines of steel wire 200mm apart to the upright posts
- use 4mm diameter mild steel or 3.15mm diameter high tensile steel line wire
- ensure the wire is properly strained and fastened with galvanised staples

## **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of the lengths of wall you plan to be top-wired
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

## **Related Mid Tier items**

This supplement can be used on the same length as the following items and supplements:

- [BN12 - Stone wall restoration](#)
- [BN14 - Stone wall supplement - stone from quarry](#)

## **Further information**

See the [Mid Tier manual](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) or [hedgerows and boundaries grant manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **BN14: Stone wall supplement - stone from quarry**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the stone wall supplement - stone from quarry.

### **How much will be paid**

£44 per metre (m).

### **Where to use this supplement**

Available for Mid Tier, Higher Tier and hedgerows and boundaries grant

Only on walls being rebuilt using the [BN12 - Stone wall restoration](#) item.

How this supplement will benefit the environment

If successful there will be a rebuilt stone wall on sites where there was insufficient re-usable stone on the farm.

### **Requirements**

- use imported stone that matches the type, size and style of the wall being restored
- restore the wall as specified by the [BN12 - Stone wall restoration](#) item
- remove all surplus stone from the site after work has been completed

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of each length of wall to be restored
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail



Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Related Mid Tier items

This supplement can be used on the same length as the following items:

- [BN12 - Stone wall restoration](#)
- [BN13 - Top wiring – stone walls](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this supplement

The following advice is to help you successfully carry out this supplement, but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

### **Choose the right style for the wall**

Restore the wall so that it matches the stone types and wall styles in the immediate area. There can be distinctive local variations, often in relatively small areas. The style is determined by the composition, shape and size of the stone used and the way it can be split and shaped. Using the right type of stone will ensure that the required style can be matched.

## **BN15: Stone wall supplement - difficult sites**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the stone wall supplement - difficult sites item.

### **How much will be paid**

£7.90 per metre (m).

### **Where to use this supplement**

Available for Higher Tier.

Only on walls being rebuilt using the [BN12 - Stone wall restoration](#).

The walls must be one of the following:

- on a slope with an incline of more than 30 degrees
- greater than 1.6m in height
- in an inaccessible or remote location, such as a considerable distance from a track or situated on boggy ground

How this supplement will benefit the environment

If successful there will be a rebuilt stone wall which will help to control livestock and conserve traditional landscapes.

### **Requirements**

- restore the wall as specified by the [BN12 - Stone wall restoration](#)

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable

- photographs of each length of wall to be restored
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

### **Related items**

This supplement can be used on the same length as the following items and supplements:

- [BN12 - Stone wall restoration](#)
- [BN13 - Stone wall supplement - top wiring](#)
- [BN14 - Stone wall supplement - stone from quarry](#)

## **CT1: Management of coastal sand dunes and vegetated shingle**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the management of coastal sand dunes and vegetated shingle option.

### **How much will be paid**

£217 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Higher Tier on whole or part parcels, on a non-rotational basis only on:

- coastal sand dune priority habitat
- vegetated shingle priority habitat

### **Features that can be included in this option**

You can include the following features if they are part of the land, even if they are not eligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- scrub
- open water
- bare ground

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It is designed to make sure that existing coastal sand dunes and vegetated shingle sites are managed appropriately. This includes both sites in good condition or those that need restoration, such as where management has stopped or scrub has invaded.

If successful there will be:

- sand dunes and shingle areas in favourable condition on Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSIs), meaning they are adequately conserved and are meeting conservation objectives
- sand dunes and shingle areas in improving condition if not on SSSIs, meaning measures are in place that if maintained will make them favourable over time
- a mosaic of open habitats and bare ground with typical sand dune and shingle plant species, such as sand couch, marram grass and sand sedge, although the exact species will depend on the habitat's location
- a gradual change from less stable and seasonal habitats near the beach (including drift line vegetation) to more stable landward habitats, connected by moving sand or shingle

## Requirements

You must:

- provide or maintain areas of bare ground
- carry out extensive grazing (or cutting if grazing is not possible) to encourage vegetation mosaics
- allow natural and dynamic coastal changes, such as changes due to storms or windblow (deposits of windblown sand)
- control scrub or other invasive plant species

The agreement will set out what you cannot do. It's likely you'll not be allowed to

- use fertilisers or manures
- use supplementary feed
- apply any lime
- plough, cultivate or re-seed

## Keeping records

You must send the following with your application:

- a map of permitted access routes - you can mark these on any map, including your Farm Environment Record (FER)

On your annual claim must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels
- photographs of the management undertaken

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. You should discuss and agree these requirements with your adviser.

## **Related options**

You can locate the following options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [OR2 – Organic conversion – unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT2 – Organic land management – unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [SP1 - Difficult sites supplement](#)
- [SP3 - Bracken control supplement](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP5 - Shepherding supplement](#)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly](#)
- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement.](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [SP10 - Administration of group managed agreements supplement](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

Dunes and shingle are important elements of coastal landscapes, with active processes creating variation in their structure. These coastal systems also act as an important form of natural sea defence, so play a significant part in adaptation to climate change. The history of management is important to understand: sites that have a tradition of low-intensity grazing should maintain this, while in other areas, such as

shingle, the habitat would be damaged if grazing was introduced for the first time.

So while grazing is encouraged on many dune sites, it is not mandatory in all cases; where dune grazing is not possible, you can use a selective cutting regime as an alternative. On many shingle sites, grazing and cutting is not appropriate, but you can still use this option where the shingle forms part of a wider coastal system (see below). You should keep any seaweed or driftwood accumulations.

Where invasion of tall coarse grasses and scrub such as blackthorn, bramble and sea buckthorn has occurred due to under-grazing, carry out capital works to keep the scrub within agreed limits and adjust your grazing or cutting regimes to prevent re-invasion.

Consider option [CT2 - Creation of coastal sand dunes and vegetated shingle on arable land and improved grassland](#), if the habitat is expanding through rollback onto nearby arable or grassland. Rollback is the movement of dunes inland due to coastal processes and wind blow.

## **Further information**

You can find more information on the Buglife habitat management pages for:

- [coastal sand dunes](#)
- [coastal vegetated shingle](#)

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **CT2: Creation of coastal sand dunes and vegetated shingle on arable land and improved grassland**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the creation of coastal sand dunes and vegetated shingle on arable land and improved grassland option.

### **How much will be paid**

£314 per hectare (ha).

### **How long this option lasts**

This option runs for 10 years, not the standard 5 years for the scheme, in recognition of the level of management change involved.

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Higher Tier on whole or part parcels which are non-rotational, on land next to existing sand dunes or shingle that is either:

- arable land
- improved grassland

### **Where this option cannot be used**

To create sand dunes and coastal vegetated shingle in the following situations:

- as compensation, planning consent condition or other [Habitat Regulations](#) requirement
- if the work is necessary as part of a planning permission condition
- on land that has previously received 20 years' agri-environment funding for coastal habitat creation



## Features that can be included in this option

You can include the following features if they are part of the land, even if they are not eligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- scrub
- open water
- bare ground

## How this option will benefit the environment

It creates sand dunes and coastal vegetated shingle on arable land or improved grassland locations that were:

- once part of sand dune or shingle systems
- next to active sand dune or shingle systems

If successful, developing features will include:

- sand dunes and vegetated shingle
- transition areas (transitions between shingle and dune and nearby habitats)
- the specialised and local species that sand dunes and vegetated shingle in the area support

## Requirements

You must:

- provide or maintain areas of bare ground
- carry out extensive grazing (or cutting if grazing is not possible) to encourage vegetation mosaics
- allow natural and dynamic coastal changes, such as changes due to storms or windblow (deposits of windblown sand)
- control scrub or other invasive plant species
- agree all drainage works, including modification to existing drainage, in writing with Natural England before you carry out any works

The agreement will set out what you must not do but it's likely that you will not be allowed to:

- use fertilisers or manures
- use supplementary feed
- apply any lime
- plough, cultivate or re-seed

### **Keeping records**

You must send the following with your application:

- a map of permitted access routes – you can mark these on any map, including the Farm Environment Record (FER)

On your annual payment claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels

### **Related options**

You can locate the following options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [OR1 – Organic conversion – improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 – Organic land management – improved permanent grassland](#)
- [SP3 - Bracken control supplement](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP5 - Shepherding supplement](#)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly](#)
- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement.](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [SP10 - Administration of group managed agreements supplement](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

Dunes and shingle are important elements of coastal landscapes, with active processes creating variation in their structure. These coastal systems also act as an important form of natural sea defence, so play a significant part in adaptation to climate change. Allow sand and shingle to accumulate or migrate inland following storms and other coastal processes.

While dune vegetation is establishing on the rollback areas some light grazing or cutting may be appropriate, but you should monitor this very carefully to avoid damage. Once dune vegetation is established grazing is encouraged on most sites, but is not mandatory in all cases. Where dune grazing is not possible, a selective cutting regime is an acceptable alternative. On many shingle sites, neither grazing nor cutting is appropriate, but this option may still be used where the shingle forms part of a wider coastal system (see below). You should keep any seaweed or driftwood accumulations.

### Further information

- See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **CT3: Management of coastal saltmarsh**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the management of coastal saltmarsh option.

### **How much will be paid**

£77 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Higher Tier on whole or part parcels, on a non-rotational basis, only on saltmarsh and transitional areas (transitions to adjacent shingle or dune habitats) that are both:

- above mean high water neap tide level (the average throughout the year of the heights of two successive high waters when the tidal range is at its smallest)
- covered by seawater between 25 and 600 times a year (1 to 24 times a year for transitional areas)

### **Features that can be included in this option**

You can include the following features if they are part of the saltmarsh area, even if they are not eligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- open water (such as small lagoons and creeks)
- bare mud (if within the saltmarsh mosaic, but not separate external areas of mudflat)

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It maintains coastal saltmarsh in good condition and restores saltmarsh in unfavourable condition when grazing or cutting are key factors.

If successful there will be:

- saltmarsh areas in favourable condition on Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSIs), meaning they are adequately conserved and are meeting conservation objectives
- saltmarsh areas in improving condition if not on SSSIs, meaning measures are in place that if maintained will make them favourable over time
- a mosaic of open habitats and bare ground with typical saltmarsh plant species such as sea aster, sea purslane, sea-blite and sea-lavender, although the exact species will depend on the location of the saltmarsh
- a gradual change from less stable and seasonal habitats on the seaward side to the more stable, well-established landward saltmarsh and transitions covered only by the highest tides

## Requirements

You must:

- maintain or re-introduce favourable management, mainly through suitable grazing, where appropriate, but also by limiting disturbance
- continue an appropriate grazing regime (the right types of stock, in the right numbers and at the right times of year) or stop grazing where necessary (for example, to restore condition or prevent erosion)
- maintain the saltmarsh vegetation by not disturbing the surface, but allow natural and dynamic coastal changes, such as changes due to storms or windblow

The agreement will set out what you cannot do. It's likely you'll not be allowed to:

- use fertilisers or manures
- use supplementary feed
- plough, cultivate or re-seed

## Keeping records

You must send the following with your application:

- a map of permitted access routes - you can mark these on any map, including your Farm Environment Record (FER)

On your annual claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels
- photographs of the management undertaken

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. You should discuss and agree these requirements with your adviser.

## **Related options**

You can locate the following options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [CT6 - Coastal vegetation management supplement](#)
- [OR2 – Organic conversion – unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT2 – Organic land management – unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [SP1 - Difficult sites supplement](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly](#)
- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement.](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

The precise management agreed will depend on the particular conditions on a site. It could include any of the following:

- light grazing
- no grazing
- controlling damaging activities associated with public access

This option will contribute to climate change adaptation and help to conserve and strengthen the distinctive local character of estuarine and coastal landscapes.

A site suitable for restoration through this option may be one that is currently being grazed but where this is impacting on the quality of the habitat and associated species. For example, a site may currently be over-grazed or grazed at an inappropriate time of year. Alternatively, it may be a site that needs grazing, but is difficult to graze and has become dominated by a few coarse plant species. Where significant changes to grazing levels are required, these can be supported under the [CT6](#) supplement (to be used with this option). You can include the transitions between saltmarsh and other habitats to landward, exposed to infrequent tidal inundation in this option as they can support important species and plant communities which are increasingly rare.

You should keep any seaweed or driftwood accumulations and allow sediment to accumulate or migrate inland following storms and other coastal processes.

## Further information

You can find more information from:

- the Environment Agency in the [saltmarsh management manual](#)
- Natural England in the [climate change adaptation manual](#)

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **CT4: Creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat on arable land**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat on arable land option.

### **How much will be paid**

£442 per hectare (ha).

### **How long this option lasts**

This option runs for 20 years, not the standard 5 years for the scheme, in recognition of the level of management change involved and its largely irreversible nature.

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Higher Tier on whole or part parcels, only on sites that are both of the following:

- next to saltmarsh or other inter-tidal habitats
- arable land that lies behind a coastal defence - most of the land must lie below mean high water spring tide level (the average of the heights of two successive high waters when the tidal range is greatest)

The creation of the inter-tidal habitat must both:

- conform to the [Environment Agency's flood and coastal risk management strategy for England](#)
- be approved by the Environment Agency and Natural England

### **Where this option cannot be used**

If the planned creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat is:

- as compensation, planning consent condition or other [Habitat Regulations](#) requirement



- on land that has previously received 20 years' agri-environment funding for inter-tidal habitat creation

## **Features that can be included in this option**

You can include the following features if they are part of the land area (once inter-tidal habitat is created), even if they are not eligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- open water (such as lagoons and creeks)
- bare mud

## **How this option will benefit the environment**

It creates inter-tidal and saline habitats, including transitional areas (transitions between saltmarsh and nearby habitats), on arable land or improved grassland.

If successful there will be:

- inter-tidal and saltmarsh areas developing (note that it will not be possible to precisely predict the balance of saltmarsh and mudflat in a dynamic coastal system)
- a mosaic of open habitats such as lagoons, creeks and mud flats
- saltmarsh plants colonising more stable higher areas of the habitats
- lugworm casts, feeding birds and other evidence of marine invertebrates

As a result of tides bringing in sediment and seeds, a range of inter-tidal habitats will form such as mudflats, coastal saltmarsh, together with saline lagoons and transitions between these and other habitats where the topography promotes this. These habitats will benefit many specialised plants and animals adapted to the differing degrees of tidal inundation and saline influence. These factors result in variations in vegetation cover from bare mud to dense saltmarsh, and succession between them over time.

The creation of small-scale saline lagoons, which require an input of seawater, can be promoted by this option. This option will also contribute to more sustainable flood management, adaptation to climate change and enhancement of the coastal landscape. Where sediment is deposited, the option may contribute to the protection of important archaeological sites from the impacts of ploughing or other forms of cultivation (but early

consultation with historic specialists will be needed where such sites are present).

## Requirements

You may need a [Feasibility Study \(PA2\)](#) if your application includes this option. It will include how to:

- prepare the site and manage any existing vegetation
- excavate any lagoons or creeks
- manage vegetation once established
- carry out any necessary breaches to the sea wall

## Keeping records

Before you apply, you should contact both Natural England and the Environment Agency for advice and get any consents or permissions required. You do not need to send these with your application, but you will need to submit them with your payment claim.

You must send the following with your application:

- a map of permitted access routes - you can mark these on any map, including your Farm Environment Record (FER)

On your annual claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You must send the following with your claim:

- written support from the Environment Agency

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- a grazing record for any sites grazed
- written support from Natural England adviser
- photographs of the management undertaken

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. You should discuss and agree these requirements with your adviser.

## Related options

You can locate these supplements on the same area as this option:

- [CT6 - Coastal vegetation management supplement](#)
- [OR1 – Organic conversion – improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 – Organic land management – improved permanent grassland](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly](#)
- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement.](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

To make sure that transitional areas are included in the agreement area, the boundary of the agreement should normally extend to Highest Astronomical Tide (HAT) plus 1 metre. This will allow for development of transitional zone, including unusual transitions from saline to brackish to freshwater habitats. You need to identify such instances in the initial planning stages before completion of the agreement and clearly justify for individual sites.

This is a specialised option that is only likely to be used in a relatively small number of cases, where a managed breach of coastal defences is planned. On sites where there is interest and potential for this option, you should talk to Natural England and the Environment Agency at an early stage. Planning for such projects can often take several years, with coastal process modelling and feasibility studies usually needed.

Where coastal defences are not being maintained and are then overtopped or breached naturally, option [CT5 - Creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat by non-intervention](#) would apply.

## Further information

You can find more information in:

- the Environment Agency's [saltmarsh management manual](#)
- The Saltmarsh Creation Handbook: A Project Manager's Guide to the Creation of Saltmarsh and Inter-tidal Mudflat by AS Nottage and PA Robertson (RSPB/CIWEM, 2005)

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **CT5: Creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat by non-intervention**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat by non-intervention option.

### **How much will be paid**

£271 per hectare (ha).

### **How long this option lasts**

This option runs for 20 years, not the standard 5 years for the scheme, in recognition of the level of management change involved and its largely irreversible nature.

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Higher Tier on whole or part parcels on a non-rotational basis on sites that are both:

- next to either saltmarsh or other inter-tidal habitats
- on land that lies behind a coastal defence - most of the land must lie below mean high water spring tide level (the average of the heights of two successive high waters when the tidal range is greatest)

Suitable sites may have:

- defences that are overtopped by high tides
- recently been breached and show evidence of being inundated or percolated by salt water through the defences

The creation of the inter-tidal habitat must both:

- conform to the [Environment Agency's flood and coastal risk management strategy for England](#)
- be approved by the Environment Agency and Natural England

## Where this option cannot be used

If the creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat is:

- as compensation, planning consent condition or other [Habitat Regulations](#) requirement
- on land that has previously received 20 years' agri-environment funding for coastal habitat creation

## Features that can be included in this option

You can include the following features if they are part of the land area (once inter-tidal habitat is created), even if they are not eligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- open water (such as lagoons and creeks)
- bare mud

## How this option will benefit the environment

It creates inter-tidal and saline habitats, including transitional areas (transitions between saltmarsh and nearby habitats), following the unmanaged breach of sea walls or the overtopping of sea walls.

If successful there will be:

- inter-tidal and saltmarsh areas developing (note that it will not be possible to precisely predict the balance of saltmarsh and mudflat in a dynamic coastal system)
- a mosaic of open habitats such as lagoons, creeks and mudflats
- saltmarsh plants colonising more stable higher areas of the habitats
- lugworm casts, feeding birds and other evidence of marine invertebrates

As a result of tides bringing in sediment and seeds, a range of inter-tidal habitats will form such as mudflats, coastal saltmarsh, together with saline lagoons and transitions between these and other habitats where the topography promotes this. These habitats will benefit many specialised plants and animals adapted to the differing degrees of tidal inundation and saline influence. These factors result in variations in vegetation cover from bare mud to dense grassland, and succession between them over time.

The creation of small-scale saline lagoons, which require an input of seawater, can be promoted by this option. This option will also contribute to more sustainable flood management, adaptation to climate change and enhancement of the coastal landscape. Where sediment is deposited, the option may contribute to the protection of important archaeological sites from the impacts of ploughing or other forms of cultivation (but early consultation with historic specialists will be needed where such sites are present).

## **Requirements**

If your application is successful the planned management will be detailed in a feasibility study for the site. It will include how to:

- prepare the site and manage any existing vegetation
- excavate any lagoons or creeks
- manage vegetation once established
- make any further breaches to the sea wall, where needed
- agree all drainage works, including modification to existing drainage, in writing with Natural England before you carry out any work

## **Keeping records**

Before you apply, contact both Natural England and the Environment Agency for advice and get the consents or permissions required. You do not need to provide the consents or permissions with your application, but you must send them with your payment claim.

You must send the following with your application:

- a map of permitted access routes – you can mark these on any map including the Farm Environment Record (FER)

On your annual payment claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements and send the following:

- support from the Environment Agency

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- any sites grazed will require a grazing activity record
- photographs of the management undertaken

## Related options

You can locate these supplements on the same area as this option:

- [CT6 - Coastal vegetation management supplement](#)
- [OR1 – Organic conversion – improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OR2 – Organic conversion – unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 – Organic land management – improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT2 – Organic land management – unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly](#)
- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement.](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following advice is helpful, but are not requirements for this item.

To make sure that transitional areas are included in the agreement area, the boundary of the agreement should normally extend to Highest Astronomical Tide (HAT) plus 1 metre. This will allow for development of transitional zone, including unusual transitions from saline to brackish to freshwater habitats. Such instances would need to be identified in the initial planning stages prior to completion of the agreement and clearly justified for individual sites.

This is a specialised option that is only likely to be used in a relatively small number of cases, where coastal defences are not being maintained and are then overtopped or breached naturally. Where a managed breach is planned, then options CT4 - Creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat on arable land or CT7 - Creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat on intensive grassland would apply.



On sites where there is interest and potential for this option, discussions should be held with Natural England and the Environment Agency at an early stage. It should be recognised that unmanaged sea wall breaches are of course unpredictable, but contingency plans can be put in place.

## **Further information**

Further information is available from:

- the Environment Agency's [saltmarsh management manual](#)
- The Saltmarsh Creation Handbook: A Project Manager's Guide to the Creation of Saltmarsh and Inter-tidal Mudflat by AS Nottage and PA Robertson (RSPB/CIWEM, 2005)
- See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **CT6: Coastal vegetation management supplement**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the coastal vegetation management supplement supplement.

### **How much will be paid**

£117 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this supplement**

Available for Higher Tier

Whole or part parcel

Non-rotational

Only with one of the following options:

- [CT3 - Management of coastal saltmarsh](#)
- [CT4 - Creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat on arable land](#)
- [CT5 - Creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat by non-intervention](#)
- [CT7 - Creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat on intensive grassland](#)

How this supplement will benefit the environment

It supports saltmarsh vegetation management, for example by reducing existing levels of grazing, or introducing grazing or cutting.

If successful there will be:

- more varied sward structure and greater wildlife diversity
- better control of any scrub and coarse vegetation
- increased numbers of saltmarsh nesting species (such as redshank) due to more varied vegetation structure
- a reduction in trampling damage where grazing levels have been reduced

## Requirements

Agreement holders will need to carry out specific cutting or grazing management tailored to their site.

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- any sites grazed will require a grazing activity record

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

### Related supplements

This supplement can be located on the same area as the following supplements:

- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly](#)
- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement.](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)

### Further information

Further information is available from:

- the Environment Agency's [saltmarsh management manual](#)
- advice on [managing coastal saltmarsh](#)

## **CT7: Creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat on intensive grassland**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat on intensive grassland option.

### **How much will be paid**

£276 per hectare (ha).

### **How long this option lasts**

This option runs for 20 years, not the standard 5 years for the scheme, in recognition of the level of management change involved and its largely irreversible nature.

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Higher Tier on whole or part-parcels which are non-rotational, on sites that are both:

- next to saltmarsh or other inter-tidal habitats
- grassland that lies behind a coastal defence - most of the land must lie below mean high water spring tide level (the average of the heights of two successive high waters when the tidal range is greatest)

The creation of the inter-tidal habitat must both:

- conform to the [Environment Agency's flood and coastal risk management strategy for England](#)
- be approved by the Environment Agency and Natural England

### **Where this option cannot be used**

If the planned creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat is:

- as compensation, planning consent condition or other [Habitat Regulations](#) requirement

- on areas of grassland priority habitat, unless agreed with Natural England
- on land that has previously received 20 years' agri-environment funding for inter-tidal habitat creation

## **Features that can be included in this option**

You can include the following features if they are part of the land area (once inter-tidal habitat is created), even if they are not eligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- open water (such as lagoons and creeks)
- bare mud

## **How this option will benefit the environment**

It creates inter-tidal and saline habitats, including transitional areas (transitions between saltmarsh and nearby habitats), on grassland or improved grassland.

If successful there will be:

- inter-tidal and saltmarsh areas developing
- a mosaic of open habitats such as lagoons, creeks and mudflats
- saltmarsh plants colonising more stable higher areas of the habitats
- lugworm casts, feeding birds and other evidence of marine invertebrates

As a result of tides bringing in sediment and seeds, a range of inter-tidal habitats will form such as mudflats, coastal saltmarsh, together with saline lagoons and transitions between these and other habitats where the topography promotes this. These habitats will benefit many specialised plants and animals adapted to the differing degrees of tidal inundation and saline influence. These factors result in variations in vegetation cover from bare mud to dense saltmarsh, and succession between them over time.

The creation of small-scale saline lagoons, which require an input of seawater, can be promoted by this option. This option will also contribute to more sustainable flood management, adaptation to climate change and enhancement of the coastal landscape. Where sediment is deposited, the option may contribute to the protection of important archaeological sites from the impacts of ploughing or other forms of cultivation (but early

consultation with historic specialists will be needed where such sites are present).

## Requirements

You must:

- agree all drainage works, including modification to existing drainage, in writing with Natural England you carry out any work

You may need a [Feasibility Study \(PA2\)](#) to include this option in an application. The study will include how to:

- prepare the site and manage any existing vegetation
- excavate any lagoons or creeks
- manage vegetation once established
- carry out any necessary breaches to the sea wall

### Keeping records

Before you apply you should contact both Natural England and the Environment Agency for advice and gain consents or permissions required. You do not need to provide the consents or permissions with your application, but you will need to submit them with your payment claim.

You must send the following with your application:

- a map of permitted access routes – you can mark these on any map, including the Farm Environment Record (FER)

On your annual payment claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements and must send the following:

- support from Environment Agency

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- a grazing activity record for any sites grazed
- photographs of the management undertaken

## Related options

You can locate the following options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [CT6 - Coastal vegetation management supplement](#)
- [OR1 – Organic conversion – improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 - Organic land management – improved permanent grassland](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly](#)
- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement.](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [SP10 - Administration of group managed agreements supplement](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

To make sure that transitional areas are included in the agreement area, the boundary of the agreement should normally extend to Highest Astronomical Tide (HAT) plus 1 metre. This will allow for development of transitional zone, including unusual transitions from saline to brackish to freshwater habitats. Such instances would need to be identified in the initial planning stages prior to completion of the agreement and clearly justified for individual sites.

This is a specialised option that is only likely to be used in a relatively small number of cases, where a managed breach of coastal defences is planned. On sites where there is interest and potential for this option, discussions should be held with Natural England and the Environment Agency at an early stage. Planning for such projects can often take several years, with coastal process modelling and feasibility studies usually needed.

Where coastal defences are not being maintained and are then overtopped or breached naturally, option [CT5 - Creation of inter-tidal and saline habitat by non-intervention](#) would apply.

## Further information

You can find more information in:

- the Environment Agency's [saltmarsh management manual](#)
- The Saltmarsh Creation Handbook: A Project Manager's Guide to the Creation of Saltmarsh and Inter-tidal Mudflat by AS Nottage and PA Robertson (RSPB/CIWEM, 2005)

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.



## **ED1: Educational access**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the educational access option.

### **How much will be paid**

£290 per visit.

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Higher Tier

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It lets school pupils visit the farm for educational experiences and allows for care farming visits.

Visitors can use the [Farm visit evaluation](#) form to give feedback.

### **Requirements**

You must:

- carry out a health and safety check and prepare a risk assessment for the farm, then give this to potential group leaders
- fill in the online [Farm Facts Template](#) for the farm within 3 months of the start of the agreement
- carry out enough promotion so that at least 1 and at most 25 group visits happen every year
- make sure the tour of the farm lasts at least 2 hours and is conducted by a member of farm staff or volunteer who suits the visitors' needs
- make sure the tour explains the links between farming, conservation and food production using the agreement land as a classroom
- fill in the online [Farm visit evaluation](#) form for each visit claimed. These must be submitted to RPA no later than 31 January following the claim year.

Do not:

- charge for visits
- receive any other direct income from government funds relating to the educational visit

### **Keeping records**

You must keep the following records and send them with your claim:

- copies of the standard farm visit evaluation form - as visits may take place after the annual claim deadline, RPA will accept valid forms until 31 January following the claim year.
- copy of the farm facts leaflet for the first claim.

### **Related options**

You can locate this option with all other options, items and supplements.

### **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

#### **Get letters of support**

When you apply for this option you should supply letters of support from 3 or more local schools or care service providers (such as care homes, mental health care providers).

The letters must show a wish to visit the farm for educational experiences.

#### **Carrying out visits**

You can use all or part of the farm for visits and can use neighbouring land if it offers additional benefit. Visits should aim to last at least 2 hours and involve at least 6 attendees. There is no upper restriction on visitor numbers or length of time a visit lasts.

These groups and individuals are eligible for visits:

- schools and other educational establishments for children from birth to the end of Key Stage 4 (age 16)
- care farming parties or individuals

You must not split parties into smaller groups and present claims for each group. You can split parties for the tours, but you can only claim one visit for the total number of visitors on the holding at the same time.

This is still the case if the visitors come from different establishments.

## **Further information**

You can find useful information on how to host a farm visit on the following websites:

- [Visit My Farm](#) has resources for land managers to support educational visits, ideas for successful visits, health and safety information and suggestions on how to maximise visitor numbers and enjoyment
- [Social Farms & Gardens](#) offers support and resources on the therapeutic use of farms
- [LEAF Education](#) educates children and young people about food and farming in a sustainable countryside
- [Linking Environment and Farming](#) works to build public understanding of food and farming

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **FG1: Fencing**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the fencing item.

### **How much will be paid**

£4.00 per metre (m).

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier, Higher Tier and woodland creation grant

Only:

- in conjunction with a habitat management or creation option where new fencing is required to meet the option grazing requirements

or

- to prevent water pollution in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution caused by farming

or

- to protect environmental features

### **Where this item cannot be used**

- on historic or archaeological features as identified in the HEFER
- on a site where a fence has previously received a grant

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

If successful this item will help control livestock and protect environmental features. It will also help to manage habitats.

### **Requirements**

- remove all old fencing material before putting up the new fencing

- use softwood timber that is fully peeled, coated with wood preservative and pressure treated, or treated with an approved preservative - untreated durable timber can be used as set out in the Forestry Commission guide to forest fencing
- put up a fence at least 1.05m high
- use strands of galvanised 4mm mild plain steel wire or 2.5mm barbed wire
- use enough strands to control the livestock
- use straining posts that are at least 125mm by 125mm square (or have a 100mm top diameter) and are at least 1.87m long
- set the straining posts at least 750mm into the ground and no more than 150m apart
- place a straining post at every change of direction (horizontal or vertical) and at each end of the fence
- use struts that are 75mm by 75mm square, or have a 65mm top diameter, and 1.87m long
- set the struts at least 450mm into the ground and mortise them into the straining post
- use intermediate posts that are 75mm by 75mm square (or have a 65mm top diameter) and 1.75m long
- set the intermediate posts at least 600mm in the ground and no more than 3.5m apart
- make sure that all the materials meet the relevant [British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance

Do not:

- attach the fence to trees or hedgerows
- block or restrict [access to open access land](#)

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of the existing site

- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

## **Related Mid Tier items**

This item can be used on the same length as the following supplement:

- [FG4 - Rabbit fencing supplement](#)

## **Further information**

See the [Mid Tier manual](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) or [woodland creation grant manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **FG2: Sheep netting**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the sheep netting item.

### **How much will be paid**

£4.90 per metre (m).

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier, Higher Tier and woodland creation grant.

Only:

- in conjunction with a habitat management or creation option

or

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution caused by farming

or

- to protect environmental features

### **Where this item cannot be used**

- on historic or archaeological features as identified in the HEFER
- on a site where a fence has previously received a grant

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

If successful there this item will protect environmental features from livestock. It will also help manage habitats.

### **Requirements**

- remove all old fencing material before putting up the new fencing

- use softwood timber that is fully peeled, coated with wood preservative and pressure treated, or treated with an approved preservative - untreated durable timber can be used as set out in the Forestry Commission guide to forest fencing
- put up a steel wire mesh fence at least 1.05m high
- use additional strands of galvanised steel wire (plain or barbed) if you need extra height
- use straining posts that have a top diameter of at least 125mm, or are 100 by 100mm in cross-section when sawn
- make sure the straining posts are 1.85m long if set in concrete and 2.15m long otherwise
- place the straining posts no more than 150m apart if using mild steel line wire, or 300m apart for high tensile wire
- use a straining post at every change of direction (horizontal or vertical) and at each end of the fence
- use struts that have a top diameter of at least 80mm, or are 75mm by 75mm when sawn
- make sure the struts are 1.6m if set in concrete and 1.9m long otherwise
- notch struts into the straining post at an angle of no more than 45 degrees
- use intermediate posts that have a top diameter of at least 65mm, or are 75mm by 75mm when sawn
- make sure the intermediate posts are 1.7m long and space them no further than 3.5m apart
- make sure that all the materials you use meet the relevant [British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance

Do not:

- attach the fence to trees or hedgerows
- block or restrict [access to open access land](#)

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work



- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of the site before work starts
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

## **Related Mid Tier items**

This item can be used on the same feature as the following supplement:

- [FG4 - Rabbit fencing supplement](#)

## **Further information**

See the [Mid Tier manual](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) or [woodland creation grant manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **FG3: Permanent electric fencing**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the permanent electric fencing item.

### **How much will be paid**

£4.90 per metre (m).

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier.

Only:

- where new fencing is required to meet option grazing requirements

or

- in areas affected by water pollution caused by farming

or

- to protect environmental features

### **Where this item cannot be used**

- on historic or archaeological features as identified in the HEFER
- on a site where a fence has previously received a grant

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

If successful this item will help control livestock and protect environmental features. It will also help to manage habitats.

### **Requirements**

- erect wire fencing at least 1050mm high using a minimum of 4 mild steel or high tensile plain wires

- use straining posts with a top diameter of at least 150mm and 2150mm long, spaced according to the type of wire used
- use struts with a top diameter of least 80mm and 2100mm long, notched into straining posts
- use intermediate posts with a top diameter of at least 63mm and 1700mm long, spaced according to the type of wire used
- install a mains-operated energiser in accordance with the Institute of Electrical Engineers IEE Regulations
- make sure that all the materials meet the relevant [British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance

Do not:

- block or restrict [access to open access land](#)

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of the existing site
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

### **Related Mid Tier items**

This item can be used on the same length as the following item:

- [FG4 - Rabbit fencing supplement](#)

### **Further information**

See the [Mid Tier manual](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.



## **FG4: Rabbit fencing supplement**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the rabbit fencing supplement.

### **How much will be paid**

£2.50 per metre (m).

### **Where to use this supplement**

Available for Mid Tier, Higher Tier and woodland creation grant.

Only with:

- [FG1 - Fencing](#)
- [FG2 - Sheep netting](#)
- [FG3 - Permanent electric fencing](#)
- [FG9 - Deer fencing](#)

### **How the item will benefit the environment**

If successful this item will help control rabbits and protect environmental features. It will also help to manage habitats.

### **Requirements**

- use galvanised, 18 gauge, 31mm hexagonal wire mesh to construct the rabbit fence
- attach the netting to a pair of 2.65mm, high tensile, spring steel straining wires using galvanised netting rings
- one of the straining wires should be at the bottom of the fence and one at the top
- bury the bottom edge of the netting to a depth of 150mm, or lap the netting on the surface of the ground towards the rabbit threat
- anchor lapped netting at 1m intervals

- make sure that all the materials meet the relevant [British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance

## **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of the existing site
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this supplement**

The following advice is to help you successfully carry out this supplement, but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

Use this supplement on a site where there is evidence of damage caused by rabbits, such as significant burrowing or crop damage.

## **Further information**

See the [Mid Tier manual](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) or [woodland creation grant manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **FG5: Fencing supplement - difficult sites**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the fencing supplement - difficult sites supplement.

### **How much will be paid**

£1.24 per metre (m).

### **Where to use this supplement**

Available for Higher Tier and Woodland Creation Grant.

Only with:

- [FG1 - Fencing](#)
- [FG2 - Sheep netting](#)
- [FG3 - Permanent electric fencing](#)
- [FG7 - Anti-predator combination fencing](#)
- [FG8 - Anti-predator temporary electric fencing](#)
- [FG9 - Deer fencing](#)

### **How this supplement will benefit the environment**

If successful this supplement will help control livestock, protect environmental features and help to manage habitats on difficult sites.

### **Requirements**

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- complete the associated fencing to the relevant standard
- agree a specification for the works with Natural England
- complete the works as set out in the approved specification

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of the existing site
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

## Related items

This supplement can be used on the same length as the following supplements:

- [FG4 - Rabbit fencing supplement](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this supplement

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

### Pick the right location

This use of this item is justified where the site being fenced:

- is remote
- cannot be accessed by vehicles
- is on steep slopes



- is prone to flooding or waterlogged for large parts of the year
- is in need of a lot of ground preparation

## **Further information**

See [Higher Tier manual](#) or [woodland creation grant manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **FG7: Anti-predator combination fencing**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the anti-predator combination fencing item.

### **How much will be paid**

£11.10 per metre (m).

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Higher Tier.

Only:

- on dry open grassland habitat used by breeding stone-curlew – in conjunction with a grassland option
- in a national breeding wader target area or where there are significant numbers of breeding waders – in conjunction with the management or creation of lowland wet grassland for breeding wader options ([GS9](#) and [GS11](#))
- on certain coastal habitats (such as shingle) used by breeding seabirds, especially terns

### **Where this item cannot be used**

On historic or archaeological features without specialist approval, such as from the county archaeologist or Historic England

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

It increases the productivity of priority ground-nesting birds when used with effective habitat management.

### **Requirements**

- agree with Natural England a specification for the fencing in year 1 of the agreement
- create a permanent anti-predator combination fence that meets the specification and timings as agreed with Natural England

- check regularly that target predators are absent from the enclosure
- prevent vegetation from touching the fence's live wires

## **Fence specification**

The fence is likely to:

- be buried about 25 cm deep into the ground using a trenching machine
- extend at least 1m above ground
- have electric wires set at around 65cm, 115cm, 130cm and 150cm above ground level, offset 5cm to 10 cm out from the post

Do not:

- allow the fence to restrict or block [access to open access land](#)

## **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of the existing site
- written support from NE adviser
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs during and after work
- detailed specification must be provided (by the end of year 1)
- records of the number of breeding pairs and breeding productivity of target species within and (as far as possible) outside the fence

Applicants must contact the Local Authority or Historic Environments Record Office before applying for this item for advice and gain any consents or permissions required. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit consents or permissions with your payment claim.

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item

Constructing the fence

This item can also be used as a stock fence but this item should only be used when fencing is needed at the same location each year.

Anti-predator fences are effective only against large ground predators such as foxes, badgers and hedgehogs. This item should be used alongside effective habitat management and when predators are likely to limit the productivity of the target species.

When constructing the fence it is necessary to:

- make sure that the fence surrounds a nesting and chick feeding habitat that benefits the target species
- place fencing away from tall vegetation
- leave enough space between the fence and boundary for vegetation management
- modify gates to stop predators getting through, over or under them

Maintaining the fence

Regular inspections are needed to ensure that:

- vegetation is not touching the fence
- the voltage is at the required level
- the structure is maintained to the required specification
- no target predators are in the enclosed area

The Natural England adviser will advise on how frequently these visits are needed (usually at least once a week when birds are nesting) and whether the power should be left on all year.

Control vegetation before it touches the bottom wire. Strim first under the fence line, then apply herbicide.

#### Licences

A disturbance licence will be needed if working near Schedule 1 species, such as stone curlew and little tern.

## **FG8: Anti-predator temporary electric fencing**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the anti-predator temporary electric fencing item.

### **How much will be paid**

£2.85 per metre (m).

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Higher Tier.

Only:

- on lowland wet grassland used by breeding waders - but only when practical reasons prevent the use of [FG7 - Anti-predator permanent combination fencing](#)
- on certain coastal habitats (such as shingle) used by breeding seabirds, especially terns
- on breeding stone-curlew habitats within grassland and arable land, where both of the following apply:
  - combination fencing cannot be used
  - predatory mammals are known to be limiting productivity

### **Where this item cannot be used**

On historic or archaeological features without specialist approval, such as from the county archaeologist or Historic England

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

It increases the productivity of priority ground-nesting birds when used with effective habitat management.

### **Requirements**

- agree with Natural England a specification for the fence in year 1 of the agreement

- create a temporary electric anti-predator fence that meets the specification and timings as agreed with Natural England
- regularly check that target predators are absent from the enclosure
- prevent vegetation from touching the fence's live wires

### **Fence specification**

The fence is likely to have:

- set wires at 5cm (live), 15cm (earthed), and then with alternate live and earthed wires set at 10cm intervals up to a height of 1.1m, with an additional live wire at 1.5m
- wires held by extended insulators
- a multi-strand top wire coloured white (to increase its visibility to deer and birds)

Do not:

- restrict or block [access to open access land](#)

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of the existing site
- written support from Natural England adviser
- item specification, if required
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work
- a detailed specification
- records of the number of breeding pairs and breeding productivity of target species within and (as far as possible) outside the fence

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item

Constructing the fence

Temporary electric anti-predator fencing is best for sites where the fencing cannot be left out all year, or where re-location of the fencing is necessary from year to year.

Anti-predator fences are effective only against large ground predators such as foxes, badgers and hedgehogs. This item should be used alongside effective habitat management and when predators are likely to limit the productivity of the target species.

Where possible the fence should be erected before breeding starts. If this is not possible it will need to be installed with minimal disturbance to the birds. Get a disturbance licence from Natural England if needed for Schedule 1 species, such as stone curlew and little tern.

When constructing the fence it is necessary to:

- make sure that the fence surrounds a nesting and chick feeding habitat that benefits the target species
- place fencing away from tall vegetation
- leave enough space between the fence and boundary for vegetation management
- modify gates to stop predators getting through, over or under them

Maintaining the fence

Regular inspections are needed to ensure that:

- vegetation is not touching the fence
- the voltage is at the required level
- the structure is maintained to the required specification



- no target predators are in the enclosed area

Natural England will advise on how frequently these visits are needed (usually at least once a week when birds are nesting).

Control vegetation before it touches the bottom wire. Strim first under the fence line, then apply herbicide.

## **FG9: Deer fencing**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the deer fencing item.

### **How much will be paid**

£7.20 per metre.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Higher Tier and Woodland Creation Grant.

Only on woodland.

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

It will protect newly created or existing woodland from deer browsing as part of a wider woodland creation or woodland management project.

### **Requirements**

Agreements holders are likely to need to:

- meet the fence specifications set out in the tables below (and in the Forestry Commission technical guide [Forest fencing](#))
- clear debris from the line of the fence
- make the line of the fence smooth enough that the bottom of the fence sits with the ground (there must be no gaps that deer can enter through)
- make sure the fence is regularly inspected
- maintain the fence so that deer cannot enter the land until the trees are large enough that they no longer need to be protected

## Specifications for the fence's woodwork

Species of deer	Endposts and turning posts (m by cm)	Struts (m by cm)	Intermediate stakes (m by cm)	Maximum stake spacing (m)
Roe	2.8 by 10 to 13	2.5 by 8 to 10	2.5 by 5 to 8	10
Muntjac	2.8 by 10 to 13	2.5 by 8 to 10	2.5 by 5 to 8	10
Red/sika/fallow	2.8 by 12 to 18	2.5 by 10 to 13	2.6 by 8 to 10	10

## Specifications for the height of the fence and the size of the mesh

Species of deer	Minimum fence height (m)	Maximum mesh size (mm)
Red and sika	1.8	200 by 300
Fallow	1.8	200 by 220
Roe	1.5	200 by 150

Species of deer    Minimum fence height (m)    Maximum mesh size (mm)

---

Muntjac                      1.5                                      75 by 75

---

### **What the management plan needs to include**

If this item is being used on an existing woodland site, the management plan needs to identify that deer are present on the site and are a threat to it. A woodland management plan is not required where this item is being used to protect newly planted trees using capital item [TE4 - Supply and plant tree](#).

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- Forestry Commission Management Plan approval letter
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

### **Related items**

This item can be used on the same area as the following items:

- [FG4 - Rabbit fencing supplement](#)

- [FG5 - Fencing supplement - difficult sites](#)
- [FG14 - Badger gate](#)
- [FG15 - Water gates](#)

## **Further information**

See [Higher Tier manual](#) or [woodland creation grant manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **FG10: Temporary deer fencing**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the temporary deer fencing item.

### **How much will be paid**

£5.20 per metre.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Higher Tier.

Only on newly created or existing woodland Where this item cannot be used To protect newly planted woodland supported by item [TE4 - Supply and plant tree](#).

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

It will protect newly coppiced woodland from deer browsing as part of a wider woodland management project.

### **Requirements**

Agreement holders are likely to need to make sure the fence:

- protects newly coppiced woodland
- meets the specifications set out in the table below (and in the Forestry Commission's practice note, [Recommendations for Fallow, Roe and Muntjac Deer Fencing](#))
- is erected as soon as possible after coppicing has taken place and before stools have started to grow again
- has a line that is clear of debris
- has a line that is smooth enough that the bottom of the fence sits with the ground (there must be no gaps that deer can get through)
- is maintained so that deer cannot enter the land until the coppice re-growth is large enough that it no longer needs to be protected

## Specifications for the height and mesh size of temporary fences:

Species of deer	Minimum fence height (m)	Maximum mesh size (mm)
Fallow	1.5	200 by 220
Roe	1.5	200 by 150
Muntjac	1.5	75 by 75

### What the management plan needs to include

Where the item is used on an existing woodland site, the management plan needs to identify that deer are present on the site in large numbers and are a threat to it.

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- Forestry Commission Management Plan approval letter
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

## **FG11: Deer exclosure plot**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the deer exclosure plot item.

### **How much will be paid**

£136 per unit.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Higher Tier.

Only on woodland, wood pasture, scrub, heathland, and moorland or grassland restoration to protect regeneration of woody species from deer browsing.

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

It will protect areas of woodland that are approximately 16 square metres in size from deer browsing. This will allow monitoring of the area's regeneration potential and the impact of browsing.

### **Requirements**

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- erect a deer exclosure plot that is at least 1.5m high by 4m by 4m
- make sure the fence meets the specifications set out in the Forestry Commission technical guide [Forest fencing](#), but with no gates
- make sure the fence is inspected at least once a year
- maintain the fence so that deer cannot enter the site for the length of the agreement
- make sure that stakes are large enough to support the exclosure plot for the length of the agreement
- replace any stakes or fencing materials that become damaged during the term of the agreement



- clear debris from the line of the fence
- make the line of the fence smooth enough that the bottom of the fence sits with the ground (there must be no gaps that deer can get through)

### **What the management plan needs to include**

The management plan needs to identify that deer are present on the site and are a threat to it.

Do not:

- cut any vegetation inside the plot

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders are likely to need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- Forestry Commission Management Plan approval letter if required
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

### **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

#### **How to choose a site**

Choose a site within the woodland where it is reasonable to expect the regeneration of trees, shrubs and flowers to take place, but where this is

not currently happening. The area should receive enough light for regeneration to occur.

## **Further information**

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **FG12: Wooden field gate**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the wooden field gate item.

### **How much will be paid**

£390 per gate.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier, Higher Tier and woodland creation grant.

Only along with a management option or boundary restoration item

### **Where this item cannot be used**

- where gate posts are placed on historic or archaeological features identified in the HEFER
- to replace an existing gate or wooden wings previously funded with a grant

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

Wooden gates will help stock management, or stop livestock from accessing an area where they may cause damage, such as a historic or archaeological feature.

Wooden wings for gates stockproofs ditch crossing points by linking the gate to the ditch edge.

## **Requirements**

### **Wooden field gate**

- construct the gate out of timber in a style that is traditional to the local area
- if there is no local gate style then construct the gate to these specifications:

Section	Gates up to 3m wide	Gates 3m and over wide
Top rail	100mm by 75mm	125mm by 75mm
Top rail tapered to	75mm by 75mm	75mm by 75mm
Under rails	75mm by 25mm	75mm by 25mm
Braces	75mm by 25mm	75mm by 25mm
Hanging stile	100mm by 75mm	125mm by 75mm
Shutting stile	75mm by 75mm	75mm by 75mm

- hang and clap all styles of gate separately from an adjoining fence line – do not use the hanging post as an end strainer
- either set gate posts at least 900mm into the ground and surround with concrete at least:
  - 450mm by 450mm wide
  - 600mm deep
- or erect gate posts without concrete surrounds and set at least 1.1m below the ground surface, with the soil compacted around the posts in 150mm layers
- weather cap the top of the gate posts

### **Wooden wings for gates**

- install wings on both sides of the gate
- each wing must consist of at least 3 wooden rails fixed between 2 posts

- do not fix the rails to the hanging post of the gate
- rails must be at least 38mm by 87mm
- posts must be at least:
  - 100mm diameter half round
  - 1.8m long
  - sunk 0.7 m into the ground

## **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of the proposed location for the gates or wings
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

### **Constructing the gates**

Frame the gates soundly and use wooden materials. All gates should match in height with the adjoining fence and have the appropriate fittings for their operation.

If gateways need widening during wall or bank restoration, or to create a new opening, planning permission may be needed. Consult the Local Planning Authority or the National Park Authority about hedgerow regulations and the permission needed.

## Using wooden wings

Wooden wings can be used to extend the stockproof width of the gate where this is necessary, for example where a gateway is over a culvert or adjacent to a ditch or dyke.

These are only likely to be necessary where they are already a feature of the landscape, such as on grazing marshes.

## Further information

See the [Mid Tier manual](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) or [woodland creation grant manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **FG13: Stone gate post**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the stone gate post item.

### **How much will be paid**

£280 per post.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Higher Tier.

Only in conjunction with boundary restoration items or item [FG12 - Wooden field gate](#). It can only be used if stone gate posts are traditional in the area.

### **Where this item cannot be used**

On sites of historic or archaeological interest

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

It will help conserve local landscape character and sites of historic interest by establishing stone gate posts made from local materials in local styles.

### **Requirements**

Agreement holders will need to set up a stone or slate gate post in the local material, cut or tooled to the size and shape typical of the local area.

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable

- photographs of the proposed location of the new gate posts
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

Existing gate posts

Existing gate posts from another location on the holding should not be used.



## **FG14: Badger gate**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the badger gate item.

### **How much will be paid**

£135 per gate.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier, Higher Tier and woodland creation grant.

Only on currently used badger routes restricted by a new fence line being funded through Countryside Stewardship

### **Where this item cannot be used**

- in existing fence lines
- in newly erected fences supporting wet grasslands for breeding waders

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

This item will minimise damage to fence lines (themselves being installed to benefit habitats through appropriate grazing, etc.) by reducing damage from badgers, and allowing them to pass freely through the fence.

### **Requirements**

- construct the badger gate to the following dimensions:
  - flap - 250mm by 200mm by 40mm
  - lintel - 285mm by 40mm by 40mm
  - floor block - 205mm by 40mm by 40mm
  - two uprights - 450mm by 40mm by 40mm
- use wood treated with a non-toxic, low odour, preservative product
- make sure no nails or rough sawn edges are left exposed

- fit the gate frame and floor block into the fence, stapling the wire to the wooden frame
- sink the frame into the ground until the floor block sits at ground level
- allow a period for the badgers to use the open gate, and then fit the wooden flap, holding it at the top on a pivot, so it can open and close freely both ways
- alternatively, fit the flap with the rest of the gate and hold it open with wire until the badgers start using the gate regularly
- only use materials that meet the relevant [British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of the existing site
- item specification, if required
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs during and after work has been completed

## Related Mid Tier items

This item can only be used on the same area and in conjunction with one or more of the following items and supplements:

- [FG1 - Fencing](#)
- [FG2 - Sheep netting](#)
- [FG4 - Rabbit fencing supplement](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully, but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

### How to choose a site

Before putting up a fence, the proposed fence line should be carefully checked for badger runs or paths. Runs will be most clearly visible during the spring, when badger activity is high and vegetation is not at full height. Well-used paths will often be distinct and relatively clear of vegetation because of repeated trampling.

Before installing the gate

- cut a gap in the netting approximately 200mm wide by 300mm high where the fence crosses a badger run
- leave the gap open until badgers are regularly using it
- cut extra holes in any places along the fence where damage occurs (for extra gates to be installed)

The gate(s) should be installed in the gap(s) once badgers have become used to the fence.

### How to maintain the gate

The gate should be checked regularly to make sure it does not become blocked or fall into disrepair.

### Further information

Find out how to [avoid harming badgers and whether a licence is needed](#).

See the [Mid Tier manual](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) or [woodland creation grant manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **FG15: Water gates**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the water gates item.

### **How much will be paid**

£240 per gate.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier, Higher Tier and woodland creation grant

Only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution caused by farming
- on fence lines across streams in conjunction with other stock control items

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

This item will prevent livestock from entering watercourse channels. It will also stop livestock from trampling waterside banks and will leave bankside vegetation lush and unbroken by livestock paths.

### **Requirements**

- fit a gate across the river or stream, and ensure that the gate:
  - is framed and made of wood
  - fits the profile of the river or stream
  - matches the height of the fence next to it
  - uses timber that is fully peeled and tanalised or treated with an approved preservative
  - can float up and down as the water levels rise and fall
  - has an approach fence that is either post-and-rail or fixed netting

- is separate (along with the approach fencing) from the main fence line
- meets the relevant [British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards
- the gate must consist of a series of wooden droppers attached to a length of wire cable, or a round wooden rail suspended horizontally between straining posts. The droppers must be:
  - at least 50mm square in cross section
  - made from sawn, untreated timber that has been drilled and then threaded on to the cable or rail
  - separated by 150mm lengths of plastic pipe
- if the stream gully is more than 1.5m deep, the gate can be constructed in several sections. The droppers must be:
  - made of untreated timber
  - at least 70mm square
  - hung on round wooden poles using loops of fencing wire

## **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of the existing site
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Applicants must contact the Environment Agency before applying for this item for advice and gain any consents or permissions required. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit consents/permissions with your payment claim.

## Related Mid Tier items

This item can be used on the same area as the following items:

- [BN7 - Hedgerow gapping-up](#)
- [BN12 - Stone wall restoration](#)
- [BN13 - Top wiring – stone walls](#)
- [BN14 - Stone wall supplement - stone from quarry](#)
- [FG1 - Fencing](#)
- [FG2 - Sheep netting](#)
- [RP5 - Cross drains](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

## How to get flood defence consent

Flood defence consent (FDC) may be needed to use this item near a watercourse or within 10m (this varies with some local byelaws) of the top of a riverbank.

Get FDC from:

- the Environment Agency (for main rivers)
- local flood authorities (for ordinary watercourses)

If applicants think they need FDC they should contact the Environment Agency first.

## Further information

See the [Mid Tier manual](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) or [woodland creation grant manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **FM1: Management of geodiversity features**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the management of geodiversity features item.

### **How much will be paid**

Up to 100% of actual costs.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Higher Tier.

Only on:

- Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSIs) where land management options are included in the agreement

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

If successful this item will ensure sensitive geological features are managed positively and protected from damage.

### **Requirements**

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- agree a specification for the works with Natural England
- get at least 3 written quotations for completion of the work, identifying associated costs, and agree the selected quotation with NE
- complete the works as set out in the approved specification and within the agreed timescale

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- photographs of site before works commence

- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is not available
- photographs of the completed work

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- the 3 quotes for completion of the work

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

Use this item to:

- protect sensitive geological features and to remove geological material at risk
- conserve geological features by removing trees, scrub, scree, spoil and other items from exposures
- control access to geological features



## **FM2: Major preparatory works for priority habitats (creation and restoration) and priority species**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the major preparatory works for priority habitats (creation and restoration) and priority species item.

### **How much will be paid**

Up to 100% of actual costs.

### **Where to use this item**

It is available for Higher Tier only:

- with a land management option where a [priority species](#) is known to be present, or occurs locally and the work is likely to lead to its colonisation – the work needs written support from a recognised specialist (either an individual or organisation) on the species
- when the need for major preparatory works is identified in an Implementation Plan or Feasibility Study approved by Natural England
- to create or enhance a [priority habitat](#) along with a land management option

### **Where this item cannot be used**

This item cannot be used to fund:

- any work within the scope of standard options or capital items
- certified agricultural seed, amenity grass seed or legume varieties seed, even if these are species found in the wild, unless the seed is used:
  - to restore bare peat on moorland
  - where agricultural or amenity grasses are used as a nurse crop to establish moorland vegetation

## **How this item will benefit the environment**

If successful this item will result in large scale restoration and creation of priority habitats and bespoke management for priority species.

## **Requirements**

You must:

- when necessary, agree with Natural England a detailed specification for the works
- get at least 3 written quotations for completion of the work, identifying associated costs, and agree the selected quotation with Natural England
- complete the works in the approved specification, implementation plan or feasibility study within the agreed timescale

## **Keeping records**

You must send the following with your application:

- 3 quotes for completion of the work

You must keep the following records and supply them with your payment claim:

- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is not available
- photographs of the completed work
- specification of agreed works

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- photographs of site before works starts
- a copy of the implementation plan or feasibility study, when necessary

Please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### Moorland management option

You can use this item with [UP3 - Management of moorland option to fund](#):

- restoring and stabilising bare peat - seeding, geo-textiles, plug planting, re-profiling and sphagnum inoculation
- enhancing wet heath - plug plants, sphagnum, geo-textiles, and stone or wooden dams for gully works
- heath restoration works by removing conifers
- the cost of transporting materials over sensitive moorland habitats, such as blanket bog

### Other land management

You can use this item with other land management options to fund:

- specific plug plants (food plants for invertebrate species, such as barberry for barberry carpet moth, hogs fennel for fisher's estuarine moth, tailored seed mixes for short-haired bumble bee)
- native British seed mixes (sourced from wild populations) to increase plant diversity by:
  - over-sowing with an agreed seed mix or green hay
  - spreading brash or plug planting along with habitat creation or restoration
  - the cost of collecting, transporting and spreading hay or brash
- creating coastal habitat, including inter-tidal habitat ('managed realignment')
- creating shingle islands for species such as tern or avocet
- creating and enhancing lowland heath - clearing bracken litter and humus, preparing ground, spreading heather cuttings or seeds, and creating bare ground
- restoring and maintaining natural river processes in a floodplain
- hiring and transporting specialist equipment for preparatory work for priority species habitat management

- maintenance costs for hiring, purchasing or maintaining equipment that helps priority species to thrive, such as:
  - maintaining electric fencing on breeding lapwing plots
  - maintaining mobile batteries for electric fencing
  - keeping grass cut to stop shorting of electric fence
  - regular equipment maintenance

## **Further information**

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **FY1: Deer high seat**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the deer high seat item.

### **How much will be paid**

£300 per unit.

### **Where this item cannot be used**

Available for Higher Tier.

Where deer fencing has already been erected to keep deer out of the area.

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

It will provide a safe, temporary vantage point from which to cull deer, reducing the impact their browsing has on the land.

### **Requirements**

Agreement holders are likely to need to consider:

- the health and safety of non-authorized users of the seat - eg prominently display British Standard signs prohibiting public access
- the health and safety of authorised users – eg make sure the seat has safety bars, is of an adequate size, and is securely attached to the anchor point
- the protection of the tree, if a tree is used as an anchor point - eg use webbing strops, rather than wire and nails, to attach the seat to the tree

The high seat must be portable, free-standing and made from galvanised tubular or box-section steel.

What the management plan needs to include

The woodland management plan needs to identify that there is a high deer population posing a threat to the woodland.

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- Forestry Commission Management Plan approval letter
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

## Further information

Find more information about [constructing high seats](#) in The Deer Initiative's best practice guide.

## **FY2: Woodland infrastructure**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the woodland infrastructure item.

### **How much will be paid**

40% of actual costs

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Higher Tier and Woodland Creation Grant.

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

It will make woodlands more accessible by road, allowing timber and other forest products to be moved more easily. This will improve the management of the woodland. Applications for Woodland Creation Grant can include this item to support the establishment of new woodland through the movement of planting stock (forestry products) and their maintenance, where the woodland creation plan in your application identifies that poor access currently prevents this.

### **Requirements**

An existing FC approved woodland management plan must identify that poor vehicle access to the woodland is preventing the movement of timber and other forest products.

Agreement holders are likely to need to prepare a detailed specification, tailored to the site. The specification needs to set out the work that will be carried out on site, the volume of timber that is expected to be produced and the soil conditions on the site.

The work could include the construction of:

- extraction tracks for mechanised timber extraction to a transfer point
- haulage roads and turning points
- haulage road entrances or laybys
- profiling and paving timber transfer points and stacking areas

- culverts and other road and track side drainage
- woodland security, such as gates for new entrance points

The specification needs to meet national legislation, following the construction, design and management (CDM) regulations for forest roads and tracks. Further information about the CDM regulations is available in the Forestry Commission's [Operations Note 25](#).

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- photograph of site before works commence
- Forestry Commission Management Plan approval letter
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is not available
- photographs of the completed work
- consent from local planning authority, if required

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- the 3 quotes for completion of the work

Before applying for this item applicants must notify the local planning authority so it can determine whether the work can be classified as a [permitted development](#). This requires the applicant to submit a description of the work to the local authority.

Permitted developments do not require full planning permission. The requirement for full planning permission is dependent on proximity to the public highway or designations on the site. Full planning permission is required where a new access is constructed from a classified public highway.



Obtain consent for work from the Local Planning Authority (or internal drainage boards within an internal drainage district) where the road crosses a watercourse or uses culverts during construction, use or maintenance. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit consents/permissions with your payment claim.

The Forestry Commission will decide whether the work requires consent under the [Environmental Impact Assessment \(Forestry\) Regulations](#). This is dependent on whether the proposal will have a significant effect on the environment.

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

## **Further information**

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **GS1: Take small areas out of management**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the take small areas out of management option.

### **How much will be paid**

£365 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on whole and part parcels on:

- permanent grass
- corners and small areas within permanent grassland fields

### **Where this option cannot be used**

- On historic or archaeological features identified in your Historic Environment Farm Environmental Record (HEFER) or Farm Environment Record (FER)

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It creates year-round habitat and food for a range of wildlife.

There will be tall grass tussocks with abundant flowering plants during the summer and dead seed heads throughout the winter.

### **Requirements**

You must:

- only cut or graze 1 year in every 5
- create a patch no more than 0.5ha in area

Do not:

- use the option more than once in every 5ha of permanent grassland on the holding
- locate the option next to another area under the same option
- cut or graze all areas in the same year if there is more than 1 area
- cut or graze during the bird breeding season 1 March to 31 August
- apply any fertilisers or manures
- apply any lime
- use pesticides, except for herbicides to spot-treat or weed-wipe for the control of injurious weeds or invasive non-natives, soft and hard rush, nettles or bracken

### **Keeping records**

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels

On your annual claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

### **Related Mid Tier options**

You can locate the following options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [OR1 – Organic conversion – improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OR2 – Organic conversion – unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 – Organic land management – improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT2 - Organic land management - unimproved permanent grassland](#)

### **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but is not a requirement for this item.

#### **Using the mosaic approach**

Better results will be achieved when the areas of longer vegetation are scattered widely across a landscape and located close to other habitat features, in a mosaic approach.

## Further information

See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **GS2: Permanent grassland with very low inputs (outside SDAs)**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the permanent grassland with very low inputs (outside SDAs) option.

### **How much will be paid**

£95 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on whole parcels (except when located with [GS1](#)) but only on:

- permanent grassland outside severely disadvantaged areas (SDAs) and below the moorland line

You can use this option if one or more of the following applies:

- the grassland qualifies as semi-improved (see [Permanent grassland options eligibility assessment form](#))
- to help the sustainable management and buffering of Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSIs) or priority habitats
- to maintain grassland to conserve species of national or regional importance, or protect historic or archaeological features
- when in-field scrub cover is less than 1% and the option will be used in target areas for ground-nesting wading birds
- as part of the Wild Pollinator and Farm Wildlife Package
- on parcels adjacent to a permanent watercourse

### **Where this option cannot be used**

Part parcel (except when located with [GS1](#))

## Features that can be included in this option

You can include the following features if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- ditches, dykes, drains, rivers, streams that are less than 4 metres (m) wide for the majority of their length in the parcel
- temporary water
- permanent water up to 0.1ha
- natural unsurfaced roads, tracks, paths and bridleways, as long as the Requirements can still be met
- bracken
- areas of scree, rock outcrops and boulders - each area can cover up to 0.1ha
- grazed woodland and scrub that allows livestock access and has grass underneath

## How this option will benefit the environment

There will be:

- more flowering grass and wildflower species
- varied structures offering nectar and shelter for invertebrates
- increased food supply for birds

## Requirements

You must:

- graze or cut for hay or silage
- remove any cuttings
- maintain a sward with a range of heights during the growing season so that at least 20% is less than 7 centimetres (cm) and 20% is more than 7cm. But you do not need to maintain a height variation when the field is closed up for a cut of hay or silage.
- maintain soil pH above 5.4, by liming if necessary, unless the target is to maintain acid grassland. Do not apply paper waste or other industrial by-products.

- when you cut a parcel for hay, haylage or silage, or graze it, you can either apply up to 12 tonnes/ha of farmyard manure, or fertiliser at a maximum rate of the following, but must not increase applications of fertiliser if the current rate is less than this:
  - 9 kilograms (kg)//ha nitrogen
  - 23 kg/ha phosphate
  - 83 kg/ha potash
- graze or cut areas of dense rush growth so that stands of soft or hard rush cover 20% or less of the parcel area and are less than 20 cm high by 30 September
- keep areas of well-established scrub in separate small patches, lines and occasional individual bushes across the site, where scrub cover is less than 5%
- maintain between 5% and 10% scrub cover over the parcel, where scrub cover is equal to or above 5%
- keep historic and archaeological features free of scrub

Do not:

- plough, cultivate or re-seed
- use pesticides, except for herbicides to spot-treat or weed-wipe to control nettles, bracken, injurious weeds or invasive non-native species
- cut more than one-half of scrub in any one year, except on historic and archaeological features
- harrow or roll on historic or archaeological features
- use supplementary feed except for mineral blocks
- allow bare ground to cover more than 5% of the option area, and only in the form of small, well-distributed areas
- allow bare ground to develop on historic or archaeological features
- allow more than 5 square metres of localised patches of bare ground around rabbit warrens by year 2
- top more than 50% of the total area in any one year
- carry out drainage works, including modifying existing drainage, without Natural England's written permission before work starts

## Restrictions that apply on certain dates

Date	Restriction
15 March to 20 June	Do not apply fertiliser or manure
15 March to 30 June	Do not cut for hay or silage
	Do not operate machinery or allow activities that disturb breeding birds
	Do not cut bracken
15 March to 31 July	Do not cut rush
1 October to 31 July	Do not top except in patches to control injurious weeds and invasive non-native species

## Keeping records

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- a standard soil analysis carried out in the last 5 years. The [rules for farmers and land managers to prevent water pollution](#) already require farmers and land managers to carry out soil testing on cultivated agricultural land - you can use these test results to meet the record-keeping requirements for this option
- any sites grazed will require a grazing activity record



- [permanent grassland eligibility assessment form](#) (You do not have to use this form. You can use your own document if it gives enough information to meet the requirements.)

On your annual claim you must declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

## Related Mid Tier options

You can locate these options and supplements in the same area as this option:

- [GS16 - Rush infestation control supplement](#)
- [GS17 - Lenient grazing supplement](#)
- [OR1 – Organic conversion – improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OR2 - Organic conversion - unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 – Organic land management - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT2 - Organic land management - unimproved permanent grassland](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### Choose the right location

Grassland which contains rare plant species is clearly valuable. It can still be valuable, and suited to this option, if it contains commoner species:

- legumes such as red clover, lesser trefoil and black medick
- herbs such as ribwort plantain and yarrow
- attractive wildflowers such as selfheal and germander speedwell

Low input grassland is most valuable when located alongside other important landscape features such as scrub and wetlands in a mosaic approach.

Grassland is also the best protection for historic and archaeological features, as long as plants with powerful roots like scrub or bracken do not take hold, and bare ground does not develop.

## Managing the sward

The land will be much more valuable for insects, birds and other animals if it has a varied, patchy structure all year round, as detailed under requirements. It is much easier to achieve this structure by grazing with cattle than by grazing with sheep only.

Grazing may be rotational or intermittent, but the stock should eat the sward down well during the grazing periods to avoid it becoming rank during the rest periods.

Wet areas can be important sources of insect food and should be maintained where possible.

Check for breeding birds before operating machinery, even outside the closed periods.

## Further information

See the illustrated guide [Farming the historic landscape: caring for archaeological sites in grassland](#).

See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **GS3: Ryegrass seed-set as winter food for birds**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the ryegrass seed-set as winter food for birds option.

### **How much will be paid**

£331 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Whole or part parcel

Rotational

Only on:

- temporary grassland
- permanent grassland that has been cultivated and re-sown within the last 5 years

Swards must contain at least 50% ryegrass (perennial, Italian or hybrid).

How this option will benefit the environment

There will be an abundance of ryegrass seed in the autumn, providing food for many birds (including yellowhammers and other buntings, gamebirds such as grey partridge, and skylarks) until late winter.

### **Requirements**

- close the field for at least 5 weeks before cutting, and take a silage cut before 31 May
- close the field after cutting and removal, allow the sward to flower and set seed in the autumn, and leave the sward undisturbed until 1 March
- part parcels must be at least 10m wide

On swards containing at least 70% Italian or hybrid ryegrass, a second cut of silage (or hay) can be taken before 30 June.

This option can be moved between different eligible parcels of land, but the same total area (hectarage) must be maintained each year.

Do not:

- allow any grazing for at least 5 weeks before the first cut or, for Italian or hybrid ryegrass, in the period before the second cut

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- stock records to show grazing activity
- evidence of the sward composition will be needed with the application
- when applying to use this option on permanent grassland, evidence will be needed that the grassland has been cultivated within the last 5 years

### **Related Mid Tier options**

These options and supplements can be located in the same area as this option:

- [OR3 – Organic conversion – rotational land](#)
- [OT3 – Organic land management – rotational land](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option, but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

How to choose a site

This option is designed to benefit buntings and other declining farmland birds, though it is also good for invertebrates and small mammals. For best results it should be used in areas that have:

- a population of buntings
- dense hedges and scrub for nesting

- invertebrate-rich habitat for summer feed (e.g. leniently grazed, low-input grassland and enhanced arable margins)

This option can provide essential winter seed food. On mixed farms it can be combined with arable options such as [AB9 - Winter bird food](#). (See guidance on the Wild Pollinator and Farm Wildlife Package.)

As a part-field option the best results can be obtained by placing it next to a hedgerow or wooded edge. However, it should be kept well away from hedges and trees to feed skylarks.

This option should only be used on areas that are at least 0.5ha in size. More birds will benefit if the option is split between 2 or more locations up to 500m apart.

The option is intended for intensive grass farms that have little scope to put land in other grassland or arable options, where regular reseeding is a typical practice.

#### How to manage this option

The aim is to have a large amount of herbage over the winter, which will enable hard harrowing or an early spring cut.

If grass is in rotation on the farm, or is regularly ploughed and re-sown, this option could be used:

- on fields due to be ploughed or re-sown
- on thinned swards that would benefit from the self-seeding this option provides

## **GS4: Legume and herb-rich swards**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the legume and herb-rich swards option.

### **How much will be paid**

£309 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on whole or part parcels in rotation, on:

- arable land
- temporary grassland
- permanent grassland that has been cultivated and re-sown within the last 5 years

You must also meet one of the following conditions:

- follow a recommended fertiliser management system to plan nutrient inputs across the farm
- adopt a recommended fertiliser management system within 18 months of the start of the agreement
- qualify as a low intensity farmer

### **Where the option cannot be used**

- On parcels at risk of soil erosion or runoff as identified in the Farm Environment Record (FER)
- On organic land or land in conversion to organic status
- On parcels with historic or archaeological features in your Historic Environment Farm Environmental Record (HEFER) or Farm Environment Record (FER)

## How this option will benefit the environment

A vigorous sward with abundant legumes and herbs, suitable for productive cattle and sheep, will also provide habitat and food for invertebrates, including crop pollinators, and improve soil structure and water infiltration.

This option does not use nitrogen fertilisers, which contribute to climate change.

## Requirements

You must:

- establish a mixed sward of grasses, legumes and herbs and wildflowers in the first 12 months of the agreement
- maintain the required area of mixed sward for the remainder of the agreement
- make sure the sward has a minimum 10% cover of red clover
- make sure the sward has an additional 10% cover of other legumes, herbs and wildflowers (not counting white clover, creeping buttercup or injurious weeds)
- make sure that the sward contains at least 5 species of grass, 3 species of legume (including bird's-foot trefoil) and 5 species of herb or wildflower
- re-establish the sward if necessary, on the same or a different field, to maintain these minimum requirements
- manage the sward by cutting or grazing
- leave the sward to rest for at least 5 weeks between 1 May and 31 July, so that the majority of red clover flowers are open and available for pollinators
- you can move this option between different eligible parcels, but you must maintain the same total area (hectarage) each year

Do not:

- use pesticides, except herbicides to spot treat or weed-wipe injurious weeds or invasive non-native species, soft and hard rush, nettles or bracken
- use inorganic fertilisers containing nitrogen

## **Keeping records**

You must keep the following records and produce them on request:

- field operations at the parcels level, including associated invoices
- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels
- if you use the option on permanent grassland, evidence that it has been cultivated within the last 5 years
- a fertiliser management plan that is in place at the time of application or within 18 months of the start of your agreement

On your annual claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### **How to choose a site**

The option allows only very limited use of pesticides so only choose fields that do not have a burden of weeds or slugs. Clovers, in particular, grow less well in soil that has a pH less than 6.0 and that is below index 2 for phosphorus and potassium. Soil can be improved with lime, manures or PK (but not N) fertiliser.

This option is not intended to be used on valuable semi-natural permanent pasture. Permanent grassland re-sown with grass or other herbaceous forage during the last 5 years, temporary grassland and other “agricultural” areas of grass could benefit from this option.

### **How to establish**

Sow shallowly on to a firm, clean, fine seedbed. Alternatively, sow into an established grass sward: create at least 50% bare ground (and preferably 70%) and pay careful attention to slugs and other pests. Sowing legumes and herbs after August may not allow good enough establishment before the winter.



## **Legumes**

Most of the widely available, inexpensive cultivars of red clover have low persistence, so it is likely that you will need to re-establish the sward in its third year.

Remember that white and red clover can cause bloat, particularly in cattle.

## **Herbs**

Chicory is a highly productive species, eaten by cattle and sheep and effective in protecting against internal parasites. It is better suited to grazing than cutting, as its stout stem is difficult to dry and can damage bale wrapping material.

## **Further information**

See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **GS5: Permanent grassland with very low inputs in SDAs**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the permanent grassland with very low inputs in SDAs option.

### **How much will be paid**

£16 per hectare (ha)

### **Where to use this option**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Whole parcel (except when located with [GS1](#))

Only on:

- permanent grassland within severely disadvantaged areas (SDAs) and below the moorland line

### **Where this option cannot be used**

Part parcel (except when located with [GS1](#))

This option can only be used if one of the following criteria are met:

- if the grassland qualifies as semi-improved (see [Permanent grassland options eligibility assessment form](#))
- to help the sustainable management and buffering of Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSIs) or priority habitats
- to maintain grassland to conserve species of national or regional importance, or protect historic or archaeological features
- when in-field scrub cover is less than 1% and the option will be used in target areas for ground-nesting wading birds
- on parcels adjacent to a permanent watercourse

## Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- ditches, dykes, drains, rivers, streams that are less than 4 metres wide for the majority of their length in the parcel
- temporary water
- permanent water up to 0.1ha
- natural unsurfaced roads, tracks, paths and bridleways, as long as the requirements below can be met
- bracken
- areas of scree, rock outcrops and boulders - each area can cover up to 0.1ha
- grazed woodland and scrub that allows livestock access and has grass underneath

## How this option will benefit the environment

If successful there will be:

- more flowering grass and wildflower species
- varied structures offering nectar and shelter for invertebrates
- increased numbers of ground-nesting and feeding birds, particularly waders such as lapwing and snipe

## Requirements

- graze or cut for hay or silage
- remove any cuttings
- maintain a sward with a range of heights during the growing season so that at least 20% is less than 7cm and 20% is more than 7cm. No height variation needs to be maintained when the field is closed up for a cut of hay or silage.
- maintain soil above pH 5.4 by liming if necessary, unless the target is to maintain acid grassland. Do not apply paper waste or other industrial by-products.

- when a parcel is cut for hay, haylage or silage, or grazed, you may apply either up to 12 tonnes/ha of farmyard manure, or inorganic fertiliser at a maximum rate of:
  - 9 kg/ha nitrogen
  - 23 kg/ha phosphate
  - 83 kg/ha potash
- applications of fertiliser must not be increased if the current rate is less than this
- graze or cut areas of dense rush growth so that stands of soft or hard rush cover 20% or less of the parcel area and are less than 20 cm high by 30 September
- keep areas of well-established scrub in separate small patches, lines and occasional individual bushes across the site where scrub cover is less than 5%
- maintain between 5% and 10% scrub coverage in parcel areas where cover is equal to or above 5%
- control areas where bracken is present so that the area does not increase
- maintain areas covered by dwarf shrub
- keep historic and archaeological features free of scrub and bracken

Do not:

- plough, cultivate or re-seed
- use pesticides, except for herbicides to spot-treat or weed-wipe to control nettles, bracken, injurious weeds or invasive non-native species
- cut more than one-half of scrub in any one year, except on historic and archaeological features
- harrow or roll on historic or archaeological features
- use supplementary feed except for mineral blocks
- allow bare ground in the form of small, well-distributed areas to cover more than 5% of the option area
- allow bare ground to develop on historic or archaeological features
- allow more than 5 square metres of localised patches of bare ground around rabbit warrens by year 2

- carry out drainage works, including modifying existing drainage, without having Natural England's written permission before work starts

### **Restrictions that apply on certain dates**

- 15 March to 30 June - do not apply fertiliser or manure
- 15 March to 30 June - do not cut for hay or silage; do not operate machinery or allow activities that disturb breeding birds; do not cut bracken
- 15 March to 31 July - do not cut rush

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- a standard soil analysis carried out in the last 5 years. The [rules for farmers and land managers to prevent water pollution](#) already require farmers and land managers to carry out soil testing on cultivated agricultural land - you can use these test results to meet the record-keeping requirements for this option
- [permanent grassland eligibility assessment form](#) (You do not have to use this form. You can use your own document if it gives enough information to meet the requirements.)

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic evidence:

- photographs of the management undertaken

### **Related Mid Tier options**

These options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- [GS16 - Rush infestation control supplement](#)
- [GS15 Haymaking supplement](#) or [GS17 Lenient grazing supplement](#)

- [OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OR2 - Organic conversion - unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT2 – Organic land management – unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [SP6 Cattle grazing supplement](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

### **Choose the right location**

Grassland which contains rare plant species is clearly valuable. It can still be valuable, and suited to this option, if it has a range of commoner herbs or dwarf shrubs such as red clover, yarrow, self heal, heather and bilberry.

Low input grassland is most valuable when located alongside other important landscape features such as scrub and wetlands in a mosaic approach.

Grassland is also the best protection for historic and archaeological features, as long as plants with powerful roots like scrub or bracken do not take hold, and bare ground does not develop.

### **Managing the sward**

The land will be more valuable for insects, birds and other animals if it has a varied, patchy structure all year round. It is much easier to achieve this structure by grazing with cattle than by grazing with sheep only, which risks non-compliance with the Requirements.

Wet areas can be important sources of insect food and should be maintained where possible.

Check for breeding birds before operating machinery, even outside the closed period.

### **Further information**

See this illustrated guide: [Farming the historic landscape: caring for archaeological sites in grassland](#)

See the [Mid Tier manual](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **GS6: Management of species-rich grassland**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the management of species-rich grassland option.

### **How much will be paid**

£182 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on whole and part parcels on grassland priority habitat.

In Mid Tier you can only use this option if it meets the relevant criteria and you have written approval from RPA.

The land must also be mapped on the Priority Habitat Inventory (see the [MAGIC website](#)) as one of the following:

- lowland calcareous grassland
- lowland dry acid grassland
- lowland meadows
- upland hay meadow
- purple moor grass
- rush pasture

### **Features that can be included in this option**

You can include the following features if they are part of the land, even if they are permanently ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme:

- ditches, dykes, drains, rivers or streams that are less than 4 metres (m) wide for the majority of their length in the parcel
- temporary water



- permanent water less than or equal to 0.1ha (at the discretion of Natural England)
- natural unsurfaced roads, tracks, paths and bridleways (as long as you can still carry out the requirements of the option)
- bracken
- scree, rock outcrops and boulders up to 0.1ha
- grazed woodland and scrub that has grass underneath it and that livestock can access (at the discretion of Natural England)
- small areas of other habitat types, such as reedbeds, at the discretion of Natural England

## **How this option will benefit the environment**

It will maintain and improve priority grasslands. It will increase the number and frequency of important plant species, with most wildflowers in bloom over the summer. Many other priority species, such as bumblebees, butterflies, birds or bats, will benefit, and buried archaeological features will not be disturbed.

## **Requirements**

You must:

- maintain or increase the presence and abundance of high value plant species
- maintain a range of plant heights suitable for invertebrates, birds or other priority species
- manage the grassland by grazing, hay cutting, or a mixture of both
- maintain a continuous cover, particularly over historic features
- use very little or no manure, fertiliser, pesticide
- maintain scrub, rushes and other potentially dominating plants at the levels set out in your agreement
- control undesirable plants
- agree all drainage works, including modification to existing drainage, in writing with Natural England before you carry out any work

In Mid Tier, you may be able to include additional clauses to refine the standard requirements. These will be discussed and agreed as part of the approval process.

Do not:

- plough, cultivate or re-seed
- harrow, roll or allow scrub or bracken to encroach on historic or archaeological features
- carry out activities that may disturb breeding birds or damage nests
- supplementary feed except for the provision of mineral blocks (non-energy based)

### **Keeping records**

You must send the following with your application:

- map of species rich grassland - this can be marked on any map including the Farm Environment Record (FER)

On your annual payment claim you need to declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- a standard soil analysis carried out in the last 5 years. The [rules for farmers and land managers to prevent water pollution](#) already require farmers and land managers to carry out soil testing on cultivated agricultural land - you can use these test results to meet the record-keeping requirements for this option
- a grazing record for any sites grazed
- [permanent grassland eligibility assessment form](#) (You do not have to use this form. You can use your own document if it gives enough information to meet the requirements.)
- photographs showing the extent of scrub or bracken on the site, and on historic or archaeological features
- bag returns, if an agreed wildfowl strategy is in place
- photographs of the management undertaken

### **Related options**

You can locate the following options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [BE3 - Management of hedgerows](#)
- [GS15 - Haymaking supplement](#)
- [GS16 - Rush infestation control supplement](#)
- [OR2 - Organic conversion - unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT2 - Organic land management - unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [SP1 - Difficult sites supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP2 - Raised water level supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP3 - Bracken control supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP5 - Shepherding supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [WT3 - Management of ditches of high environmental value](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

For successful management, in most cases you will need the following:

- appropriate livestock (which will often be cattle), over which you have full control
- machinery to carry out management requirements such as hay cutting
- consideration of how best to manage associated features such as ditches and scrub

Upland calcareous and other very extensively managed grassland, especially in large parcels, may not be accepted for this option. Such grassland may be eligible for other Higher Tier options, such as [GS13 - Management of grassland for target features](#).

## Further information

See the [Higher Tier](#) or [Mid Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **GS7: Restoration towards species-rich grassland**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the restoration towards species-rich grassland option.

### **How much will be paid**

£145 per hectare (ha).

### **How long the option lasts**

This option lasts for 10 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme.

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Higher Tier on whole or part-parcels, only on parcels of grassland that have high or medium potential for being restored to grassland priority habitat.

### **Features that can be included in this option**

You can include the following features in this option if they are part of the land, even if they are not eligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- ditches, dykes, drains, rivers or streams that are less than 4m wide for the majority of their length in the parcel
- temporary water
- permanent water less than or equal to 0.1ha, at the discretion of Natural England)
- natural unsurfaced roads, tracks, paths and bridleways (as long as you are still able to carry out the requirements of the option)
- bracken
- scree, rock outcrops and boulders up to 0.1ha

- grazed woodland and scrub that has grass underneath it and that livestock can access, at the discretion of Natural England
- small areas of other habitat types, such as reedbeds, at the discretion of Natural England

## **How this option will benefit the environment**

It will restore grasslands that have the potential to become priority grasslands. It will increase the number and frequency of important plant species. Many other priority species, such as bumblebees, butterflies, birds or bats, will also benefit. Buried archaeological features will not be disturbed.

## **Requirements**

You will probably need to:

- increase the presence and abundance of high value plant species, for example by deliberately introducing new species
- maintain a range of plant heights suitable for invertebrates, birds or other priority species
- manage the grassland by grazing, hay cutting, or a mixture of both
- maintain a continuous cover, particularly over historic features
- use very little or no manure, fertiliser, pesticide or supplementary feed
- maintain scrub, rushes and other potentially dominating plants at the levels set out in the agreement
- control undesirable plants (these can be specified in the agreement)

You will need to agree a detailed timetable setting out how you will restore the grassland and the timetable to achieve it. This should include details of how you will introduce seeds or plants, identify the source of the material and the varieties and quantities you will use. It should also set out how you will manage the grassland after you have introduced the plants or seeds.

The agreement will set out what you cannot do. It's likely you'll not be allowed to:

- plough, cultivate or re-seed, unless agreed with Natural England
- harrow, roll or allow scrub or bracken to encroach on historic or archaeological features

- carry out activities that may disturb breeding birds or damage nests

## **Keeping records**

On your annual claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- a standard soil analysis carried out in the last 5 years. The [rules for farmers and land managers to prevent water pollution](#) already require farmers and land managers to carry out soil testing on cultivated agricultural land - you can use these test results to meet the record-keeping requirements for this option
- inputs used
- any sites grazed will require a grazing activity record
- photographs showing the extent of scrub or bracken on any historic or archaeological features
- photographs showing any areas where sward enhancement will be carried out
- photographs of the management undertaken

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. You should discuss and agree these requirements with your adviser.

## **Related options**

You can locate the following options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [BE3 - Management of hedgerows](#)
- [GS15 - Haymaking supplement](#)
- [GS16 - Rush infestation control supplement](#)
- [OR1 – Organic conversion – improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OR2 - Organic conversion - unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 – Organic land management – improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT2 - Organic land management - unimproved permanent grassland](#)

- [SP1 - Difficult sites supplement](#)
- [SP2 - Raised water level supplement](#)
- [SP3 - Bracken control supplement](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP5 - Shepherding supplement](#)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly](#)
- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [WT3 - Management of ditches of high environmental value](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### **How to choose a site**

This option works best on infertile soils where the soil phosphorus index (as shown by soil analysis) is low and where the sward is not dominated by aggressive plant species or injurious weeds. It is best used where it will extend an existing area of priority habitat.

### **How to manage the site**

The management for this option will be tailored to the site, but in most cases you will need the following:

- appropriate livestock (which will often be cattle), over which you have full control
- machinery to allow management requirements such as hay cutting to be carried out
- consideration of how best to manage associated features such as ditches and scrub
- capital works to support this option (for example, to increase the number of plant species, use option [FM2 - Major preparatory works for priority habitats \(creation and restoration\) and priority species](#))
- change of hay cutting and grazing patterns, at least in the short term



Upland calcareous and other very extensively managed grassland, especially in large parcels, may not be accepted for this option. Such grassland may be eligible for other options, such as [GS13 - Management of grassland for target features](#).

Once the grassland is restored to priority habitat, it may be eligible for option [GS6 - Management of species-rich grassland](#).

## **Further information**

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **GS8: Creation of species-rich grassland**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the creation of species-rich grassland option.

### **How much will be paid**

£267 per hectare (ha).

### **How long this option lasts**

This option lasts for 10 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme.

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Higher Tier on whole or part parcels, only on arable, set-aside or temporary grassland that has high or medium potential for the creation of priority habitat (if it has medium potential, you will need written support from a Natural England specialist).

### **Features that can be included in this option**

You can include the following features if they are part of the land, even if they are permanently ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- ditches, dykes, drains, rivers or streams that are less than 4m wide for the majority of their length in the parcel
- temporary water
- permanent water less than or equal to 0.1ha, at the discretion of Natural England)
- natural unsurfaced roads, tracks, paths and bridleways (as long as you can still carry out the requirements of the option)
- bracken
- scree, rock outcrops and boulders up to 0.1ha
- grazed woodland and scrub that has grass underneath it and that livestock can access, at the discretion of Natural England

- small areas of other habitat types, such as reedbeds, at the discretion of Natural England

## **How this option will benefit the environment**

It will create priority grasslands and establish a wide range of important plant species. Many other priority species, such as bumblebees, butterflies, birds or bats, will also benefit, and buried archaeological features will not be disturbed.

## **Requirements**

You will probably need to:

- establish a flower rich grassland in the first year
- maintain it as permanent grassland
- maintain a range of plant heights suitable for invertebrates, birds or other priority species
- manage the grassland by grazing, hay cutting, or a mixture of both
- maintain a continuous cover, particularly over historic features
- use very little or no manure, fertiliser, pesticide or supplementary feed
- maintain scrub, rushes and other potentially dominating plants at the levels set out in the agreement
- control undesirable plants (these can be specified in the agreement)

You must have a detailed implementation timetable to create the grassland. This should set out how you will create it, including details of the varieties and quantities of seed or plant material you will use and where they'll come from, and how you will manage the grassland after you have introduced the seeds or plants.

Do not:

- plough, cultivate or re-seed after the grassland has been successfully established, unless agreed with Natural England
- harrow, roll or allow scrub or bracken to encroach on historic or archaeological features
- carry out activities that may disturb breeding birds or damage nests

## Keeping records

On your annual claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- a standard soil analysis carried out in the last 5 years. The [rules for farmers and land managers to prevent water pollution](#) already require farmers and land managers to carry out soil testing on cultivated agricultural land - you can use these test results to meet the record-keeping requirements for this option
- inputs used
- any sites grazed will require a grazing activity record
- photographs showing any areas where sward enhancement will be carried out
- confirmation that eligibility requirements have been met
- photographs of the management undertaken

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. You should discuss and agree these requirements with your adviser.

## Related options

You can locate the following options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [BE3 - Management of hedgerows](#)
- [GS15 - Haymaking supplement](#)
- [OR1 – Organic conversion – improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 – Organic land management – improved permanent grassland](#)
- [SP2 - Raised water level supplement](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP5 - Shepherding supplement](#)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)

- [SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly](#)
- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [WT3 - Management of ditches of high environmental value](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### **How to choose a site**

This option works best on infertile soils where the soil phosphorus index (as shown by the soil analysis) is low, and the sward and soil seedbank are not dominated by aggressive plant species or injurious weeds.

Species-rich grassland can sometimes be created by natural regeneration (possibly by adding extra plant species) or, much more commonly, through cultivating and sowing an agreed seed mix.

This option will normally be targeted at sites that are next to or close to existing species-rich grasslands.

### **How to manage the site**

The requirements for this option will be tailored to the site, but in most cases you will need the following:

- appropriate livestock (which will often be cattle), over which you have full control
- consideration of how best to manage associated features such as ditches and scrub
- capital works to support this option (for example, to increase the number of plant species, use option [FM2 - Major preparatory works for priority habitats \(creation and restoration\) and priority species](#))

Upland calcareous and other very extensively managed grassland, especially in large parcels, may not be accepted for this option. Such grassland may be eligible for other options, such as:

- [GS13 - Management of grassland for target features](#)
- [GS14 - Creation of grassland for target features](#)

Once the grassland has become a priority habitat, it may be eligible for option [GS6 - Management of species-rich grassland](#).

## **Further information**

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **GS9: Management of wet grassland for breeding waders**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the management of wet grassland for breeding waders option.

### **How much will be paid**

£264 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on whole or part parcels on permanent grassland that is one of the following:

- coastal or floodplain grazing marsh identified as priority habitat
- other grassland identified as habitat for breeding waders

The grassland must already support breeding waders or have high potential for being restored for them.

You must also meet one of the following conditions:

- you are currently following a recommended fertiliser management system to plan nutrient inputs across the farm
- you will adopt a recommended fertiliser management system within 18 months of the start of the agreement
- you qualify as a low intensity farmer

In Mid Tier you can only use this option if it meets the relevant criteria and you have written approval from RPA. The land must be mapped on the Priority Habitat Inventory as coastal flood plain grazing marsh or purple moor grass and rush pasture or lowland meadow (see the [MAGIC website](#)).

## Features that can be included in this option

You can include the following features if they are part of the land, even if they are not eligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- ditches, dykes, drains, rivers or streams that are less than 4 metres (m) wide for the majority of their length in the parcel
- permanent water less than or equal to 0.1ha (larger areas may be eligible at the discretion of Natural England)
- temporary water
- natural unsurfaced roads, tracks, paths and bridleways (as long as you still able to carry out the requirements of the option)
- small areas of other types of habitat, such as reedbeds and scrub (at the discretion of Natural England)

## How this option will benefit the environment

It will provide habitat in wet grassland for breeding wading birds. Fields will have wet areas and suitable sward conditions throughout the winter and spring and into the early summer. Waders will be able to nest and, in most years, successfully fledge their young.

## Requirements

You must:

- provide the correct sward conditions for the target species by cutting for hay/haylage from 1 July or by grazing, mainly with cattle, in accordance with the stocking calendar provided by Natural England. Rush control by cutting is allowed between 15 March and 31 July
- manage livestock during the breeding season to reduce the risk of them trampling nests
- maintain wet features (such as footdrains, gutters and scrapes) for waders to feed (you will need to keep these areas wet into the early summer, usually by holding high ditch water levels)
- control and manage trees, scrub, hedges, soft and hard rushes and undesirable species
- use little or no manure, fertiliser, pesticide or supplementary feed
- agree all drainage works, including modification to existing drainage, in writing with Natural England before you carry out any work



In Mid Tier, additional clauses may be included to refine the standard requirements. These will be discussed and agreed as part of the approval process.

Do not:

- plough, cultivate or reseed the grassland, unless agreed in writing with Natural England
- harrow or roll on historic features
- carry out activities that may disturb birds or damage nests

### **Keeping records**

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- a grazing activity record for any sites grazed
- evidence that you are following a recommended fertiliser management system or that you qualify as a low intensity farmer
- stocking calendar
- photographs of the management undertaken

On your annual payment claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

### **Related options**

You can locate the following options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [GS16 - Rush infestation control supplement](#)
- [OR1 – Organic conversion – improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OR2 – Organic conversion – unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 – Organic land management – improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT2 – Organic land management – unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)

- [WT3 - Management of ditches of high environmental value](#)

You can also use the following supplements with this option, but only in exceptional circumstances at the discretion of Natural England:

- [SP1 - Difficult sites supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP2 - Raised water level supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP5 - Shepherding supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

For best results:

- use this option as part of a suite of wet grassland and target features options, over a wide area, potentially linking with other landowners
- use this option within, next to or linking Special Protection Areas (SPAs) or Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSIs) containing wading birds
- use this option within, next to or linking non-designated areas with good wader populations
- make sure this option does not conflict with Environment Agency, internal drainage Board or local authority policies on flood storage, ditch and river management, water resources and fish migration
- apply for land drainage consent if necessary
- discuss the location of capital works with the Environment Agency, internal drainage boards and local authorities
- discuss the location of capital works with the Historic Environment Service if historic and archaeological features are present

Sites which may be unsuitable for this option include:

- sites with botanical interest, where hydrological changes could damage plant communities
- washlands and other areas that flood during the wader breeding season

## Further information

See the [Higher Tier](#) or [Mid Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **GS10: Management of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the management of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl option.

### **How much will be paid**

£157 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on whole or part parcels, on permanent grassland that is one of the following:

- coastal or floodplain grazing marsh identified as priority habitat
- other grassland identified as habitat for wintering waders and wildfowl

The grassland must already support wintering wildfowl and waders or have high potential for being enhanced to support them.

You must also meet one of the following conditions:

- you are currently using a recommended fertiliser management system to plan nutrient inputs across the farm
- you will adopt a recommended fertiliser management system within 18 months of the start of the agreement
- you qualify as a low intensity farmer

In Mid Tier you can only use this option if it meets the relevant criteria and you have written approval from RPA.

## Features that can be included in this option

You can include the following features if they are part of the land, even if they are not eligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- ditches, dykes, drains, rivers or streams that are less than 4 metres (m) wide for the majority of their length in the parcel
- permanent water less than or equal to 0.1ha (larger areas may be eligible at the discretion of Natural England)
- temporary water
- natural unsurfaced roads, tracks, paths and bridleways (as long as you are still able to carry out the requirements of the option)
- small areas of other types of habitat, such as reedbeds and scrub (at the discretion of Natural England)

## How this option will benefit the environment

It will provide habitat in wet grassland for wintering wildfowl and wading birds. Fields will have wet areas throughout the winter, attracting wading birds and wildfowl, which will be able to feed and roost undisturbed.

## Requirements

You must:

- manage the land by grazing, and possibly cutting
- provide areas of standing water and wet features (such as footdrains, gutters and scrapes) to attract waders and wildfowl through the winter months (ditch water levels may need to be held high to achieve this)
- control and manage trees, scrub, hedges, soft and hard rushes and undesirable species
- use little or no manure, fertiliser, pesticide or supplementary feed
- agree all drainage works, including modification to existing drainage, in writing with Natural England before you carry out any work

In Mid Tier, additional clauses may be included to refine the standard requirements. These will be discussed and agreed as part of the approval process.

Do not:

- plough, cultivate or reseed the grassland, unless agreed in writing with Natural England
- harrow or roll on historic features
- carry out activities that may disturb birds or damage nests

## Keeping records

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- a grazing activity record for any sites grazed
- evidence that you are following a recommended fertiliser management system or that you qualify as a low intensity farmer
- photographs of the management undertaken

On your annual payment claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

## Related options

You can locate the following options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [GS16 - Rush infestation control supplement](#)
- [OR1 – Organic conversion – improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OR2 – Organic conversion – unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 – Organic land management – improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT2 – Organic land management – unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [WT3 - Management of ditches of high environmental value](#)

You can also use the following supplements with this option, but only in exceptional circumstances at the discretion of Natural England:

- [SP1 - Difficult sites supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)

- [SP2 - Raised water level supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP5 - Shepherding supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP7 – Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly](#) (Higher Tier only)

## **Advice and suggestions on how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

For best results:

- use this option as part of a suite of wet grassland and target features options, over a wide area, potentially linking with other landowners
- use this option within, next to or linking Special Protection Areas (SPAs) or Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSIs) that have wintering waders and wildfowl as interest features
- use this option within, next to or linking non-designated areas with good wader and wildfowl populations
- make sure this option does not conflict with Environment Agency, internal drainage board or local authority policies on flood storage, ditch and river management, water resources and fish migration
- apply for land drainage consent if necessary
- discuss the location of capital works with the Environment Agency, internal drainage boards and local authorities
- if historic and archaeological features are present discuss the location of capital works with the Historic Environment Service

Sites which may be unsuitable for this option include:

- sites with an unreliable water supply
- improved, intensively managed grassland for geese, which is cut for silage and receives more than 50 kilograms (kg) per ha of inorganic nitrogen fertiliser
- sites with botanical interest, where hydrological changes could damage plant communities

## Further information

See the [Higher Tier](#) or [Mid Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.



## **GS11: Creation of wet grassland for breeding waders**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the creation of wet grassland for breeding waders option.

### **How much will be paid**

£406 per hectare (ha).

### **How long this option lasts**

This option lasts for 10 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme.

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Higher Tier on whole or part parcels, only on parcels that have been in arable, fallow or temporary grass in the last 5 years and have high potential for being restored to habitat for breeding waders.

You must also meet one of the following conditions:

- You are following a recommended fertiliser management system to plan nutrient inputs across the farm
- You will adopt a recommended fertiliser management system within 18 months of the start of the agreement
- You qualify as a low intensity farmer

### **Features that can be included in this option**

You can include the following features if they are part of the land, even if they are not eligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- ditches, dykes, drains, rivers or streams that are less than 4m wide for the majority of their length in the parcel
- permanent water less than or equal to 0.1ha (larger areas may be eligible at the discretion of Natural England)

- temporary water
- natural unsurfaced roads, tracks, paths and bridleways (as long as you are still able to carry out the requirements of the option)
- small areas of other types of habitat, such as reedbeds and scrub, at the discretion of Natural England

## **How this option will benefit the environment**

It will create wet grassland for breeding wading birds from arable or temporary grassland. Fields will have well-established swards, with wet areas throughout the winter and spring and into the early summer. Waders will be able to nest and, in most years, successfully fledge their young.

## **Requirements**

You will probably need to:

- establish a suitable sward and manage it by grazing, mainly with cattle, in accordance with the stocking calendar agreed with Natural England
- manage livestock during the breeding season to reduce the risk of them trampling nests
- provide wet features (such as footdrains, gutters and scrapes) for waders to feed (you will need to keep these areas wet into the early summer, usually by holding high ditch water levels)
- control and manage trees, scrub, hedges, rushes and undesirable species
- use little or no manure, fertiliser, pesticide or supplementary feed

The agreement will set out what you cannot do. It's likely you'll not be allowed to:

- plough, cultivate or reseed the grassland after successfully establishing it, unless agreed in writing with Natural England
- harrow and roll on historic features
- carry out activities that may disturb birds or damage nests

## **Keeping records**

On your annual claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- inputs used
- a grazing activity record for any sites grazed
- photographs showing any areas where sward enhancement will be carried out
- evidence that you are following a recommended fertiliser management system or that you are a low intensity farmer
- stocking calendar
- photographs of the management undertaken

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. You should discuss and agree these requirements with your adviser.

## **Related options**

You can locate the following options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [OR1 – Organic conversion – improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 – Organic land management – improved permanent grassland](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [WT3 - Management of ditches of high environmental value](#)

In exceptional circumstances you can also use the following supplements with this option, but only at the discretion of Natural England:

- [SP2 - Raised water level supplement](#)
- [SP5 - Shepherding supplement](#)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP7 – Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

For best results:

- use this option as part of a suite of wet grassland and target features options, over a wide area, potentially linking with other landowners
- use this option within, next to or linking Special Protection Areas (SPAs) or Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSIs) that have wading birds as interest features
- use this option within, next to or linking non-designated areas with good wader populations
- make sure this option does not conflict with Environment Agency, internal drainage board or local authority policies on flood storage, ditch and river management, water resources and fish migration
- apply for land drainage consent if necessary
- discuss the location of capital works with the Environment Agency, internal drainage boards and local authorities
- discuss the location of capital works with the Historic Environment Service if historic and archaeological features are present

Sites which may be unsuitable for this option include:

- washlands
- other areas that flood during the wader breeding season

## Further information

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **GS12: Creation of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the creation of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl option.

### **How much will be paid**

£310 per hectare (ha).

### **How long this option lasts**

This option lasts for 10 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme.

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Higher Tier on whole or part parcels, only on parcels that have been in arable, fallow or temporary grass in the last 5 years. They must also have high potential for being restored to habitat for wintering waders and wildfowl.

You must also meet one of the following conditions:

- You use a recommended fertiliser management system to plan nutrient inputs across the farm
- You will adopt a recommended fertiliser management system within 18 months of the start of the agreement
- You qualify as a low intensity farmer

### **Features that can be included in this option**

You can include the following features if they are part of the land, even if they are not eligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- ditches, dykes, drains, rivers or streams that are less than 4m wide for the majority of their length in the parcel

- permanent water less than or equal to 0.1ha (larger areas may be eligible at the discretion of Natural England)
- temporary water
- natural unsurfaced roads, tracks, paths and bridleways (as long as you are still able to carry out the requirements of the option)
- small areas of other types of habitat, such as reedbeds and scrub, at the discretion of the delivery body

## **How this option will benefit the environment**

It will create wet grassland for wintering wildfowl and wading birds from arable or temporary grassland. Fields will have well-established swards, with wet areas throughout the winter. Wading birds and wildfowl will be able to feed and roost undisturbed.

## **Requirements**

You will probably need to:

- establish a suitable sward and manage it by grazing, and possibly cutting
- provide areas of standing water and wet features (such as footdrains, gutters and scrapes) to attract waders and wildfowl through the winter months (ditch water levels may need to be held high to achieve this)
- control and manage trees, scrub, hedges, rushes and undesirable species
- use little or no manure, fertiliser, pesticide or supplementary feed

The agreement will set out what you cannot do. It's likely you'll not be allowed to:

- plough, cultivate or reseed the grassland after successfully establishing it, unless agreed in writing with Natural England
- harrow or roll on historic features
- carry out activities that may disturb birds or damage nests

## **Keeping records**

On your annual claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- inputs used
- a grazing activity record for any sites grazed
- bag returns, if an agreed wildfowl strategy is in place
- photographs showing any areas where sward enhancement will be carried out
- evidence that you are following a recommended fertiliser management system or that you qualify as a low intensity farmer
- photographs of the management undertaken

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. You should discuss and agree these requirements with your adviser.

## Related options

You can locate the following options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [OR1 – Organic conversion – improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 – Organic land management – improved permanent grassland](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [WT3 - Management of ditches of high environmental value](#)

In exceptional circumstances you can also use the following supplements but only at the discretion of Natural England:

- [SP2 - Raised water level supplement](#)
- [SP5 - Shepherding supplement](#)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP7 – Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

For best results:

- use this option as part of a suite of wet grassland and target features options, over a wide area, potentially linking with other landowners
- use this option within, next to or linking Special Protection Areas (SPAs) or Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSIs) that have wintering waders and wildfowl as interest features
- use this option within, next to or linking non-designated areas with good wader and wildfowl populations
- make sure this option does not conflict with Environment Agency, internal drainage board or local authority policies on flood storage, ditch and river management, water resources and fish migration
- apply for land drainage consent if necessary
- discuss the location of capital works with the Environment Agency, internal drainage boards and local authorities
- discuss the location of capital works with the Historic Environment Service if historic and archaeological features are present

Sites where the water supply is unreliable are not suitable for this option.

### Further information

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.



## **GS13: Management of grassland for target features**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the management of grassland for target features option.

### **How much is paid**

£90 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Higher Tier on whole or part parcels, only on grassland that meets both of the following requirements:

- it has moderate or low potential for being restored to priority habitat
- it is clearly associated with a species or feature that would benefit from focused management

Alternatively, you can use it on priority coastal and floodplain grazing marsh that meets both of the following requirements:

- it is not targeted for the wet grassland options ([GS9](#), [GS10](#), [GS11](#) and [GS12](#))
- it is clearly associated with a species or feature that is targeted by Natural England and that would benefit from focused management

### **Where this option cannot be used**

On grassland that is classed as grassland priority habitat (with the exception of priority coastal and floodplain grazing marsh).

### **Features that can be included in this option**

You can include the following features if they are part of the land, even if they are permanently ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme:

- ditches, dykes, drains, rivers or streams that are less than 4m wide for the majority of their length in the parcel

- permanent water less than or equal to 0.1ha, at the discretion of Natural England (larger areas may be permitted on coastal and floodplain grazing marsh)
- temporary water
- natural unsurfaced roads, tracks, paths and bridleways (as long as you can still carry out the requirements of the option)
- bracken
- scree, rock outcrops and boulders up to 0.1ha
- grazed woodland and scrub that has grass underneath it and that livestock can access, at the discretion of Natural England
- small areas of other habitat types, such as reedbeds, at the discretion of Natural England

## **How this option will benefit the environment**

It will maintain or increase the quantity of the targeted habitat, species or features. Many priority species such as bumblebees, butterflies, birds or bats will also benefit. Buried archaeological features will not be disturbed.

## **Requirements**

You will probably need to:

- maintain or increase the presence, quality or abundance of the targeted feature
- maintain a range of plant heights suitable for invertebrates, birds or other priority species
- manage the grassland by grazing or cutting
- maintain a continuous cover, particularly over historic features
- use little or no manure, fertiliser, pesticide or supplementary feed
- maintain scrub, rushes and other potentially dominating plants at the levels set out in the agreement
- control undesirable plants (these will be specified in the agreement)

Do not:

- plough, cultivate or re-seed the grassland, unless agreed with Natural England

- harrow, roll or allow scrub or bracken to encroach on historic or archaeological features
- carry out activities that may disturb birds or damage nests

### **Keeping records**

On your annual claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- inputs used
- any sites grazed will require a grazing activity record
- a standard soil analysis carried out in the last 5 years. The [rules for farmers and land managers to prevent water pollution](#) already require farmers and land managers to carry out soil testing on cultivated agricultural land - you can use these test results to meet the record-keeping requirements for this option
- if there is scrub on the site, photographs showing the extent of it
- if there is scrub or bracken on historic or archaeological features, photographs of the extent of it
- photographs showing any areas where sward enhancement will be carried out
- photographs of the management undertaken

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. You should discuss and agree these requirements with your adviser.

### **Related options**

You can locate the following options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [BE3 - Management of hedgerows](#)
- [GS15 - Haymaking supplement](#)
- [GS16 - Rush infestation control supplement](#)
- [GS17 - Lenient grazing supplement](#)

- [OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OR2 – Organic conversion – unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT2 - Organic land management - unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [SP1 - Difficult sites supplement](#)
- [SP2 - Raised water level supplement](#)
- [SP3 - Bracken control supplement](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP5 - Shepherding supplement](#)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [WT3 - Management of ditches of high environmental value](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### **Species and features this option can be used for**

You can use this option for a wide range of species or other features, such as:

- priority species
- scarce plants
- bumblebees, butterflies or other targeted invertebrates
- birds or other targeted vertebrates
- feeding areas for over-wintering geese in target locations that are free from disturbance
- areas that have breeding waders but that are not suitable for option [GS9 - Management of wet grassland for breeding waders](#)
- buried historic or archaeological features

### **What is needed**

The management of land under this option can be very varied, but it is likely to need:

- appropriate livestock, over which you have full control
- machinery to carry out management requirements, such as cutting
- consideration of how best to manage associated features such as ditches
- capital works to support this option (for example to oversow with additional plant species, use option [FM2 - Major preparatory works for priority habitats \(creation and restoration\) and priority species](#))

## **Further information**

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **GS14: Creation of grassland for target features**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the creation of grassland for target features option.

### **How much is paid**

£253 per hectare (ha).

### **How long this option lasts**

This option lasts for 10 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme.

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Higher Tier on whole or part parcels, only on arable, temporary or former set-aside grassland that has low or moderate potential for the creation of grassland priority habitat.

### **Features that can be included in this option**

You can use it on the following features if they are part of the land, even if they are permanently ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme:

- ditches, dykes, drains, rivers or streams that are less than 4m wide for the majority of their length in the parcel
- permanent water less than or equal to 0.1ha, at the discretion of Natural England (larger areas may be permitted on coastal and floodplain grazing marsh)
- temporary water
- natural unsurfaced roads, tracks, paths and bridleways (as long as you can still carry out the requirements of the option)
- bracken
- scree, rock outcrops and boulders up to 0.1ha
- grazed woodland and scrub that has grass underneath it and that livestock can access, at the discretion of Natural England

- small areas of other habitat types, such as reedbeds, at the discretion of Natural England

## **How this option will benefit the environment**

It will establish a suitable sward with a range of grass, legume and wildflower species. This will protect and enhance the targeted feature, as well as benefiting a range of other species, such as bumblebees, butterflies, birds or bats. Buried archaeological features will not be disturbed.

## **Requirements**

You must establish a grassy sward with a range of grass, legume and wildflower species in the first year of your agreement.

Once this is established you must:

- maintain it as permanent grassland
- maintain a range of plant heights suitable for invertebrates, birds or other priority species
- manage the grassland by grazing or cutting
- maintain a continuous cover over historic features
- use little or no manure, fertiliser, pesticide or supplementary feed
- maintain scrub, rushes and other potentially dominating plants at the levels set out in the agreement
- control undesirable plants (these will be specified in the agreement)

You will also need to agree a detailed implementation timetable for the creation of the grassland. This should set out how you will create it, including details of the varieties and quantities of seed or plant material you will use and where they will come from. It should also set out how you will manage the sward once it has been established.

Do not:

- plough, cultivate or re-seed the grassland after successfully establishing it, unless agreed in writing with Natural England
- harrow, roll or allow scrub or bracken to encroach on historic or archaeological features

- carry out activities that may disturb birds or damage nests

## Keeping records

On your annual claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- a standard soil analysis carried out in the last 5 years. The [rules for farmers and land managers to prevent water pollution](#) already require farmers and land managers to carry out soil testing on cultivated agricultural land - you can use these test results to meet the record-keeping requirements for this option
- inputs used
- any sites grazed will require a grazing activity record
- photographs showing any areas where sward enhancement will be carried out
- photograph of current scrub extent
- photographs of the management undertaken

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. You should discuss and agree these requirements with your adviser.

## Related options

You can locate these options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [BE3 - Management of hedgerows](#)
- [GS15 - Haymaking supplement](#)
- [OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [SP2 - Raised water level supplement](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP5 - Shepherding supplement](#)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)



- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [WT3 - Management of ditches of high environmental value](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### **Species and features this option can be used for**

You can use it for a wide range of species or other features, such as:

- priority species
- scarce plants
- bumblebees, butterflies or other targeted invertebrates
- birds or other targeted vertebrates
- feeding areas for over-wintering geese in target locations that are free from disturbance
- buried archaeological features

You will need clear evidence that the feature is present on the site or close to it. You should discuss the suitability of the site with your adviser and agree what management is needed.

### **What is needed**

The management of land under this option can be very varied, but it is likely to need:

- appropriate livestock, over which you have full control
- machinery to carry out management requirements, such as cutting
- consideration of how best to manage associated features, such as ditches
- capital works to support this option (for example, to oversow with additional plant species, use option [FM2 - Major preparatory works for priority habitats \(creation and restoration\) and priority species](#))

After the agreement term, the grassland may be eligible for option [GS13 - Management of grassland for target features](#).

## Further information

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **GS15: Haymaking supplement**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the haymaking supplement.

### **How much will be paid**

£85 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this supplement**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Whole or part-parcel

Only in combination with one of the following land management options:

- [BE4 - Management of traditional orchards](#)
- [BE5 - Creation of traditional orchards](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [GS5 - Permanent grassland with very low inputs in SDAs](#)
- [GS6 - Management of species-rich grassland](#)
- [GS7 - Restoration towards species-rich grassland](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [GS8 - Creation of species-rich grassland](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [GS13 - Management of grassland for target features](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [GS14 - Creation of grassland for target features](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [WD4 - Management of wood pasture and parkland](#)
- [WD5 - Restoration of wood pasture and parkland](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [WD6 - Creation of wood pasture](#) (Higher Tier only)

### **How this supplement will benefit the environment**

To ensure the continuation, or reintroduction, of haymaking on fields which are, or were, cut for hay each year. It allows a crop of herb-rich hay to be grown and harvested, which will lead to wildflowers and grasses blossoming and setting seed. This will help to conserve many of the plants in the meadow and provide pollen and nectar for bees and other insects.

## Requirements

- cut and remove unwrapped field-dried hay or haylage every year
- if haylage is made, cut after 1st August
- graze the aftermath sward, preferably with cattle

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- any sites grazed will require a grazing activity record

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

## Related Mid Tier supplements

This supplement can be located on the same area as the following supplements

- [GS16 – Rush infestation control supplement](#)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this supplement

The following section gives advice on carrying out this supplement successfully, but does not form part of the requirements for this supplement.

## Cost of haymaking

This supplement is normally available

- to ensure the continuation, or reintroduction, of haymaking on fields which are, or were, cut for hay each year. or
- if the cost of haymaking is particularly high, for example:

- if buying machinery or livestock would lead to additional costs for making or storing hay
- if there are long distances between the meadows and the hay barn

## **GS16: Rush infestation control supplement**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the rush infestation control supplement.

### **How much is paid**

£73 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this supplement**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only on:

- permanent grassland
- on a single parcel of land with continuous rush cover of more than 50% of the parcel
- only on a single parcel for a maximum of 3 years

Options to use with this supplement

This supplement must be used with 1 of the following options:

- [GS2 - Permanent grassland with very low inputs \(outside SDAs\)](#)
- [GS5 - Permanent grassland with very low inputs in SDAs](#)
- [GS6 - Management of species rich grassland](#)
- [GS7 - Restoration towards species rich grassland](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [GS9 - Management of wet grassland for breeding waders](#)
- [GS10 - Management of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl](#)
- [GS13 - Management of grassland of target features](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [UP2 - Management of rough grazing for birds](#)

How this supplement will benefit the environment

This is a short-term incentive to reduce rush cover in parcels with heavy infestations. It will help prevent the loss of botanically rich grasslands or provide nesting areas for breeding wading birds.

## Requirements

- graze or cut areas of dense rush growth every year so that rushes are less than 20cm high by 30 September
- keep bare ground cover at less than 10% by year 2
- reduce cover of dense rush growth to less than 30% of the parcel area by the end of year 3 of the agreement

Do not:

- cut rushes between 15 March and 15 July

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- any sites grazed will require a grazing activity record

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic evidence:

- photographs of management undertaken

Applicants need to send a map showing the extent of rush cover with their application. This can be marked on any map including the Farm Environment Record (FER)

## Related supplements

This supplement can be located on the same area as the following supplement:

- [GS15 – Haymaking supplement](#)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this supplement

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully, but does not form part of the requirements for this supplement.

### **Maintaining rushes**

The aim is to reduce heavy infestations of rushes to a cover below 30%. Cover should then be maintained at between 10% and 30%.

Also:

- ensure damage to nests or disturbance of chicks is avoided when cutting
- avoid controlling rush where there is standing or flowing water on or close to the surface for most of the year
- avoid cutting areas where rush is growing in association with sphagnum mosses
- graze with cattle, as sheep normally avoid grazing rush
- wherever possible, remove cuttings to prevent low growing plants being smothered

### **Cutting machinery**

The following machines are most appropriate for rush cutting:

- a grass mower trailed by a tractor
- a pasture topper
- a forage harvester



## **GS17: Lenient grazing supplement**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the lenient grazing supplement.

### **How much is paid**

£44 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this supplement**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on whole or part parcels on:

- permanent grassland
- in combination with [GS2](#) as part of the Wild Pollinator and Farm Wildlife package
- in combination with [GS5 permanent grassland with very low inputs in SDAs](#)
- on parcels where at least one boundary is a hedgerow and/or there is scrub cover within 200 metres (m) of the parcel

You can rotate this supplement between eligible parcels, but you must maintain the same total area each year and once applied to a parcel it must remain on it for at least 3 successive years.

### **How this supplement will benefit the environment**

It provides critical spring and summer invertebrate food needed by species such as yellowhammers.

There should be:

- plenty of spiders and insects, including larger ones such as grasshoppers and beetles
- birds, such as yellowhammers, reed buntings and skylarks flying into the field to feed

## Requirements

You must:

- graze during the growing season to maintain a sward:
  - that has an average height of 7 centimetres (cm) to 13cm
  - where at least 20% is shorter than 10cm
  - where at least 20% is over 10cm tall
- on the parcel or part parcel where this option is used one boundary must be a hedgerow and / or there must be scrub within 200m of the option

Do not:

- cut for hay or silage

### Keeping records

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels
- photographs of the management undertaken

On your annual claim you must declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this supplement

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### Sward height importance

The option is usually used as part of a package to benefit declining farmland birds. It provides the critical spring and summer invertebrate food needed by species such as yellowhammers.

Most invertebrates are much more abundant in taller grass but birds find it difficult to access them if the whole sward is tall. Birds need shorter patches where they can land and check for danger. They can then dart into the taller patches to catch their prey, or wait for them to move to the edge of the tall grass or out into the shorter patches.

## **Option amount and location**

Normally at least 1ha of this option per 100ha of the farm area is needed to provide sufficient invertebrates.

Place the supplement on part parcels next to hedges or scrub for yellowhammers and other buntings. For skylarks place away from trees, hedges or other tall structures.

The target birds do not generally feed more than 300m from their nests, so parcels of this option should not be more than 500m apart.

This option is more effective on grassland including herbs and wildflowers, but you can also use it on grassland with few, if any, herbs or wildflowers.

## **Checking sward height**

If a sward stick is not available, you can measure uncompressed sward height using a ruler, or lines on boots. Ignore stems and seedheads – measure to the top green leaf.

## **How to achieve the right sward**

Graze with cattle, rather than just sheep (which risks non-compliance with the Requirements) that way it is much easier to achieve the correct diverse sward structure.

The grazing can be rotational or intermittent, but the stock should eat the sward down well during the grazing periods to avoid it becoming rank during the rest periods.

## **Further information**

See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **HE1: Historic and archaeological feature protection**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the historic and archaeological feature protection item.

### **How much will be paid**

Up to 100% of actual costs.

### **Where to use this item**

It is available for Higher Tier only for work to conserve or protect individual historic environment features when physical work is needed to change land management practices or restore a site.

### **Where this item cannot be used**

- For work related to historic (roofed) buildings
- For management plans for parklands, historic features or areas – use [PA2 - Feasibility study](#)
- For work previously funded under an agri-environment scheme

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

It is for physical works that directly relate to conserving or protecting historic environment features in the landscape. This will help the long-term survival of historic and archaeological features.

### **Requirements**

You must:

- agree a specification with Natural England and then send at least 3 written quotations identifying all associated costs for completing the work in line with the specification
- agree the selected quotation with Natural England

- complete the work as set out in the approved specification within the agreed time
- get any relevant consents before carrying out the work, such as scheduled monument consent from Historic England or listed building consent from the local planning authority

### **Keeping records**

You must send the following with your application:

- 3 quotes for completion of the work

You must keep the following records and supply them with your payment claim:

- photographs to show completed works
- a detailed specification

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- photographs of the feature before works start

Please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### **Historic and archaeological features**

Some historic environment features or areas are suffering from damage or loss. A land management option alone may not be enough, or may not be suitable, to make the management changes needed to protect the feature from further harm. The feature may also need restoration work.

This item supports this by funding work such as:

- moving fence lines or all-terrain vehicle tracks if they currently run across an archaeological site

- moving feed sites and restoring the surface
- clearing vegetation and restoring eroded surfaces
- consolidating structures, such as ruins or bridges, that are not eligible for [HE2 - Historic building restoration](#)
- de-silting designed water-bodies
- archaeological excavation, if it is needed to preserve 'by record' known archaeology which would be affected by agreed management on the site.

You can find information on the location of Scheduled Monuments, registered parks and gardens, registered battlefields and listed buildings, as well as undesignated historic and archaeological features on:

- the Historic England annual [Heritage at Risk register](#) - this identifies historic environment features at high risk from loss or damage
- the [MAGIC website](#) for information in map form
- the [Selected Heritage Inventory for Natural England](#) website
- the [county historic environment record](#)

### **Complex sites**

There is no standard specification for this item as all work will need to be tailored to the individual site. For complex situations or sites a management plan may be required and can be funded through [PA2 - Feasibility study](#).

### **Further information**

You can find more information from Historic England's [Farming the historic landscape](#) booklet.

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **HE2: Historic building restoration**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the historic building restoration item.

### **How much will be paid**

Up to 80% of actual costs.

### **Where to use this item**

Available as a standalone item.

This is a pilot grant scheme only available for buildings situated within the boundaries of the following National Parks:

- Dartmoor
- Lake District
- Northumberland
- Peak District
- Yorkshire Dales

Only on roofed buildings, identified as a priority by Natural England for funding within Countryside Stewardship, which will be repaired in line with historic building restoration guidance principles. These are:

- non-residential buildings built with traditional materials and methods in a characteristic local, vernacular or 'designed' architectural style
- ornamental or architecturally designed buildings – for example, those on model farms, or in parklands or designed landscapes

### **Where this item cannot be used**

- on modern buildings made from concrete, timber or steel frames and clad in materials such as concrete, breeze blocks, tiles, fibre cement sheeting or profiled metal sheeting
- on structures such as bridges
- on ruined buildings (more than 50% of the building has been lost)

- on converted historic buildings - such as to residential, holiday accommodation or commercial use - or a home's ancillary building, such as garages
- on buildings previously funded under an agri-environment scheme

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

It is for conserving and lengthening the life of rural buildings that contribute to the character and enjoyment of the landscape and are of historic interest.

The work will prevent further decay to the fabric of historic buildings and benefit their long-term survival.

### **Requirements**

- agree a specification with your local National Park adviser, develop a detailed management plan and then send at least 3 written quotations identifying all associated costs for completing the work in line with the specification
- agree the selected quotation with Natural England
- complete the work as set out in the approved management plan within the agreed time
- get any relevant consents before carrying out the work, such as scheduled monument consent from Historic England or listed building consent from the local planning authority

### Protecting and maintaining the buildings

After the work has been completed the building will need to be protected and maintained in a weatherproof condition for a period of 5 years from completion of the work and final grant payment. This includes fixtures and fittings and nearby associated features, such as mounting blocks and stack or stook bases.

The character of the building, in its local setting, will need to be kept – with maintenance works and minor repairs carried out on a like-for-like basis using traditional material and methods.

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:



- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- photographs of the building before works start
- the specification and schedule of works for all the work to be completed - once approved, these will form a mandatory part of the agreement
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [historic buildings restoration grant manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- receipted invoices and bank statements
- photographs of the site during the different stages of construction or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- the 3 quotes for completion of the work

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their National Park adviser.

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

There is no standard specification for building restoration and all work will be tailored to the individual site. A specification will need to be agreed with the relevant National Park adviser and Natural England.

Before applying for this item a management plan will be required to identify the restoration work and costs, and can be applied for through [PA2 - Feasibility study](#).

Project planning

Guidance on restoring and repairing historic buildings is available in the [historic buildings restoration grant manual](#) and through your National Park

local adviser. It will explain which work is eligible and the repair principles to follow.

This item cannot be used for management plans for historic building restoration - use [PA2 - Feasibility study](#).

Further information

Historic England has a [guide to restoring and maintaining historic farm buildings](#).

There is a lot of competition for this capital item. Any buildings applied for will be assessed separately to identify the best and highest priority historic building restoration projects.

The assessment will include thinking about how the building:

- adds to the area's landscape character
- can offer or retain wildlife habitat or nest sites
- offers the public access

Natural England will also look at:

- the sort of work that needs doing
- how urgent the repair work is
- whether Countryside Stewardship is the most appropriate grant for restoring the building - this is because it cannot be used to fund converting the building to an alternative use, such as residential or commercial use

See the [historic buildings restoration grant manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **HE3: Removal of eyesore**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the removal of eyesore item.

### **How much will be paid**

£290 per item.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Higher Tier.

Only with a land management option

Where this item cannot be used

- for routine clearing and maintenance
- if clearance is required, such as for health and safety or cross compliance reasons

How this item will benefit the environment

It removes and disposes of unsightly items which have a negative effect on the landscape.

Requirements

- agree a specification for the works with Natural England in year 1 of the agreement
- complete the works as set out in the agreed specification within the agreed timescale

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work

- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of the eyesore before works start
- item specification if required
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

## **HS1: Maintenance of weatherproof traditional farm buildings**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the maintenance of weatherproof traditional farm buildings option.

### **How much will be paid**

£3.25 per square metre.

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier for traditional farm buildings or parts of buildings that:

- were built using traditional methods and using timber, brick, stone, tile or slate
- were built before 1940 for agricultural use, for example housing machinery or animals, or storing or processing crops and food
- are still in agricultural use on a farm holding, whether or not this was the original use
- are sound and weatherproof
- are recorded on the Farm Environment Record (FER)

You must own or control the building or the part of the building entered into the option for the life of the agreement.

### **Where this option cannot be used**

You cannot use this option if the building:

- is a metal-framed dutch barn
- was constructed as a dwelling
- is a farmhouse, residential or domestic building

## How this option will benefit the environment

It will help to maintain traditional farm buildings, using traditional methods and materials. This will also enhance the local landscape and preserve places for wildlife.

There will be:

- traditional farm buildings, fixtures and fittings in a sound condition and weatherproof
- buildings maintained using traditional materials and methods
- preserved and accessible features as identified in the wildlife assessment (see [building wildlife assessment form](#))
- new bat or owl boxes, where a need has been identified
- a building maintenance plan and log of work being updated annually (see [building maintenance plan and log form](#))

## Requirements

You must:

### Year 1

- complete a building maintenance plan
- install bat or barn owl boxes with open access points, if recommended in the wildlife assessment

### Every year

- carry out visual inspections at least once a year and keep records of the results in the building maintenance plan and wildlife assessment
- carry out maintenance work and repairs on a 'like for like' basis
- record the maintenance work carried out in the building maintenance plan log
- keep the building weatherproof, including fixtures, fittings and features such as mounting blocks, stack or stook bases
- use traditional material and methods for any maintenance work, keeping the character of the building within its local setting
- maintain areas where a non-traditional material has previously been used to repair or re-clad the building, such as corrugated iron sheeting to cover roofs

- maintain existing features identified as possible roosting areas for bats, such as non-structural crevices and cavities, taking care not to disturb any bats
- get advice from a licensed ecological consultant if bat activity has been identified - this will apply at any time in the agreement
- follow any advice from the ecological consultant about when work can be undertaken on the building's fabric and get any bat licences that are needed

Do not:

- sell or convert the building for non-agricultural use during the life of the agreement

### **Keeping records**

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- photographs showing the condition of the building before the start of the agreement
- a copy of the building maintenance plan (see [building maintenance plan and log form](#)) - to be updated with inspection results and completed works throughout the life of the agreement
- any receipted invoices (or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable)
- any consents or permissions connected with this work
- a wildlife assessment of the building's suitability for barn owls, kestrels and bats (see [building wildlife assessment form](#)) - to be updated with the results of annual inspections

### **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

#### **How to calculate the option area**

The eligible area for this option is the footprint of the ground floor of the building. Do not include any other space from extra floors, or any parts of the yard, in the calculation.

## **Maintenance work**

Carry out routine maintenance work to protect the fabric of the building and to keep it weatherproof. This does not include work to fix significant defects or decay, or work to bring a building in poor repair back to a good condition.

## **Regular inspections**

Inspect the site regularly to identify areas that might need attention such as:

- blocked downpipes and gutters
- broken or slipped slates, tiles or glass
- pointing on walls
- the condition of paintwork
- barriers to wildlife access
- vegetation that needs clearing
- any other items that need minor repairs

## **Specific tasks and minor repairs**

Carry out specific tasks regularly so the building stays in good condition and is weatherproof. Tasks could include:

- clearing gutters from debris and leaves
- fixing slipped slate or broken roofing slates and tiles to prevent rainwater penetration
- renewing cast iron gutters and drainpipes
- replacing broken glass
- repainting woodwork and metalwork
- repointing walls
- clearing vegetation

## **How often the work needs doing**

You will need to do some work every year. You may need to do seasonal tasks, such as clearing gutters and removing vegetation, several times a year.

Start on any agreed work as soon as the agreement begins, such as:



- installing wildlife boxes
- undertaking work to enable access for wildlife
- completing the building maintenance plan

## **Further information**

For information on the law and bats see [bats: protection, surveys and licences](#).

Also, read [Bats in traditional buildings](#) guidance leaflet.

See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **HS2: Take historic and archaeological features out of cultivation**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the take historic and archaeological features out of cultivation option.

### **How much will be paid**

£425 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on whole or part parcels.

In Mid Tier you can use this option only:

- on Scheduled Monuments on arable land or temporary grassland
- with the written approval of Historic England as confirmed on your Historic Environment FER (HEFER) consultation response

In Higher Tier you can use this option:

- on Scheduled Monuments where approved by Historic England and on historic or archaeological features identified in your HEFER

### **Where this option cannot be used**

- On land already receiving funding for Ecological Focus Areas (EFAs) declared for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS)

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It protects historic and archaeological features from damaging cultivation practices.

Depending on land use and location it may also:

- reduce diffuse pollution
- reduce soil erosion

Protecting historic and archaeological features will conserve the character of the farm and protect England's heritage for future generations. This option may also maintain and conserve landscape character.

## **Requirements**

You must:

- use shallow cultivation on arable land to establish a grass or flower mixture
- re-seed temporary grassland by slot seeding, making sure not to damage the existing sward
- maintain a continuous grass sward over the feature
- make sure vehicle or stock access routes are at least 6m away from the feature (existing surfaced tracks can be used)
- agree with Natural England in writing all drainage works, including modification to existing drainage, before any works take place

Do not:

- plough on earthwork sites when establishing grass or flower mixtures
- harrow or roll
- supplementary feed within 6m of the option area
- allow scrub or bracken growth on the option area

## **Keeping records**

You must submit the following with your application:

- a map of existing tracks - you can mark these on any map, including your Farm Environment Record (FER)

On your annual claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- written approval for the option from Historic England

## Related Mid Tier options

You can locate these options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### Pick the right location

Choose a boundary that includes all of the features and provides a practical field division.

### Further information

The following guides, available from [Historic England](#) may also be useful:

- Farming the historic landscape: caring for archaeological sites on arable land
- Farming the historic landscape: caring for archaeological sites in grassland

See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **HS3: Reduced-depth, non-inversion cultivation on historic and archaeological features**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the reduced-depth, non-inversion cultivation on historic and archaeological features option.

### **How much will be paid**

£79 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier.

In Mid Tier you can use this option only:

- on Scheduled Monuments on arable land or temporary grassland
- with the written approval of Historic England as confirmed on your Historic Environment FER (HEFER) consultation response

In Higher Tier you can use this option:

- on Scheduled Monuments where approved by Historic England and on historic or archaeological features identified in your HEFER.

### **Where this option cannot be used**

- Where historic or archaeological earthworks are known to survive
- Where soil movement or loss has been identified as a problem

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It reduces damage to historic and archaeological features under cultivation by using non-inversion (minimum tillage) machinery and shallower cultivation depths.

Protecting historic and archaeological features will conserve the historic character of the farm and protect England's heritage for future generations. This option may also maintain and conserve landscape character.

If successful there will be a soil surface with no evidence of:

- erosion
- subsoil (which indicates a deeper cultivation depth)
- freshly disturbed archaeological remains, such as pottery, burnt flint, flint tools, animal and human bone and building stone and tile

## Requirements

You must:

- use non-inversion (minimum tillage) machinery to reduce cultivation depths
- make sure that vehicle or stock access routes are at least 6m away from the feature (existing surfaced tracks can be used)
- agree with Natural England in writing all drainage works, including modification to existing drainage, before any works take place
- make sure that the following field operations do not go deeper than 15cm:
  - tillage
  - soil management
  - planting
  - harvesting

Do not:

- grow the following crops on the option area:
  - maize
  - lucerne
  - root and tuber crops, (excluding non-harvestable root crops such as grazed fodder beet and forage turnips)
  - short rotation coppice
  - miscanthus

## Keeping records

You must submit the following with your application.

- a map of existing tracks - you can mark these on any map, including your Farm Environment Record (FER)

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- consents or permissions connected with this work
- written approval for the use of the option from Historic England
- photographs of the management undertaken

## Related Mid Tier options

You can locate these options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [AB4 – Skylark plots](#)
- [AB7 - Whole crop cereals](#)
- [AB10 - Unharvested cereal headland](#)
- [AB11 – Cultivated areas for arable plants](#)
- [AB14 - Harvested low input cereal](#)
- [OP5 - Undersown cereal](#)
- [OR3 - Organic conversion - rotational land](#)
- [OR4 - Organic conversion - horticulture](#)
- [OT3 - Organic land management - rotational land](#)
- [OT4 - Organic land management - horticulture](#)
- [SW6 - Winter cover crops](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

Where earthworks survive, you should use [HS9 Restricted depth crop establishment to protect archaeology under an arable rotation](#).

## **Reduce cultivation depth and compaction**

You can reduce cultivation depth by:

- raising the height of the chisel
- using depth control chains or gauges
- using a GPS depth controller
- increasing the number of discs (14 discs for a 3m width instead of the usual 9)
- using depth wheels with parallelogram mounting

You can reduce compaction by:

- not working in wet soil conditions
- reducing tyre pressure on vehicles travelling on the site to spread the load more evenly

## **Further information**

The following guide available from [Historic England](#) may be useful:

- Farming the historic landscape: caring for archaeological sites on arable land

See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.



## **HS4: Scrub control on historic and archaeological features**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the scrub control on historic and archaeological features option.

### **How much will be paid**

£137 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Whole or part parcel

Only on historic and archaeological features with more than 5% scrub cover.

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It reduces the risk of root damage to historic and archaeological features by permanently removing the majority of scrub.

Protecting historical and archaeological features will conserve the character of the farm and protect England's heritage for future generations. This option may also maintain and conserve landscape character.

If successful there will be:

- visible historic or archaeological features with less scrub
- very little bare soil with no burrowing animals
- a well-managed grass sward

Depending on the site's location, this option may also help to:

- reduce diffuse pollution
- reduce soil erosion

## Requirements

- remove 25% of scrub on the feature every year for the first 3 years (total 75%), clearing only between 1 October and 28 February
- remove cuttings and brash
- prevent and control scrub re-growth
- maintain a continuous grass sward or vegetation cover over the features so that no more than 5% have bare patches and erosion
- make sure vehicle or stock access routes are at least 6m away from the feature (existing surfaced tracks can be used)
- ensure all necessary consents are in place to remove any mature trees

### Do not:

- grub out stumps and roots
- plough, cultivate or re-seed
- harrow or roll
- supplementary feed on or within 6m of the historic or archaeological feature

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- consents or permissions connected with this work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- photographs of the historic and archaeological features and the extent of scrub before works start

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

All applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- a map of existing tracks - these can be marked on any map including the Farm Environment Record (FER)

### **Related Mid Tier options**

These options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- [OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OR2 - Organic conversion - unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT2 - Organic land management - unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [UP1 - Enclosed rough grazing](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

Ways to remove scrub

Scrub can be removed by:

- mowing
- flailing
- using a chainsaw or strimmer
- clearing by hand

Scrub should be cut down to ground level without disturbing the roots. Make sure all cut material is removed from the site.

Control scrub regrowth

Scrub regrowth can be controlled using:

- livestock grazing
- machinery
- chemicals to treat roots

## **HS5: Management of historic and archaeological features on grassland**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the management of historic and archaeological features on grassland option.

### **How much will be paid**

£30 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

- only on historic and archaeological features on parcels of permanent grassland

The permanent grassland may form a mosaic with other vegetation types, such as heathland and moorland

Where this option cannot be used

- on land parcels of more than 15ha above the moorland line

How this option will benefit the environment

It maintains permanent grassland on historic and archaeological features.

Maintaining these features will conserve the character of the farm and protect England's heritage for future generations. This option may also maintain and conserve landscape character.

If successful there will be:

- a well-managed grass sward covering the feature
- very little bare soil
- no scrub or bracken

- no poaching or erosion
- no burrowing animals
- no farm tracks within 6m of the feature

## Requirements

- maintain a continuous grass sward or vegetation cover so that no more than 5% of the features develop bare patches or erosion
- make sure scrub, bracken or pernicious weeds cover no more than 5% of the features
- make sure vehicle or stock access routes are at least 6m away from the feature (existing surfaced tracks can be used)

## Do not:

- plough, cultivate or re-seed
- harrow or roll
- apply supplementary feed on or within 6m of the feature

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

All applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- a map of existing tracks - this can be marked on any map including the Farm Environment Record (FER)

## Related Mid Tier options

These options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option::

- [OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OR2 - Organic conversion - unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT2 - Organic land management - unimproved permanent grassland](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

Plan drainage works

Installing or maintaining drainage systems can damage historic and archaeological features. To avoid damage install access points outside the feature so that drains can be maintained without having to excavate.

## **Further information**

The following Historic England guide may be of use:

- [Farming the historic landscape: caring for archaeological sites in grassland](#)

## **HS6: Maintenance of designed/engineered water bodies**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the maintenance of designed/engineered water bodies option.

### **How much will be paid**

£440 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on:

- water bodies with an artificially retained area of open standing water
- the banks of the water body and buffer strips around associated features (such as leats and culverts)

### **Where this option cannot be used**

- To include areas of water - only land can be included in a claim
- For field ponds dug to below the water table
- For water meadows (both bedwork and catch meadow systems)
- For water bodies that are covered by the [Reservoirs Act 1975](#)
- For raised water bodies that are deemed at high-risk by the Environment Agency under the [Flood and Water Management Act 2010](#)

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It protects the banks and associated historic built water-control features of designed or engineered historic water bodies. It maintains or strengthens the role of these features in water quality management.

If successful there will be:

- a well-managed grass buffer with no scrub developing
- a water body that contains clear water and is not over-shaded

- structurally sound water control features
- maintenance carried out using traditional materials and methods

Maintaining archaeological and historic features will conserve the character of the farm and protect England's heritage for future generations. This option can also help to maintain and conserve landscape character.

## Requirements

You must:

- establish or maintain a permanently vegetated buffer strip at least 4m wide on the perimeter or bank of the water body
- establish or maintain a permanently vegetated buffer strip at least 2m wide around associated features outside the 4m buffer strip
- manage the buffer strips to control woody growth and make sure there is no more than 5% bare ground
- make sure that no more than 25% of the water surface is in permanent shade
- control scrub and undesirable plant species so that there is no more than 5% covering the banks of the water body by year 2
- remove all cut material
- keep the depth, shape, profile and design of the built water body and associated engineering without alteration
- keep the character of the feature in its local setting by:
  - carrying out maintenance works and minor repairs on structural historic or archaeological features on a 'like-for-like' basis
  - keeping and maintaining any non-traditional material that was previously used to repair or re-clad the structures

Do not:

- erect new fences

### Keeping records

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- a structures maintenance record using the [template](#) provided. This should also include the following:



- at least once a year, carry out and record the results of an inspection of the water body and associated features
- complete the record with a list of items needing attention and a record of repair and maintenance work that you have carried out
- photographs - before and after shots each year of all maintenance works and minor repairs that you have carried out
- any receipted invoices (or banks statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable), consents or permissions connected with the work
- records of all management activity on the option area for each parcel
- photographs of the water feature, clearly showing its shape and design and all associated engineering features such as sluices, weirs, dams and other water control structures
- photographs of the water feature and surrounding buffers, clearly showing the extent of any areas of scrub, bracken or pernicious weeds

## **Related Mid Tier options**

You can locate these options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### **Maintenance work**

Annual maintenance – carry out the routine work needed to protect structures and features to make sure they survive - to identify and prevent the start of serious structural problems. This should help to avoid expensive restoration in the future.

Typical maintenance work can include:

- regularly inspecting buffer strips to make sure no scrub is developing

- making sure the buffer strips are not on compacted soil so that water can infiltrate
- inspecting the water body to make sure it is clear, and inspecting associated structures to make sure they are working properly
- undertaking minor repairs such as clearing vegetation from leats, sluices, hatches and dams, and repointing retaining walls

Summer is usually the best time for inspections and minor repair works, as water levels are lower and more of the water structures are visible.

## Further information

- [Reservoirs: a guide for owners and operators](#)
- [Moats, Ponds and Ornamental Lakes in the Historic Environment](#)
- [Historic Parks and Gardens and changes to reservoir safety](#)
- [Flood and Water Management Act 2010](#)

See the [Mid Tier manual](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **HS7: Management of historic water meadows through traditional irrigation**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the management of historic water meadows through traditional irrigation option.

### **How much will be paid**

£440 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Higher Tier only:

- on functioning water meadows that are managed using traditional practices, that is where irrigation is achieved through a system of inlet and outlet channels
- where management has written support from the Environment Agency

### **Where this option cannot be used**

On meadows:

- that flood naturally and do not have control structures such as sluices and hatches to regulate water levels
- where water cannot be controlled - water needs to flow evenly across the meadow at up to 25 millimetres (mm) in depth when drowned

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It protects heritage by conserving historic water meadow systems and keeping them in a stable condition.

It maintains the demanding traditional management needed on both 'bedwork' and 'catch' water meadows. It also maintains habitat and water quality.

If successful there will be:

- a well-managed grass sward with no scrub developing
- a working water meadow system with structurally sound water control features
- maintenance carried out using traditional materials and methods

It will also help conserve the character of the farm and traditional land-use patterns.

## Requirements

You must:

- float or drown the meadow for an agreed period of time each year
- maintain the gutters, carriers or channels to encourage an even film of water approximately 25mm deep to flow over the sward
- maintain and repair the water control structures such as sluices, weirs and hatches, keeping a record of the work
- manage the meadow by grazing or hay cutting once the land has dried out
- use very little or no manures, fertilisers, pesticides or supplementary feed
- control undesirable plants

The agreement will set out what you cannot do. It is likely you will not be allowed to:

- harrow or roll
- work on the gutters, carriers or channels during late spring and summer
- plough, cultivate or re-seed
- remove, replace or relocate historic structures

### Keeping records

You must contact the Environment Agency before you apply for this item for advice and get any consents or permissions that are needed. You do not need to send these with your application, but must send any consents or permissions with your payment claim.

You must send the following with your application:

- a map of existing tracks and routes – you can mark these on any map, including the Farm Environment Record (FER)

On your annual claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements and send the following:

- confirmation from the Environment Agency

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- photographs of the state of the water meadow and its structural, historic and archaeological features before works start
- a [structures maintenance record](#) using the template and:
  - at least once a year, carry out and record the results of an inspection of the water body and associated features
  - complete the record with a list of items needing attention and a record of repair and maintenance work that has been carried out
- before and after photographs of all maintenance works and minor repairs that have been carried out
- stock grazing records
- receipted invoices or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- consents or permissions connected with the work (in addition to the ones stated above)
- records of all management activity on the option area for each parcel
- photographs of the state of the water meadow and its structural, historic and archaeological features when works completed.

## Related options

You can locate the following options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [BE3 – Management of hedgerows](#)
- [GS16 - Rush infestation control supplement](#)
- [OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland](#)

- [OR2 - Organic conversion - unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT2 - Organic land management - unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [SP1 – Difficult sites supplement](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [WT3 – Management of ditches of high environmental value](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### **Carrying out maintenance**

Carry out routine maintenance work to protect structures and features to make sure they survive.

Carry out annual maintenance to spot and prevent the start of serious structural problems. This should help to avoid expensive restoration in the future.

Typical maintenance work may include:

- inspecting the water control structures such as sluices, weirs and hatches to make sure they are all working properly
- clearing carriers, leats, gutters and drains of vegetation and silt
- carrying out minor repairs to sluices, hatches, weirs, bridges, aqueducts, culverts and dams

Historic fabric should be kept as far as possible and not over-restored.

Field operations and stocking should not damage the soil structure, for example by allowing livestock to poach the ground.

## Further information

You can find more information on the location of scheduled monuments, registered parks and gardens, registered battlefields and listed buildings, as well as undesignated historic and archaeological features on:

- the Historic England annual [Heritage at Risk register](#) - this identifies historic environment features at high risk loss or damage
- the [MAGIC website](#) for information in map form
- the [Selected Heritage Inventory for Natural England](#) website
- the county [historic environment record](#)

You can also read about [Conserving historic water meadows](#) on the Historic England website.

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **HS8: Maintenance of weatherproof traditional farm buildings in remote areas**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the maintenance of weatherproof traditional farm buildings in remote areas option.

### **How much will be paid**

£6.73 per square metre.

### **Where to use this option**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only for traditional farm buildings or parts of buildings that:

- are at least 400m from the main farmstead
- are at least 200m from a metalled public road (a hard surface like asphalt, concrete, paving stones, bricks and cobbles) by the shortest practicable route
- are still in agricultural use on a farm holding, whether or not this was the original use
- are sound and weatherproof
- are recorded on the Farm Environment Record (FER)
- were built using traditional methods and using timber, brick, stone, tile or slate
- was built before 1940 for agricultural use, eg housing machinery or animals, or storing or processing crops and food

Applicants must own or control the building or the part of the building entered into the option for the life of the agreement.

Where this option cannot be used

This option cannot be used if the building:



- is a metal-framed Dutch barn
- was constructed as a dwelling
- is a farmhouse, residential or domestic building

How this option will benefit the environment

It will help to maintain traditional farm buildings, using traditional methods and materials. This will also enhance the local landscape and preserve places for wildlife.

If successful there will be:

- traditional farm buildings, fixtures and fittings in a sound condition and weatherproof
- traditional materials and methods used in maintenance work
- preserved and accessible features as identified in the wildlife assessment which was submitted with the application (see [Countryside Stewardship: building wildlife assessment form](#))
- new bat or owl boxes where a need has been identified
- annual updates of any work in the buildings maintenance plan and log (See [Countryside Stewardship: building maintenance plan and log form](#))

Requirements

Year 1

- complete a building maintenance plan
- install bat or barn owl boxes with open access points, if recommended in the initial wildlife assessment

Every year

- carry out visual inspections at least once a year and keep records of the results in the building maintenance plan and wildlife assessment
- carry out maintenance work and repairs on a 'like for like' basis
- record the maintenance work that has been carried out in the buildings maintenance plan log
- keep the building weatherproof, including fixtures, fittings and features such as mounting blocks, stook or stack bases

- use traditional material and methods for any maintenance work, keeping the character of the building within its local setting
- maintain areas where a non-traditional material has previously been used to repair or re-clad the building, such as corrugated iron sheeting to cover roofs
- maintain existing features identified as possible roosting areas for bats, such as non-structural crevices and cavities, taking care not to disturb any bats
- get advice from a licensed ecological consultant if bat activity has been identified - this will apply at any time in the agreement
- follow any advice from a licensed ecological consultant about when work can be undertaken on the building's fabric and get any bat licences that are needed

Do not:

- sell or convert the building for non-agricultural use during the life of the agreement

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- copy of the building maintenance plan to be submitted by the second claim. This is also to be updated with inspection results and completed works throughout the life of the agreement
- any receipted invoices (or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable), consents or permissions connected with the work
- a copy of the wildlife assessment updated with the results of annual inspection
- photographs of the condition of the building before the start of the agreement
- a [wildlife assessment](#) of the building's suitability for barn owls, kestrels and bats

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- map of traditional farm building location - this can be marked on any map including the Farm Environment Record (FER)

- map identifying traditional farm building and the distance to main steading and metalled public access - this can be marked on any map including the Farm Environment Record (FER)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

How to calculate the option area

The eligible area for this option is the footprint of the ground floor of the building. Do not include any other space from extra floors, or any parts of the yard, in the calculation.

Maintenance work

Carry out routine maintenance work to protect the fabric of the building and to keep it weatherproof. This does not include work to fix significant defects or decay, or work to bring a building in poor repair back to a good condition.

Regular inspections

Inspect the site regularly to identify areas that might need attention such as:

- blocked downpipes and gutters
- broken or slipped slates, tiles or glass
- pointing on walls
- the condition of paintwork
- barriers to wildlife access
- vegetation that needs clearing
- any other items that need minor repairs

Specific tasks and minor repairs

Carry out specific tasks regularly so the building stays in good condition and is weatherproof. Tasks could include:

- clearing gutters from debris and leaves

- fixing slipped slate or broken roofing slates and tiles to prevent rainwater penetration
- renewing cast iron gutters and drainpipes
- replacing broken glass
- repainting woodwork and metalwork
- repointing walls
- clearing vegetation

How often the work needs doing

Some work will be required every year. Seasonal tasks, such as clearing gutters and removing vegetation, may need to be done several times a year.

Start on any agreed work as soon as the agreement begins, such as:

- installing wildlife boxes
- undertaking work to enable access for wildlife
- completing the Buildings Maintenance Plan

Further information

For information on the law and bats see [bats: protection, surveys and licences](#).

Also, read Historic England's guidance leaflet about [caring for farm buildings](#).

## **HS9: Restricted depth crop establishment to protect archaeology under an arable rotation**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the restricted depth crop establishment to protect archaeology under an arable rotation option.

### **How much will be paid**

£174 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier.

In Mid Tier you can use this option only:

- on Scheduled Monuments on arable land or temporary grassland
- with the written approval of Historic England as confirmed on your Historic Environment FER (HEFER) consultation response

In Higher Tier you can use this option:

- on Scheduled Monuments where approved by Historic England and on historic or archaeological features identified in your HEFER.

### **When this option cannot be used**

On parcels at risk of soil erosion or runoff, as identified in the Farm Environment Record (FER)

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It reduces the risk of damage to historic and archaeological features on arable land, particularly where subtle earthwork remains survive.

Maintaining archaeological and historic features will conserve the character of the farm and protect England's heritage for future generations.

Arable cultivation damages archaeological remains by:

- levelling out earthworks
- cutting through and churning up remains below ground
- eroding protective layers of soil

Using direct drill machinery across earthwork remains reduces the risk of damage to archaeological features.

Cover-cropping techniques can help to avoid damage to soil structure and weed problems which might otherwise build up under a direct drilling regime, by:

- reducing compaction
- limiting erosion
- suppressing weeds

If successful there will be a soil surface with no evidence of:

- erosion
- subsoil (which indicates a deeper cultivation depth)
- freshly disturbed archaeological remains, such as pottery, burnt flint, flint tools, animal and human bone and building stone and tile

There will also be improved soil structure and fewer weeds.

## **Requirements**

You must:

- make sure the following field operations do not go deeper than 15cm:
  - tillage
  - soil management
  - planting
  - harvesting
- use a direct drill system where historic or archaeological earthworks are known to survive

- make sure that vehicle or stock access routes are at least 6m away from the historic or archaeological feature - you can still use existing surfaced tracks
- one year in every 5 include a sown cover as part of the crop rotation, based on the [What to sow](#) section below

Do not:

- use equipment trains that are longer than 6m
- grow the following crops on the option area:
  - maize
  - lucerne
  - root and tuber crops (excluding non-harvestable root crops such as grazed fodder beet and forage turnips)
  - short rotation coppice
  - miscanthus
- carry out drainage works, including modifying existing drainage, before gaining written approval from Natural England

### **Keeping records**

You must submit the following with your application:

- a map of existing tracks - you can mark these on any map, including your Farm Environment Record (FER)

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- consents or permissions connected with the work
- written approval for the use of this option from Historic England
- photographs of the management undertaken

### **Related Mid Tier options**

You can locate these options and supplements on the same area as this:

- [AB4 – Skylark plots](#)
- [AB7 - Whole crop cereals](#)
- [AB10 - Unharvested cereal headland](#)

- [AB11 – Cultivated areas for arable plants](#)
- [AB14 - Harvested low input cereal](#)
- [OP5 - Undersown cereal](#)
- [OR3 - Organic conversion - rotational land](#)
- [OR4 - Organic conversion - horticulture](#)
- [OT3 - Organic land management - rotational land](#)
- [OT4 - Organic land management - horticulture](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### **Reduce cultivation depth and compaction**

You can reduce cultivation depth through:

- direct drilling
- raising the height of the chisel
- using depth control chains or gauges
- using a GPS depth controller
- increasing the number of discs (14 discs for a 3m width instead of the usual 9)
- using depth wheels with parallelogram mounting

You can reduce compaction by:

- not working in wet soil conditions
- reducing tyre pressure of vehicles travelling on the site to spread the load more evenly

### **Cover crop: What to sow**

A mixture based on the following species will supply overwinter cover and cover into the next year:

- ryegrass
- millet
- triticale
- red clover



- crimson clover
- birdsfoot trefoil
- phacelia
- common vetch
- mustard

Shallow rooting species are preferable. This will prevent damage from plants with a deeper, penetrating root structure like sweet clover.

### **Cover crop: When to sow**

Establish the cover crop quickly to get the most environmental benefits. You can do this by:

- including the cover crop in the preceding crop at harvest time using auto-casting equipment
- sowing the cover crop immediately following harvest in the autumn

Depending on the seed mixture, the cover crop can be broadcast on to the surface and rolled afterwards.

Sow in the autumn and keep until 31 July the following year.

### **Cover crop: Sowing**

You are more likely to succeed if you:

- establish the cover crop quickly
- sow mixtures with good frost tolerance
- have good ground cover

### **Further information**

The following guide from [Historic England](#) may be useful:

- Farming the historic landscape: caring for archaeological sites on arable land

See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.



## **LH1: Management of lowland heathland**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the management of lowland heathland option.

### **How much will be paid**

£274 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

Available for Higher Tier

Whole or part parcel

Non-rotational

Only on lowland heathland priority habitat; this can include areas of acid grassland mixed with heathland

Note: this option is not intended for use:

- on extensive grassland areas (without heather or dwarf shrubs) as these should be put into a relevant grassland option, such as:
  - [GS6 - Management of species-rich grassland](#)
  - [GS13 - Management of grassland for target features](#)
- on upland heathland over 300m above sea level and within the moorland line and the severely disadvantaged area

Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- bare ground
- open water
- scrub

## **How this option will benefit the environment**

It creates a diverse mosaic of vegetation, allowing all heathland types (such as wet or dry heath, transitional heaths, acidic mires and coastal heaths) to flourish. This includes pioneer heath and bare ground, which benefits rarer invertebrates, birds, reptiles and plants.

If successful there will be heathland areas with a diverse mosaic structure, including undisturbed bare ground and vegetation in all stages of its life cycle.

The cover of undesirable species will be low and species that increase when undermanaged (bracken, trees, dense grass tussocks) kept under control. Locally characteristic plant communities and the species they support (such as nightjar, woodlark, smooth snake and sand lizard, where within their range) are common.

## **Requirements**

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- create a wide range of heather ages and structure through appropriate management (grazing, burning and/or cutting)
- provide bare ground cover between 1% and 10%
- maintain tree and scrub cover below 15%
- maintain the full range of age classes of Western or European gorse
- manage bracken so that cover is less than 10% in dense canopy

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- create bare ground on historic or archaeological features
- use fertilisers or manures
- apply any lime
- plough, cultivate or re-seed
- carry out supplementary feeding
- use pesticides, including herbicides, except to spot treat or weed wipe or to control injurious weeds or invasive non-natives

## Keeping records

A valid Wildfire Risk Assessment and a Wildfire Response Plan (agreed with fire service) will be needed. For guidance and example plans see the [Forestry Commission's guide](#). Copies of the Wildfire Risk Assessment and, where required, the Wildfire Response Plan and Wildfire Management Plan will need to be submitted with the first claim.

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- consents or permissions connected with this work
- any sites grazed will require a grazing activity record
- photographs of the existing bracken

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will also be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

## Related options

These supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- [BE3 – Management of hedgerows](#)
- [OR2 – Organic conversion – unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT2 – Organic land management – unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [SP1 - Difficult sites supplement](#)
- [SP3 - Bracken control supplement](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP5 - Shepherding supplement](#)

- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP7 – Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly](#)
- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [WT3 – Management of ditches of high environmental value](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

Heathland is characteristic of acidic and nutrient-poor soils. Heathland sites should be managed to keep their ecological value, which depends on an open and diverse vegetation structure.

Sensitive, sustainable management will be needed, using a combination of appropriate grazing, cutting and removal and/or burning. In some cases herbicide application may be needed (such as for some scrub or bracken control).

Larger sites will often also include areas of acid grassland or wetland habitats - the transitional zones between heathland and such habitats are particularly valuable. If a heathland site is neglected or poorly managed, it is likely to lead to bare ground disappearing and an increase in cover of scrub, bracken, gorse, invasive grasses or secondary woodland.

The removal or disturbance of top soil may be needed, to create or maintain some features, such as bare ground. Do not create bare ground on historic or archaeological features. Such features are best protected by implementing an appropriate grazing or cutting regime, and/or preventing scrub and bracken growth.

## **Further information**

Symes, N. and Day, J. 2003. A practical guide to the restoration and management of lowland heathland, The RSPB, Sandy

## **LH2: Restoration of forestry and woodland to lowland heathland**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the restoration of forestry and woodland to lowland heathland option.

### **How much will be paid**

£184 per hectare (ha).

### **How long the option lasts**

This option lasts for 10 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme.

### **Where to use this option**

Available for Higher Tier

Whole or part parcel

Non-rotational

Only on lowland heathland that has established tree cover over most of its area

Where this option cannot be used

- on areas of heathland with scattered trees and scrub - use [LH1 - Management of lowland heathland, to restore existing heathland habitat](#)
- on woodland being cleared on grassland areas (without dwarf shrubs) - use a relevant grassland option

Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- bare ground

- open water
- scrub

How this option will benefit the environment

It re-establishes lowland heathland on forested land or land recently (since 1900) colonised by woodland.

Once trees are felled and removed and extensive areas of sandy soil are exposed, heathland areas should develop over the first 2 to 3 years. The area will have a tree cover under 15%, with a diverse mosaic structure and composition, including undisturbed bare ground and varied heathland vegetation types.

The cover of undesirable species will be low and vegetation that increases when undermanaged (bracken, scrub, dense grass tussocks) should be kept under control.

Locally characteristic plant communities and the species they support (such as nightjar, woodlark, smooth snake or sand lizard) will successfully colonise the site, if within their range.

Requirements

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- remove trees and scrub, along with the accumulated organic litter layer when it's deeper than 5cm
- graze or cut to manage the colonising heathland vegetation, leading to a balanced range and distribution of dwarf shrub age classes
- follow set times for grazing or cutting
- carry out hydrological restoration measures, if needed, such as damming ditches or blocking drainage, if appropriate
- create or maintain between 1% to 10% of bare ground cover – do not create bare ground on historic or archaeological features
- maintain tree or scrub cover below 15%
- maintain the full range of age classes of Western or European gorse
- manage bracken so that cover is less than 10%



The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely that agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- plough, cultivate or re-seed
- apply fertilisers, manures or lime
- carry out supplementary feeding
- use pesticides, including herbicides, except to spot treat or weed wipe or to control injurious weeds or invasive non-natives

### **Keeping records**

A valid Wildfire Risk Assessment and a Wildfire Response Plan (agreed with fire service) will be needed. For guidance and example plans see the [Forestry Commission's guide](#). Copies of the Wildfire Risk Assessment and, where required, the Wildfire Response Plan and Wildfire Management Plan will need to be submitted with the first claim.

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- consents or permissions connected with this work
- any sites grazed will require a grazing activity record
- photographs of existing bracken

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

### **Related options**

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- [BE3 – Management of hedgerows](#)
- [OR2 – Organic conversion – unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT2 – Organic land management – unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [SP1 - Difficult sites supplement](#)
- [SP3 - Bracken control supplement](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP5 - Shepherding supplement](#)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly](#)
- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [WT3 – Management of ditches of high environmental value](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option

### **Tree removal and burning**

Some areas where trees are well established will look more like woodland than heathland before management takes place. Remove felled trees from the site – but some wood can be retained on the site as a wildlife habitat if Natural England has given permission.

Thin branches and twigs can be burned on site, but do not burn in species-rich grassland, anthills or on other ecological or archaeological features. Clean the area as soon as possible after burning. Control nettles, thistle, dock, ragwort and other weed species as the site regenerates.

### **Site maintenance**

Supplementary seed or heather brash from neighbouring sites may be needed to help heathland establish if there is not enough seed in the soil. Heathland features should be maintained and encouraged as they develop. Heathland sites have acidic and nutrient-poor soils and need active management to keep their ecological value. Such management will usually combine grazing, cutting and removal and/or burning.

Larger sites will often also include areas of acid grassland or wetland habitats, with the transitional zones between heathland and such habitats being of particular value.

The removal or disturbance of top soil may be needed, to create or maintain some features, such as bare ground. Do not create bare ground on historic or archaeological features. Such features are best protected by implementing an appropriate grazing or cutting regime, and/or preventing scrub and bracken growth.

## **Further information**

The [Forestry Commission](#) should be consulted when developing this option. They will advise on the need for a felling licence or an environmental impact assessment.

Further information is available from:

- Symes, N. and Day, J. 2003. A practical guide to the restoration and management of lowland heathland, The RSPB, Sandy
- guidance on [habitat management for reptiles](#) from the ARC Trust

## **LH3: Creation of heathland from arable or improved grassland**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the creation of heathland from arable or improved grassland option.

### **How much will be paid**

£517 per hectare (ha).

### **How long this option lasts**

This option lasts for 10 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme.

### **Where to use this option**

Available for Higher Tier

Whole or part parcel

Non-rotational

On the following land if soil nutrient levels are low (a soil test will be needed to confirm this when applying, see below):

- arable
- temporary grassland
- improved permanent grassland

The best site is likely to be on well-drained sandy soil, former heathland that, ideally, has only been intensively managed for a few years. Sites are ideally near existing heathlands, so as to increase their extent and decrease fragmentation.

Where this option cannot be used

- on land that has previously been granted 10 years agri-environment funding (such as Higher Level Stewardship) for the creation of lowland heathland
- on areas that are better suited to grassland creation options (where those options should be used instead).
- unsuitable sites are likely to:
  - have a high pH with high (above 2) residual N, P and K indices
  - have been intensively managed for many years
  - be small, isolated areas away from existing heathland
  - have never been heathland in the past

Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- bare ground
- open water
- scrub

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

Lowland heathland will be created, which includes mosaics with lowland acid grassland, on arable or improved grassland sites that have largely lost their heathland seed bank.

Heathland species should normally start to appear within 1 to 3 years. The heathland areas in this option will develop a diverse mosaic structure and composition, including undisturbed bare ground and varied vegetation of different ages.

The cover of undesirable species should be low and vegetation that increases when undermanaged (such as bracken, trees, dense grass tussocks) will need to be kept under control. Locally characteristic plant communities and the species they support (such as nightjar, woodlark, smooth snake or sand lizard) will colonise the site, if it's within their range.

### **Requirements**

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- where necessary, carry out hydrological restoration measures, such as reversing drainage on potential wet heath areas by damming ditches or blocking drains
- encourage colonisation by using heather seed (directly or in brush or capsules) or cuttings, preferably from a donor site nearby
- graze or cut the colonising heathland vegetation at set times
- manage undesirable species, such as thistles, willowherbs, bramble and bracken, to keep cover under 10%

Do not:

- plough, cultivate or re-seed
- apply fertilisers, manures or lime
- carry out supplementary feeding
- use pesticides, including herbicides, except to spot treat or weed wipe or to control injurious weeds or invasive non-natives

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- copies of the Wildfire Risk Assessment and, where required, the Wildfire Response Plan (agreed with fire service) and Wildfire Management Plan - for guidance and example plans see the [Uplands Management Group template](#) or [Forestry Commission's guide](#)
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- consents or permissions connected with this work
- any sites grazed will require a grazing activity record
- a standard soil analysis carried out in the last 5 years. The [rules for farmers and land managers to prevent water pollution](#) already require farmers and land managers to carry out soil testing on cultivated agricultural land - you can use these test results to meet the record-keeping requirements for this option.

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

### Related options

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- [BE3 – Management of hedgerows](#)
- [OR1 – Organic conversion – improved permanent grass](#)
- [OT1 – Organic land management – improved permanent grassland](#)
- [SP3 - Bracken control supplement](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP5 - Shepherding supplement](#)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP7 – Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly](#)
- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [WT3 – Management of ditches of high environmental value](#)

### Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

Take an integrated approach to heathland restoration. This includes considering landscape character and visual effects, archaeology and wildlife. Boundaries with nearby land uses will need to be considered, as will possible scrub clearance, fencing and public access issues.

## Further information

Get further information from:

- Symes, N. and Day, J. 2003. A practical guide to the restoration and management of lowland heathland, The RSPB, Sandy

- guidance on [habitat management for reptiles](#) from the ARC Trust

See the Higher Tier manual to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.



## **LV1: Cattle grid**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the cattle grid item.

### **How much will be paid**

£835 per item.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Higher Tier

Only when:

- a new management regime is being introduced to a site
- a substantial change in grazing management is needed

### **Where this item cannot be used**

To place cattle grids on:

- public highways
- public rights of way

How this item will benefit the environment

It creates environmental benefits by aiding grazing management. Benefits include better management of priority habitats or landscape enhancement.

Requirements

- agree a specification for the works with Natural England in year 1 of the agreement
- complete the works as set out in the agreed specification within the agreed timescale

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of the location where the cattle grid is planned
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work
- specification of agreed works

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

## **LV2: Livestock handling facilities**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the livestock handling facilities item.

### **How much will be paid**

Up to 80% of actual costs.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Higher Tier

Only in conjunction with a land management option and if:

- a new management regime is being introduced on the site
- a substantial change in grazing management is needed
- livestock handling facilities are essential for carrying out the associated land management option

Where this item cannot be used

Where:

- existing handling facilities are available
- the site is not grazed
- it will damage historic and archaeological features
- it will damage peat exposures or other sensitive soils
- it will lead to poaching (trampling) damage

How this item will benefit the environment

It will help to improve grazing management.

Requirements

- agree a specification for the works with Natural England

- get at least 3 written quotations for the cost of the works
- complete the works as set out in the approved specification and within the agreed timescale
- erect permanent posts in the locations where mobile facilities will be used
- provide a map of the locations where mobile facilities will be used

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs to show the completed works
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements for more detail

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- the 3 quotes for completion of the work
- map of livestock facilities usage and storage locations where mobile facilities are used

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

### **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item

### **How to construct livestock handling facilities**

This item will typically fund handling pens for cattle, and holding pens and shedding race for sheep.

Agree on a design and location with the adviser. Choose a design and construction materials that blend in with the local landscape.

When choosing a site, make sure that there is no damage to other features or natural resources. Ensure that poaching or vehicle access do not cause ground disturbance in the vicinity of the site.

## **LV3: Hard bases for livestock drinkers**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the hard bases for livestock drinkers item.

### **How much will be paid**

£110 per base.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution caused by farming, on sites where livestock have been excluded from stream or surface waters

Where this item cannot be used

- under livestock housing, roofs or cattle handling facilities that are not associated with feeding or drinking
- within 10m of ditches, streams or waterways
- on historic or archaeological features identified in the HEFER

How this item will benefit the environment

This item will provide hard bases where livestock can stand when drinking. This will reduce the risk of runoff and water pollution from mobilised sediments and organic manures.

Requirements

- dig the soil to a depth of at least 150mm, or down to a naturally occurring hard surface
- extend the dug area around the drinking trough to a width of at least 2.5m
- lay a geotextile membrane over the area before placing the hardcore

- compact the hardcore to a depth of at least 150mm, making sure it is well compacted
- blind the finished hardcore to a depth of at least 50mm
- edge the hard base with timber boards
- make sure the base meets [relevant British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the site during the different stages of construction or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed

## Related Mid Tier items

This item can be used on the same area as the following items:

- [LV7 - Livestock troughs](#)
- [LV8 - Pipework associated with livestock troughs](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

- make sure the area chosen is a suitable size for the numbers of livestock

## **LV4: Hard bases for livestock feeders**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the hard bases for livestock feeders item.

### **How much will be paid**

£170 per base.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution caused by farming.

Where this item cannot be used

- under livestock housing, roofs or cattle handling facilities that are not associated with feeding or drinking
- within 10m of ditches, streams or waterways
- on historic or archaeological features identified in the HEFER

How this item will benefit the environment

This item will provide hard bases where livestock can stand when feeding. This will reduce the risk of runoff and water pollution from mobilised sediments and organic manures.

Requirements

- dig the soil to a depth of at least 150mm, or down to a naturally occurring hard surface
- extend the dug area around the feeder to a width of at least 2.5m
- lay a geotextile membrane over the area before placing the hardcore
- compact the hardcore to a depth of at least 150mm, making sure it is well compacted
- blind the finished hardcore to a depth of at least 50mm



- edge the hard base with timber boards
- make sure the base meets [relevant British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the site during the different stages of construction or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed

## Related Mid Tier items

This item can be used on the same area as the following items:

- [LV7 - Livestock troughs](#)
- [LV8 - Pipework associated with livestock troughs](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item:

- make sure the area chosen is a suitable size for the numbers of livestock

## **LV5: Pasture pumps and associated pipework**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the pasture pumps and associated pipework item.

### **How much will be paid**

£220 per pump.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution caused by farming, where livestock have been excluded from stream or surface waters

or:

- in Higher Tier to encourage grazing to help manage and restore habitats (with the agreement of Natural England)

Where this item cannot be used

- to replace existing equipment in the same location

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

This item will provide livestock with an alternative to drinking from watercourses. It will reduce bank erosion, sediment pollution and the faecal contamination of watercourses.

### **Requirements**

- install a low-lift, animal-operated pasture pump
- secure the pump to robust, preserved timber
- construct a hardstanding area around the pump of at least 1m by 1m

- dig the hardstanding area to a depth of at least 150mm, or down to a naturally occurring hard surface
- compact hardcore on a geotextile liner to a depth of at least 150mm
- edge the hardstanding area with preserved timber (no smaller than 150mm by 50mm)
- use medium-density polyethylene pipework with an external diameter of at least 25mm
- make sure that all the joints are made out of brass or plastic and that they are watertight
- make sure that the pump meets [relevant British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the site during the different stages of construction or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed

### **Related Mid Tier options and items**

This item can be used on the same area as the following options and items:

- [LV8 - Pipework associated with livestock troughs](#)
- [SW1 - 4m to 6m buffer strip on cultivated land](#)
- [SW2 - 4m to 6m buffer strip on intensive grassland](#)

- [SW11 - Riparian management strip](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

How many cattle the pump can serve

Pasture pumps can lift water up to around 5m and pump to a distance of up to 50m. One pump can serve 10 to 15 cattle.

How to get best results from the pump

It may be necessary to train livestock to use the pump.

What to do with the pump in the winter

- remove the pump and store it during the winter to guard against frost damage
- make sure the pump is available for inspection after it is removed

## **LV6: Ram pumps and associated pipework**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the ram pumps and associated pipework item.

### **How much will be paid**

£1,480 per pump.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution caused by farming, where livestock have been excluded from stream or surface waters

or

- in Higher Tier to encourage grazing to help manage and restore habitats (with the agreement of Natural England)

Where this item cannot be used

- to replace existing equipment in the same location

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

This item will provide livestock with an alternative to drinking from watercourses. It will reduce bank erosion, sediment pollution and the faecal contamination of watercourses.

### **Requirements**

- set the ram pump on a firm base made out of a 150mm thick slab of concrete or a 150mm layer of consolidated hardcore
- install a suitable water collection facility, sediment tank (if necessary), drive pipe (supplying pump), pump chamber, pump, and delivery pipe

- make sure that all the works meet the [relevant British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the site during the different stages of construction or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed

## Related Mid Tier options and items

This item can be used on the same area as the following options and items:

- [LV8 - Pipework associated with livestock troughs](#)
- [SW1 - 4m to 6m buffer strip on cultivated land](#)
- [SW2 - 4m to 6m buffer strip on intensive grassland](#)
- [SW11 - Riparian management strip](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

### How to use a ram pump

A ram pump uses the power of flowing water to pump a smaller quantity of water at a much higher pressure. Ram pumps do not need fuel or

electricity as they run entirely on water. Use a ram pump to pump fresh water from a stream to a head tank or reservoir.

### **Where to install the pump**

Install the pump on a site with enough hydraulic head and a consistent water supply throughout the year.

### **How to operate the pump**

Ram pumps can pump over large distances, but they need a buffer tank at the top of the system. The water entering the pump must have a low sediment content, or the resulting abrasion will lead to excessive wear and tear. Reduce the amount of sediment by using a sedimentation tank.

## **LV7: Livestock troughs**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the livestock troughs item.

### **How much will be paid**

£110 per trough.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution caused by farming

or:

- where grazing is being reintroduced as part of a Countryside Stewardship management option

Where this item cannot be used

- under housing or roof structures
- within 10m of ditches, streams or waterways
- within 6m of historic or archaeological features identified in the HEFER
- on areas vulnerable to soil erosion as identified on the FER

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

This item will provide livestock with an alternative to drinking from watercourses and ponds. It will reduce bank erosion, sediment pollution and the faecal contamination of watercourses. It is not for replacing existing troughs.



## Requirements

- make sure the trough is made of galvanised steel, or concrete, spray-moulded glass-reinforced cement (GRC), or polyethylene
- connect the trough to a water supply or to supply water from a bowser on a regular basis
- make sure the trough has a ball valve and service box and complies with BS3445
- meet the [Water Supply \(Water Fittings\) Regulations 1999](#) if using a mains water supply
- make sure the trough meets [relevant British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

## Related Mid Tier options and items

This item can be used on the same area as the following options and items:

- [LV5 - Pasture pumps and associated pipework](#)
- [LV6 - Ram pumps and associated pipework](#)
- [LV8 - Pipework associated with livestock troughs](#)
- [SW1 - 4m to 6m buffer strip on cultivated land](#)
- [SW2 - 4m to 6m buffer strip on intensive grassland](#)

- all other livestock grazing options

### **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

#### **How to choose a site**

Place the trough:

- on hard-standing or on well-drained soil to avoid unnecessary trampling (poaching), erosion or runoff
- away from features through which organic manures and sediment could enter waterways

#### **How to maintain the site**

To meet scheme requirements, do not:

- allow overflow or leaks to contribute to runoff, ponding or erosion in the field
- damage historic or environmental features identified in the HEFER

## **LV8: Pipework associated with livestock troughs**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the pipework associated with livestock troughs item.

### **How much will be paid**

£2.65 per metre.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution caused by farming, where livestock have been excluded from stream or surface waters

or:

- with a Countryside Stewardship management or creation option, on a site where a new trough is needed to meet grazing requirements

Where this item cannot be used

- to replace existing equipment in the same location
- under housing or roof structures
- within 10m of watercourses
- on areas vulnerable to soil erosion as identified on the Farm Environment Record (FER)
- within 6m of historic or archaeological features identified in the HEFER

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

This item will provide livestock with an alternative to drinking from watercourses. It will reduce bank erosion, sediment pollution and the faecal contamination of watercourses.

## Requirements

- use pipework made of medium-density blue polyethylene with an external diameter of at least 25mm
- make sure that all the joints are made of brass or plastic and that they are watertight
- bury the pipework below cultivation depth and to at least 600mm (or as determined by the local water supplier)
- cover the pipe with a tubular steel guard or sleeve pipe if it crosses an open ditch
- lay the pipe 600mm below the ditch to allow for ditch cleaning
- lay the pipe on a 75mm bed of sand if it crosses farm tracks and then cover it with a further 100mm of sand, before overlaying it with backfill
- make sure that the pipe meets the [relevant British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the site during the different stages of construction or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed

## Related Mid Tier options and items

This item can be used on the same area as the following options and items:

- [LV5 - Pasture pumps and associated pipework](#)
- [LV6 - Ram pumps and associated pipework](#)
- [LV7 - Livestock troughs](#)
- [SW1 - 4m to 6m buffer strip on cultivated land](#)
- [SW2 - 4m to 6m buffer strip on intensive grassland](#)
- all other livestock grazing options

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

How to maintain the site

To meet scheme requirements, do not:

- allow overflow or leaks to contribute to runoff, ponding or erosion in the field
- damage any historic or environmental features identified in the HEFER

## **OP1: Overwintered stubble**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the overwintered stubble option.

### **How much will be paid**

£116 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on whole or part parcels in rotation on:

- land registered as organic or 'in conversion' with a Defra-licensed organic control body
- only on stubble that follows the harvest of:
  - cereals (not maize)
  - oilseed rape
  - linseed

### **Where this option cannot be used**

- Parcels at risk of soil erosion or runoff (as identified on the Farm Environment Record (FER))

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It creates a winter food source for seed-eating birds, which feed on spilt grain and the seeds of broad-leaved weeds, and a foraging habitat for brown hare.

If successful there will be an increase in the number of farmland birds using the overwintered stubble.

### **Requirements**

You must:

- bale, chop or spread straw after harvest
- keep the stubble from harvest until 15 February
- establish a green overwinter cover crop (such as mustard or fodder radish) on at least 10%, but not more than 50%, of the option area
- record the location of this option on your annual claim

Do not:

- apply any fertilisers, manures or lime to the stubble
- top or graze
- cultivate the stubble after harvest

### **Keeping records**

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- a valid organic certificate and schedule for all the parcels entered into this option at application and on your annual claim – RPA will not request this information if you have already supplied it for a Basic Payment Scheme (BPS) claim

On your annual claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements and send the following:

- the location of the rotational option

### **Related Mid Tier options**

You can locate the following options on the same area as this option:

- [OR3 - Organic conversion - rotational land](#)
- [OT3 - Organic land management - rotational land](#)

### **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

#### **Rotating this option**

This is a rotational option - it can move between eligible parcels, but maintain the same total area (hectarage) each year.

Cover crops should be located (on up to 50% of the option area) where they will help to reduce any risk of soil erosion. To avoid destroying the stubble, the cover crop must be established using only shallow cultivation, and non-inversion techniques.

## **Further information**

See the [Mid Tier manual](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.



## **OP2: Wild bird seed mixture**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the wild bird seed mixture option.

### **How much will be paid**

£640 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier, on whole or part parcels in rotation on:

- land registered as organic or 'in conversion' with a Defra-licensed organic control body
- land that has been sown to grass for fewer than 7 years

### **Where this option cannot be used**

- On land already receiving funding for Ecological Focus Areas (EFAs) declared for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS)

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It provides a valuable year-round habitat and food for farmland wildlife such as pollinators and farmland birds.

If successful there should be an increase in important food resources for farmland birds, especially in winter and early spring.

### **Requirements**

You must:

- make sure blocks or strips are at least 6m wide and a minimum of 0.4ha in size - the maximum individual plot size is 5ha
- establish by sowing a seed mix containing at least 6 seed bearing crops between 15 February and 15 June. Seed mixes may contain a maximum

of 3 of the following cereal crops but no individual crop group must exceed 90% of the total mix by weight

- barley
  - oats
  - rye
  - triticale
  - wheat
- make sure the mix complies with organic certification rules. Apply to your organic control body for a derogation if organic seed is unavailable
  - re-establish one year mixes annually and two year mixes every other year to maintain seed production
  - re-sow winter bird plots that fail to establish
  - retain winter bird food plots until 15 February each year

You cannot use the following crops:

- artichokes
- canary grass
- giant and intermediate sorghum
- maize
- miscanthus
- sweet clover
- tic beans

For advice on what to sow and re-sow see the [Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option](#) section.

## **Keeping records**

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- seed invoices
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- a valid organic certificate and schedule for all the parcels entered into this option at application and on your annual claim – RPA will not request this information if you have already supplied it for a Basic Payment Scheme (BPS) claim

## Related Mid Tier options

You can locate the following options on the same area as this option:

- [OR3 - Organic conversion - rotational land](#)
- [OT3 - Organic land management - rotational land](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### Pick the right location

Use this option on most areas of the farm, but mixtures work best in sunny locations and on fertile sites.

Avoid planting underneath overhanging trees or next to shading woodland, as this leads to poorer establishment, growth and seed production.

You should place winter bird food mixes next to a field edge but they can extend into the field. Leave access to surrounding crops to allow for management.

### Block and plot sizes

Creating wider and bigger areas of winter bird food allows more seeds to remain undiscovered for longer, which extends their value well into winter.

Smaller areas tend to suffer from birds eating all the food within a short time.

### What to sow

Sow plants that will provide an extended supply of seeds for farmland birds from autumn into late winter.

Annual mixtures can include a range of cereal, brassica or other small-seeded crops such as:

- dwarf sunflower
- fodder radish
- gold of pleasure

- linseed
- mustard
- quinoa
- red millet
- spring barley
- spring oats
- spring triticale
- spring wheat
- white millet

Include biennial crops such as kale, stubble turnip or teasel in 2-year mixtures.

Make sure a single crop group, such as cereals or brassicas, is not more than 90% of the total seed mix by weight. The table below shows the crops most commonly sown in winter bird food seed mixes.

Crop group	Crops most commonly sown in winter bird food seed mixes
Cereal	Barley
	Oats
	Red millet
	Rye

Crop group      Crops most commonly sown in winter bird food seed mixes

---

Triticale

---

Wheat

---

White millet

---

Brassica      Fodder radish

---

Forage rape

---

Gold of pleasure

---

Kale

---

Mustard

---

Oilseed rape

---

Stubble turnip

---

Crop group      Crops most commonly sown in winter bird food seed mixes

---

Other      Buckwheat

---

Chicory

---

Dwarf sunflower

---

Linseed

---

Teasel

---

To minimise the build-up of diseases, pests and weeds over time consider alternating between sowing cereal and brassica-based mixes on non-rotational plots every few years.

### **When and how to sow**

Establish the plot between 1 March and 15 June, but ideally between mid-March and early June.

Create a fine and firm seedbed with seed sown at a depth between 1.5 centimetres (cm) and 2.5cm. Moisture and warmth will help any brassicas establish quickly to protect against flea beetle damage.

### **Managing the option**

Apply organic fertilisers to help crops grow away from pest damage and produce plenty of seed.

Remember that winter bird food should be in place until at least 31 December in year 5 of the agreement.

## **Further information**

See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **OP3: Supplementary feeding for farmland birds**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the supplementary feeding for farmland birds option.

### **How much will be paid**

£494 per tonne for every 2 hectares (ha) of wild bird seed mixture.

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier only:

- on land registered as organic or 'in conversion' with a Defra-licensed organic control body
- when a qualifying area of [OP2 wild bird seed mixture](#) option is included in the agreement (2ha of OP2 - Wild bird seed mixture allows 500 kg per annum of supplementary feeding at each of 2 separate feeding stations)

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

#### **Winter supplementary feeding**

It provides important food sources for farmland birds in late winter and early spring on arable and mixed farms, by supplementing crops of winter bird food with additional seed, such as cereal, oilseed and specialised grains. It gives the birds food through the 'hungry gap' (the late winter period when seed is in short supply) and as they enter the breeding season.

If successful there will be seed-eating farmland birds using the feeding areas from December to April, including:

- yellowhammer
- grey partridge
- tree sparrow
- corn bunting
- linnet



- turtle dove (seen during the spring and summer)

Target birds will be seen more frequently on the farm in the spring and there will be increased breeding success there.

## Summer supplementary feeding

You can also use this option in combination with the [SP9 Threatened species supplement](#) to deliver summer supplementary feeding for turtle doves in priority areas.

You can find more information on how to carry out summer supplementary feeding for turtle doves in the [Where to use this option](#), [Requirements](#) and [Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option](#) sections on GOV.UK for [SP9](#).

## Requirements

You must:

- make sure the winter supplementary feeding mix includes both cereals (not maize) and other small seeds. The small seeds component must be a minimum of 30% of the total mix by weight and contain at least three of the following, with no individual species exceeding 50% of the total small seed component by weight:
  - canary seed
  - linseed
  - oilseed rape
  - red millet
  - sunflower hearts
  - white millet
- spread the winter supplementary feeding mix at a rate of 25kg once a week for 20 weeks between 1 December until 30 April, at each of two separate feeding locations - you can vary the amount to be fed by up to 5kg per week to match demand as necessary
- select feeding areas that are firm and free-draining, such as farm tracks or hard standing areas, and in close proximity to enhanced overwinter stubbles, game cover or wild bird seed mixtures
- if you use tailings (small seeds removed from the harvested crop) make sure they do not exceed 30% of the seed mix by weight

- make sure the mix must meet organic standards. Apply to the control body for a derogation if organic seed is unavailable

Do not:

- use hoppers to supply more than 10% of the feeding mix

### **Keeping records**

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- details of the mixture used (weight of components and cost)
- dates of feeding
- method of feeding (hopper or spreading)
- amount of feed spread on each date
- the location of the feeding areas
- a valid organic certificate and schedule for all the parcels entered into this option at application and on your annual claim – RPA will not request this information if you have already supplied it for a Basic Payment Scheme (BPS) claim

### **Related Mid Tier options**

You can locate the following options on the same area as this option:

- [OR3 - Organic conversion - rotational land](#)
- [OT3 - Organic land management - rotational land](#)
- [SP9 Threatened species supplement](#)

### **Further information**

See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **OP4: Multi species ley**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the multi species ley option.

### **How much will be paid**

£115 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Whole or part parcel

Rotational

Only:

- on land registered as organic or “in conversion’ with a Defra-licensed organic control body .
- if the land has been sown to grass it must be for fewer than 7 years.

How this option will benefit the environment

It provides a valuable year-round habitat and food for farmland wildlife such as pollinators and farmland birds.

Requirements

- in year 1 of the agreement, establish a multi-species ley containing at least:
  - 5 grass species
  - 3 legume species
  - 3 herb species
- the grass component must not exceed 75% of the seed mix by weight (measured in kilograms per hectare).
- once established, manage with rotational cutting or grazing

- for 50% of the option:
  - cut or graze between 1 April and 15 May
  - do not cut or graze this area again until 1 August
- for the remaining 50% of the option area:
  - cut or graze between 15 May and 30 June
  - do not cut or graze this area again until 15 September

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels
- a valid organic certificate and schedule for all the parcels entered into this option at application and on your annual claim – RPA will not request this information if you have already supplied it for a Basic Payment Scheme (BPS) claim

### **Related Mid Tier options**

These options can be located on the same area as this option:

- [OR3 - Organic conversion - rotational land](#)
- [OT3 - Organic land management - rotational land](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option

As this is a rotational option, it can be moved between eligible parcels, but the same total area (hectarage) must be maintained each year.

## **OP5: Undersown cereal**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the undersown cereal option.

### **How much will be paid**

£86 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Whole or part parcel

Rotational

Only on:

- land registered as 'fully organic' or 'in conversion' with a Defra-licensed organic control body

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

Provides a habitat that benefits animals including invertebrates and birds that forage within the undersown cereal crop.

### **Requirements**

- establish an autumn or spring sown cereal crop (not maize) undersown by 30 April with a grass/flower-rich legume ley

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- a valid organic certificate and schedule for all the parcels entered into this option at application and on your annual claim – RPA will not

request this information if you have already supplied it for a Basic Payment Scheme (BPS) claim

## **Related Mid Tier options**

The following options can be located on the same area as this option:

- [HS3 – Reduced-depth, non-inversion cultivation on historic and archaeological features](#)
- [HS9 - Restricted depth crop establishment to protect archaeology under an arable rotation](#)
- [OR3 - Organic conversion - rotational land](#)
- [OT3 - Organic land management - rotational land](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

As this is a rotational option, it may be moved between eligible parcels, but the same total area (hectarage) should be maintained each year.

## **OR1: Organic conversion – improved permanent grassland**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the organic conversion (improved permanent grassland) option.

### **How much will be paid**

£75 per hectare (ha) per year for up to 2 years.

### **Where to use this option**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Whole parcel

Only on:

- land registered as 'in conversion' with a Defra-licensed organic control body
- improved and semi-improved permanent grassland
- arable land, where the land is to be reverted to permanent grassland as part of a Countryside Stewardship agreement

Where this option cannot be used

- on parcels that have previously been registered with an organic control body by the applicant
- on parcels for which the applicant has previously received conversion aid

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It helps to convert permanent grassland from conventional management to organic management.

## Requirements

- follow the Conversion Plan agreed with an organic control body for the land and associated stock
- comply with organic standards from the start of organic conversion to the end of the agreement
- make sure that all land has completed conversion and is registered as 'fully organic' before the end of the agreement

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request, either:

- a copy of the conversion plan agreed with the organic control body
- a fully completed viability plan and evidence land is improved permanent grassland or rough grazing

Agreement holders who have undertaken a viability assessment with their application must start their organic conversion process and submit a copy of the conversion plan (agreed with the organic control body) if requested.

All agreement holders will need to supply a valid organic certificate and schedule for all the parcels entered into this option on their annual payment claim if requested.

RPA will not request the above information if you have already supplied it for a Basic Payment Scheme (BPS) claim.

## Related Mid Tier options

The [Organic management – improved permanent grassland option \(OT1\)](#), should follow on from this option, when the organic conversion period is completed.

Other Countryside Stewardship options and supplements relevant to grassland management may be used on the same land area where eligibility rules allow.

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

This section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.



## Improved and semi-improved grassland

To qualify as improved or semi-improved grassland, at least 2 of these need to apply:

- cover of both ryegrass and white clover is more than 10%
- the sward is not species rich (15 or fewer species per square metre, including grasses)
- there is a low cover (less than 30%) of wildflowers and sedges, excluding white clover, buttercup, injurious weeds

Permanent ineligible features may be eligible as part of the option area if registered with a control body.

## **OR2: Organic conversion – unimproved permanent grassland**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the organic conversion (unimproved permanent grassland) option.

### **How much will be paid**

£50 per hectare (ha) per year for up to 2 years.

### **Where to use this option**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Whole parcel

Only on:

- land registered as 'in conversion' with a Defra-licensed organic control body
- unimproved permanent grassland and rough grazing that is below the moorland line

Where this option cannot be used

- on parcels that have previously been registered with an organic control body by the applicant
- on parcels for which the applicant has previously received conversion aid

How this option will benefit the environment

This option supports conversion of unimproved grassland to organic management.

If successful there will be an increase in the overall area of land registered and managed as organic.

## Requirements

- follow the conversion plan agreed with an organic control body for the land and associated stock
- comply with organic standards from the start of organic conversion to the end of the agreement
- make sure that all land has completed conversion and is registered as 'fully organic' before the end of the agreement

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request, either:

- a copy of the conversion plan agreed with the organic control body
- a fully completed viability plan and evidence land is improved permanent grassland or rough grazing

Agreement holders who have undertaken a viability assessment with their application must start their organic conversion process and submit a copy of the conversion plan (agreed with the organic control body) if requested.

All agreement holders will need to supply a valid organic certificate and schedule for all the parcels entered into this option on their annual payment claim if requested.

RPA will not request the above information if you have already supplied it for a Basic Payment Scheme (BPS) claim.

### Related Mid Tier options

The [Organic management – unimproved permanent grassland option \(OT2\)](#), should follow on from this option, when the organic conversion period is completed.

Other Countryside Stewardship options and supplements relevant to grassland management may be used on the same land area where eligibility rules allow.

### Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

## Unimproved grassland

To qualify as unimproved grassland, at least 2 of the following need to apply:

- cover of both ryegrass and white clover is less than 10%
- the sward is species rich (more than 15 species per square metre, including grasses)
- there is a high cover (more than 30%) of wildflowers and sedges, excluding white clover, creeping buttercup or injurious weeds

Permanent ineligible features may be eligible as part of the option area if registered with a control body.

## **OR3: Organic conversion – rotational land**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the the organic conversion (rotational land) option.

### **How much will be paid**

£175 per hectare (ha) per year, for up to 2 years.

### **Where to use this option**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Whole or part parcel

Rotational

Only on:

- land registered as ‘in conversion’ with a Defra-licensed organic control body
- arable land, temporary grassland or on permanent grassland where cultivation is part of the conversion plan

Where this option cannot be used

- on parcels that have previously been registered with an organic control body by the applicant
- on parcels for which the applicant has previously received conversion aid

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

Helps to convert land under conventional management to organic management.

If successful there will be an increase in the overall area of land registered and managed as organic.

## Requirements

- follow the conversion plan agreed with an organic control body for the land and associated stock
- comply with organic standards from the start of organic conversion to the end of the agreement
- make sure that all land has completed conversion and is registered as 'fully organic' before the end of the agreement

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request, either:

- a copy of the conversion plan agreed with the organic control body
- a fully completed viability plan and evidence land is improved permanent grassland or rough grazing

Agreement holders who have undertaken a viability assessment with their application must start their organic conversion process and submit a copy of the conversion plan (agreed with the organic control body) if requested.

All agreement holders will need to supply a valid organic certificate and schedule for all the parcels entered into this option on their annual payment claim if requested.

RPA will not request the above information if you have already supplied it for a Basic Payment Scheme (BPS) claim.

## Related Mid Tier options

The [Organic management – rotational land option \(OT3\)](#), should follow on from this option, when the organic conversion period is completed.

Other Countryside Stewardship options and supplements for rotational land and arable land may be used on the same land area, where eligibility rules allow.

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

Permanent ineligible features may be eligible as part of the option area if registered with a control body.

## **OR4: Organic conversion - horticulture**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the organic conversion - horticulture option.

### **How much will be paid**

£400 per hectare (ha) per year, for up to 2 years.

### **Where to use this option**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Rotational

Whole or part parcel

Only on:

- land registered as 'in conversion' with a Defra-licensed organic control body
- arable land, temporary grassland or on permanent grassland where cultivation is part of the conversion plan

### **Where this option cannot be used**

- on parcels that have previously been registered with an organic control body by the applicant
- on parcels for which the applicant has previously received conversion aid

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It helps to convert rotational land used to produce vegetables or salads into organic status land.

If successful there will be an increase in the overall area of land used to produce organic products.



## Requirements

- follow the conversion plan agreed with an organic control body for the land and associated stock
- comply with organic standards from the start of organic conversion to the end of the agreement
- make sure that all land has completed conversion and is registered as 'fully organic' before the end of the agreement
- enter a maximum area of 20ha into the option
- keep at least 1 horticultural crop in each field parcel (or part parcel) during the agreement

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request, either:

- a copy of the conversion plan agreed with the organic control body
- a fully completed viability plan and evidence land is improved permanent grassland or rough grazing

Agreement holders who have undertaken a viability assessment with their application must start their organic conversion process and submit a copy of the conversion plan (agreed with the organic control body) if requested.

All agreement holders will need to supply a valid organic certificate and schedule for all the parcels entered into this option on their annual payment claim if requested.

RPA will not request the above information if you have already supplied it for a Basic Payment Scheme (BPS) claim.

## Related Mid Tier options

The [Organic management – horticultural land option \(OT4\)](#), should follow on from this option, when the organic conversion period is completed.

Other Countryside Stewardship options and supplements relevant to arable and rotational land management may be used on the same land area where eligibility rules allow.

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

Permanent ineligible features may be eligible as part of the option area if registered with a control body.

## **OR5: Organic conversion - top fruit**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the organic conversion - top fruit option.

### **How much will be paid**

£450 per hectare (ha) per year, for up to 3 years.

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on whole parcels on:

- land registered as 'in conversion' with a Defra-licensed organic control body
- parcels that are managed primarily for the production of top fruit (such as apples, pears and plums) and permanent bush crops (such as gooseberries and redcurrants)
- orchards fully stocked at the appropriate spacing for the species and variety of fruit tree or bush

### **Where this option cannot be used**

- On parcels that you have previously registered with an organic control body
- On parcels for which you have previously received conversion aid
- On orchards that are used for the production of alcoholic drinks
- On orchards that are not in commercial production

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

Helps recently planted and traditional standard orchards (and permanent fruit or berry bushes) convert to organic management.

If successful there will be an increase in the overall land area registered as organic, providing a range of environmental and public benefits.

## Requirements

You must:

- follow the conversion plan agreed with an organic control body for the land and any associated stock
- comply with organic standards from the start of organic conversion to the end of the agreement
- make sure that all land has completed conversion and is registered as 'fully organic' before the end of the agreement
- protect trees to prevent damage from livestock and wild animals
- manage tree guards to prevent any damage to growing trees
- keep a 1 metre (m) diameter circle around the base of all newly planted trees clear of vegetation for at least 3 years after planting

### Keeping records

You must send the following with your application:

- a conversion map showing the planting spacing and species within the orchard – you can mark this on any map including the Farm Environment Record (FER)

You must send the following with your annual payment claim:

- copies of fruit sale receipts to show that the orchards are in commercial production and not used for the production of alcoholic drinks

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- either a copy of the conversion plan agreed with the organic control body or, if not available, a fully completed viability plan
- photographs of the trees entered into this option
- a valid organic certificate and schedule for all the parcels entered into this option (We will not ask to see this if you have already sent it with your Basic Payment Scheme (BPS) claim).

## **Related Mid Tier options**

The [Organic management – top fruit option \(OT5\)](#), should follow on from this option, when the organic conversion period is completed.

Other Countryside Stewardship options and supplements relevant to orchard management may be used on the same land area where eligibility rules allow.

## **Further information**

See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **OT1: Organic land management - improved permanent grassland**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the organic land management - improved permanent grassland option.

### **How much will be paid**

£40 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Whole parcel

Only on:

- land registered as 'fully organic' by a Defra-licensed organic control body
- improved and semi-improved permanent grassland
- arable land, where the land is to be reverted to permanent grassland as part of a Countryside Stewardship agreement

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

Maintains land under organic management, providing a wide range of environmental and public benefits.

If successful associated benefits will increase as the organic area is maintained.

### **Requirements**

Comply with organic standards for the life of the agreement.

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- a valid organic certificate and schedule for all the parcels entered into this option at application and on their annual claim - RPA will not request this information if you have already supplied it for a Basic Payment Scheme (BPS) claim
- records to show the land is improved or semi-improved grassland

## Related Mid Tier options

Other Countryside Stewardship options and supplements relevant to grassland management may be used on the same land area where eligibility rules allow.

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

Improved and semi-improved grassland

To qualify as improved or semi-improved grassland, at least 2 of these need to apply:

- cover of both ryegrass and white clover is more than 10%
- the sward is not species rich (15 or fewer species per square metre, including grasses)
- there is a low cover (less than 30%) of wildflowers and sedges, excluding white clover, buttercup, injurious weeds

Permanent ineligible features may be eligible as part of the option area if registered with a control body.

## **OT2: Organic land management - unimproved permanent grassland**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the organic land management - unimproved permanent grassland option.

### **How much will be paid**

£20 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Whole parcel

Only on:

- land registered as 'fully organic' by a Defra-licensed organic control body
- unimproved permanent grassland and rough grazing that is below the moorland line

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It maintains unimproved grassland under organic management, providing a wide range of environmental and public benefits.

### **Requirements**

Comply with organic standards for the life of the agreement.

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:



- a valid organic certificate and schedule for all the parcels entered into this option at application and on their annual claim - RPA will not request this information if you have already supplied it for a Basic Payment Scheme (BPS) claim
- records to show the land is unimproved permanent grassland or rough grazing

## **Related Mid Tier options**

Other Countryside Stewardship options and supplements relevant to grassland management may be used on the same land area where eligibility rules allow.

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

Unimproved grassland

To qualify as unimproved grassland, at least 2 of these need to apply:

- cover of both ryegrass and white clover is less than 10%
- the sward is species rich (more than 15 species per square metre, including grasses)
- there is a high cover (more than 30%) of wildflowers and sedges, excluding white clover, buttercup, injurious weeds

Permanent ineligible features may be eligible as part of the option area if registered with a control body.

## **OT3: Organic land management - rotational land**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the organic land management - rotational land option.

### **How much will be paid**

£65 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Whole or part parcel

Rotational

Only on:

- land registered as 'fully organic' by a Defra-licensed organic control body
- land parcels that have been cultivated in the preceding 7 years

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

Maintains land under organic management, providing a wide range of environmental and public benefits.

### **Requirements**

Comply with organic standards for the life of the agreement.

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- a valid organic certificate and schedule for all the parcels entered into this option at application and on their annual claim - RPA will not request

this information if you have already supplied it for a Basic Payment Scheme (BPS) claim

- farm records to show that any permanent grassland parcels entered for this option have been cultivated within the previous 7 years

## **Related Mid Tier options**

Other Countryside Stewardship options and supplements relevant to arable and rotational land management may be used on the same land area where eligibility rules allow.

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

Permanent ineligible features may be eligible as part of the option area if registered with a control body.

## **OT4: Organic land management - horticulture**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the organic land management - horticulture option.

### **How much will be paid**

£200 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Whole or part-parcel

Rotational

Only on:

- land registered as 'fully organic' by a Defra-licensed organic control body
- land parcels that have been cultivated in the preceding 7 years

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

Maintains land under organic management, providing a wide range of environmental and public benefits.

If successful you should see these benefits increase and the organic area maintained.

### **Requirements**

- comply with organic standards for the life of the agreement
- enter a maximum area of 20ha into the option
- maintain the total hectareage (area) that was committed to at the beginning of the agreement for the whole of the agreement

- keep at least 40% of the area entered for this option in horticultural production with produce for human consumption at any single stage of the rotation
- keep at least 1 horticultural crop in each field parcel (or part parcel) during the agreement

## **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- a valid organic certificate and schedule for all the parcels entered into this option at application and on their annual claim
- an up-to-date conversion plan approved by an organic control body
- farm records to show that any permanent grassland parcels entered for this option have been cultivated within the previous 7 years

RPA will not request an organic certificate and schedule, or a conversion plan if you have already supplied it for a Basic Payment Scheme (BPS) claim.

## **Related Mid Tier options**

Other Countryside Stewardship options and supplements relevant to arable and rotational land management may be used on the same land area where eligibility rules allow.

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

Permanent ineligible features may be eligible as part of the option area if registered with a control body.

## **OT5: Organic land management - top fruit**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the organic land management - top fruit option.

### **How much will be paid**

£300 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on whole parcels only on:

- land registered as 'fully organic' by a Defra-licensed organic control body
- parcels that are managed primarily for the production of top fruit (such as apples, pears and plums) and permanent bush crops (such as gooseberries and redcurrants)
- orchards that are fully stocked at the appropriate spacing for the species and variety of the fruit tree or bush

### **Where this option cannot be used**

- On orchards that are used for the production of alcoholic drinks
- On orchards that are not in commercial production

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It maintains top fruit orchards under organic management, providing a range of environmental and public benefits.

### **Requirements**

You must:

- comply with organic standards for the life of the agreement
- keep a 1 metre (m) diameter circle around the base of all newly planted trees clear of vegetation for at least 3 years after planting

- protect trees to prevent damage from livestock and wild animals
- manage tree guards to prevent any damage to growing trees

### **Keeping records**

You must send the following with your application:

- a conversion plan map showing the planting spacing and species – you can mark this on any map including the Farm Environment Record (FER)

You must send the following with your annual payment claim:

- copies of sales receipts for fruit crops

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- a valid organic certificate and schedule for all the parcels entered into this option – we will not request this information if you have already supplied it for a Basic Payment Scheme (BPS) claim
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- photographs of the trees entered into this option

### **Related Mid Tier options**

Where eligibility rules allow, you can use other Countryside Stewardship options and supplements relevant to orchard management on the same land area.

### **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

Permanent ineligible features may be eligible as part of the option area if registered with a control body.

### **Further information**

See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **OT6: Organic land management - enclosed rough grazing**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the organic land management - enclosed rough grazing option.

### **How much will be paid**

£8 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Whole parcel

Only on:

- land registered as 'in conversion' or 'fully organic' by a Defra-licensed organic control body
- rough grazing in enclosed parcels that are:
  - less than 15ha
  - within a severely disadvantaged area (SDA)
  - above the moorland line

Where this option cannot be used

- on the same area as any other organic land management or conversion option

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

Maintains organic management of enclosed rough grazing parcels no greater than 15ha within the SDA and above the moorland line. This creates a wide range of environmental and public goods.

If successful applicants should see these benefits increase and organic management maintained.



## Requirements

Comply with organic standards for the life of the agreement. For land in conversion, comply with organic standards from the start of organic conversion to the end of the agreement.

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- a valid organic certificate and schedule for all the parcels entered into this option at application and on your annual claim
- for any land in conversion, either a copy of the conversion plan agreed with the organic control body or a fully completed viability plan

RPA will not request the above information if you have already supplied it for a Basic Payment Scheme (BPS) claim.

## Related Mid Tier options

The following options can be located on the same area as this option:

- [UP1 - Enclosed rough grazing](#)
- [UP2 - Management of rough grazing for birds](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

Permanent ineligible features may be eligible as part of the option area if registered with a control body.

## **PA1: Implementation plan**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the implementation plan item.

### **How much will be paid**

£1,100 per plan

### **Where to use this item**

- as a stand-alone agreement to aid an application
- only with written permission from Natural England

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

If successful there will be a completed plan detailing how to carry out the work for an option and how to meet the requirements of that option.

### **Requirements**

- produce an implementation plan following a brief from Natural England
- send a copy of the completed plan for approval by Natural England

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- a copy of the implementation plan
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

### **Creating an implementation plan**

Make sure that the implementation plan follows a set format provided by Natural England. This format will depend on the option or items that the plan covers.

Use this item to fund a water management plan where capital items and land management options are needed to redirect or manage water running across the holding.

## **PA2: Feasibility study**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the feasibility study item.

### **How much will be paid**

Up to 100% of actual costs.

### **Where to use this item**

It is available as a stand-alone agreement to aid an application for Higher Tier.

It can only be used with written permission from Natural England to do so.

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

If successful this item will help plan how to protect or manage habitats, features and species.

### **Requirements**

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- produce and agree with Natural England a detailed specification for the feasibility study
- provide at least 3 written quotations for preparing the study, identifying associated costs - agree the selected quotation with Natural England
- commission the feasibility study from the selected provider and make sure that it is completed in line with the specification by an agreed date
- submit a copy of the completed feasibility study for approval by Natural England with the claim

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is not available
- a copy of the feasibility study

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- the 3 quotes for completion of the work

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

### Feasibility study format

Follow Natural England's set format for the feasibility study. The format will depend on the option or items that the study covers.

## **PA3: Woodland management plan**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the woodland management plan item.

### **How much will be paid**

Threshold	Payment
First 100 hectares (ha)	£20 per ha (minimum payment £1000)
Over 100 ha	£10 per ha

The woodland management plan must cover all the woodland on the holding, including all newly planted woodland. The amount paid will be calculated on the entire eligible area of woodland on the holding. This calculation can include up to an additional 20% of newly planted woodland (this means woodland that is under 10 years old at the time of application). Areas over 20% will be deducted from the total area for payment but must still be covered in the management plan.

### **Where to use this item**

Only on woodland.

### **Where this item cannot be used**

On woodland:

- that is less than 3ha in total
- where there is already a Forestry Commission (FC) approved management plan and only minor changes are needed to meet the current UK Forestry Standard (UKFS)

## How this item will benefit the environment

It will help with the cost of producing a management plan for existing woodland that complies with the standard set by UKFS.

A woodland management plan will help:

- develop and communicate objectives and work proposals for the woodland
- clearly demonstrate how a woodland area will be managed sustainably and monitored

## Requirements

- produce a detailed 10 year management plan using the FC template (includes guidance), that complies with the standard set by UKFS
- make sure the plan covers all woodland on the holding or, for larger holdings, all woodland within the same landscape setting

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- Forestry Commission Woodland Management Plan approval letter
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

## **RP1: Resurfacing of gateways**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the resurfacing of gateways item.

### **How much will be paid**

£92 per gateway.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only in areas targeted to reduce water pollution from agriculture

### **Where this item cannot be used**

- where there are archaeological or historic features identified in the HEFER
- where a public right of way passes through the gateway without relevant advice or consent from the Highways Authority

How this item will benefit the environment

This item will provide a strengthened surface at the field gateway. This will reduce ponding on either side of the gateways caused by soil compaction. If successful there will be reduced surface runoff, soil erosion and risk of diffuse water pollution.

### **Requirements**

- excavate the full width of the gateway by the full length which the gate opens into the field when it is at 90 degrees
- excavate to a minimum depth of 150mm or until there is a naturally occurring hard surface
- remove the excavated soil from the gateway area and spread it on the verges of the field track, allowing for drainage



- overlay the excavated area with a geotextile membrane, then fill with aggregate (hard core) to a minimum consolidated depth of 150mm
- all capital works carried out must meet the relevant [British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance

Do not:

- spread the excavated soil on any environmental or historic features as identified in the HEFER

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of the existing gateway before works start
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Before applying, applicants must seek advice or consent from the Highways Authority if a public right of way passes through the gateway. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit consents or permissions with your payment claim.

## Related Mid Tier items

This item can be used on the same area as the following item:

- [RP2 - Gateway relocation](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

## Materials and area of resurfacing

When carrying out the work:

- the area to be resurfaced should be appropriate for the size of the gateway and the type of traffic that will move through it
- compact each layer of hard core well down before adding another layer, making sure each layer is no more than 150mm thick
- advice should be taken from the Environment Agency (EA) if road planings, waste or recycled materials will be used as hard core

## Further information

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See more information on [CSF support](#).

## **RP2: Gateway relocation**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the gateway relocation item.

### **How much will be paid**

£340 per gateway.

### **Where to use this item**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier where all of the following apply:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution from agriculture
- where a gateway is acting as a conduit for water movement
- to move gateways associated with farm machinery or livestock

### **Where this item cannot be used**

Without relevant advice or consent if the existing or new gateway provides access to:

- a historic routeway
- a Public Right of Way
- a highway
- a byway open to all traffic (BOAT)

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

This item will move the gateway to a suitable location where it will not act as a pathway for water runoff. This will prevent polluted surface water from leaving fields through gateways and help to reduce risk of soil erosion and diffuse pollution.

### **Requirements**

You must:

- leave the existing gate posts where they are, keeping any existing stone or slate posts that are traditional landscape or historic features
- re-route the existing trackways associated with the gateway and make good the disused sections
- gap up the old gateway using materials that match the character of the rest of the boundary
- use new hanging and shutting posts in the new gateway
- carry out all capital works to the relevant [British Standards](#) - see copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance

### **Keeping records**

Before you apply you must get consents and advice from:

- the local planning authority (if the new gateway provides access to public highways or byways open to all traffic)
- the Highways Authority (if a public right of way passes through the existing or new gateway)
- a historic environment specialist (if the gateway is on a historic routeway)

You do not need to provide these with your application, but you will need to send consents or permissions with your payment claim.

You must keep the following records and supply them with your annual payment claim:

- photographs of the completed work
- consents and/or advice for works if required (as listed above)

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work (in addition to the ones listed above)
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of the site before works start

Please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

## Related Mid Tier items

You can use this item on the same area as the following items:

- [BN1 - Stone-faced bank repair](#)
- [BN2 - Stone-faced bank restoration](#)
- [BN3 - Earth bank creation](#)
- [BN8 - Hedgerow supplement - casting up](#)
- [BN10 - Hedgerow supplement - top binding and staking](#)
- [BN11 - Planting new hedges](#)
- [FG1 - Fencing](#)
- [FG2 - Sheep netting](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### How to reduce surface water flows

You may need to carry out other work to reduce surface water runoff, including:

- relieving compaction
- cultivating crops across slopes
- using temporary water storage areas to capture surface flows
- positioning new trackways where they do not attract surface water flows
- positioning cross-drains along the track if new trackways cannot be created

### How to maintain the local character

Restore the old gateway so that it blends in with the rest of the boundary. For example, new hedging should match the species mix of the existing hedge.

## Further information

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](#).

See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **RP3: Watercourse crossings**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the watercourse crossings item.

### **How much will be paid**

£300 per crossing.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only in areas targeted to reduce water pollution from agriculture

Where this item cannot be used

- where there are environmental, archaeological or historic features identified on the Farm Environment Record (FER), the Environmental Information Map or the HEFER
- without relevant advice or consents from the Environment Agency or Local Planning Authority

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

Providing a watercourse crossing for livestock and machinery will reduce the disturbance to the watercourse, which will help reduce sedimentation.

### **Requirements**

- construct a ford at least 4m wide
- include a semi-circular, straight or oblique group of toe stones keyed into the riverbed on the downstream edge to form a gravel trap
- key the stones down to at least 600mm below the existing level of the bed or below the known scour level (whichever is deeper)
- make sure the stones do not stand clear of the water during low summer flows and that they do not form a weir
- make sure the approach slope gradient is no steeper than 1 in 4

- make sure that livestock cannot access the sides of the ford approaches
- include rock revetment to protect the ford approaches on the river side
- protect the base of the entrance and the exit ramp, (to avoid bankside erosion) with one of the following:
  - rock armouring using cobble-sized rocks to create as flat a surface as possible and filling any gaps with coarse gravel or hardcore
  - coarse gravel or hardcore:
    - with treated retaining boards (50mm by 230mm) along the ramp (parallel to the river flow) and spaced 1m apart
    - hold the boards in position with treated posts (100mm by 100mm) that are 1m apart
    - drive the posts into the bank and trim them at an angle of 1 in 4 (parallel to the slope)
    - drive the posts at least 50mm below the line of the boards to avoid tripping
    - compact the bed of the ramp to provide a stable footing for livestock
- all capital works carried out must meet the relevant [British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:



- photographs of the site during the different stages of construction or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed

Applicants must obtain Flood Defence Consent on a main river and contact the local planning authority about the plans before applying for this item. A copy of any advice or consent received from the EA or the local planning authority should be provided with the claim.

## **Related Mid Tier items**

This item can be used on the same area as the [FG15 - Water gates](#) item.

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

### **How to choose a location**

It is generally best to build watercourse crossing points at existing stock crossing locations, as the banks are usually less steep.

Agreement holders should choose a site that needs the minimum amount of excavation work. This will produce less spoil, cause less disruption and reduce the amount of sediment entering the watercourse.

The crossing should not be constructed on a watercourse bend, as this can lead to silt deposition on the inside of the bend and erosion on the outside.

### **Further information**

Further information about watercourse crossings is available from the Rivers Trust.

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](#).

## **RP4: Livestock and machinery hardcore tracks**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the livestock and machinery hardcore tracks item.

### **How much will be paid**

£33 per metre (m).

### **Where to use this item**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier in one of the following:

- in areas targeted to reduce water pollution from agriculture and with the support of Natural England or a Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) officer
- in combination with options for the management and restoration of habitats or features with the support of a Natural England adviser

### **Where this item cannot be used**

- To repair potholes or upgrade existing tracks and farm drives
- On historic or archaeological features or areas of existing wildlife interest identified on the Farm Environment Record (FER), the Environmental Information Map or the Historic Environment Farm Environmental Record (HEFER)
- Without relevant advice or consents from the Highways Authority, if the proposed route is a Public Right of Way

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

New farm tracks reduce soil compaction and erosion caused by livestock and machinery. They also help reduce channelling of surface runoff and the risk of sediment and other pollutants entering a watercourse.

### **Requirements**

You must:

- make sure all capital works meet the relevant [British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance

### **Hardcore tracks**

- Excavate a trench at least 2.4m wide and at least 150 millimetres (mm) deep, or down to a naturally occurring hard surface
- Profile the edge of the track with the excavated soil
- Overlay the area with a geotextile membrane if the base of the trench lies on subsoil (a geotextile membrane is not needed if the base is bedrock or chalk)
- Fill the trench with stone or hardcore to a depth of at least 150mm, and compact it
- Finish the top of the track with a finer material (of 18mm to dust) to a depth of 25 to 50mm, and compact it into a convex camber
- Direct any track runoff to a ditch or other stable drainage outlet, or divert it on to grassland

### **Hardcore tracks using concrete sleepers**

- Excavate a trench following the instructions above and in addition:
- Invert the concrete sleepers and lay them slightly proud of the ground
- Lay the sleepers directly on to a level, firm surface and butt them up against each other to form a track (a geotextile membrane is not required)

### **Hardcore tracks on peaty soils**

- Excavate a trench 2.4m wide and at least 300mm deep, or 500mm on deep peats
- Dig out soft pockets in the profile, drain them, fill them with well compacted hardcore and cap them with clay
- Lay a geotextile membrane to the full width of the track, folding up the sides of the trench
- Lay the membrane on to a surface that will not puncture the material
- Allow at least 300mm for any overlap of the membrane
- Fill the trench to within 50mm of the top with stone or hardcore (from 40mm to dust)
- Profile and compact the track to produce a convex camber
- Top off the track with a wearing course (18mm to dust) to a depth of 25 to 50mm, and compact it to produce a convex camber

- Make sure the geotextile membrane is fully covered – if necessary grass turf may be used to prevent exposure of the membrane at the edge of the track

Do not:

- use general, ungraded building rubble

### **Keeping records**

Where you are using this item on a public right of way, consult the local highways authority (LHA) before you apply to get any advice or consent which you need. You do not need to send this with your application, but you will need to send any consents with your payment claim.

You must send the following with your application:

- written support from a CSF officer or Natural England adviser

You must keep the following records and supply them with your payment claim:

- photographs of the site during the different stages of construction or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed
- any consents or permissions connected from the local highways authority (LHA)

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work (in addition to the ones stated above)
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start

### **Related Mid Tier items**

You can use this item on the same area as the [RP5 - Cross drains](#) item.

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### **How to choose a location**

It is best to:

- construct the tracks alongside field boundaries rather than across the middle of the field - this will help preserve the appearance of the landscape
- avoid placing the tracks where they will cause runoff or lead to erosion
- camber the tracks so water sheds continuously off them
- use cross drains or bunds if the tracks cannot be cambered
- use cross drains, if necessary, on sloping tracks or tracks that lead on to a highway

### **When to add a geotextile membrane**

You do not need to use a geotextile membrane for all types of soil. It is not usually needed on firm shale and some limestone or chalk soils except on a steep slope. Clay soils and peats will need a greater depth of stone to make up the track layers.

Tracks used by machinery may need a geotextile membrane and base layer of stone, depending on the type of soil. Concrete sleepers alone are not adequate for machinery tracks.

### **How to maintain the tracks**

You should replace and compact any material lost to potholes and erosion. You should keep the track dry and firm and deal with any problems as soon as they appear.

### **Permanent ineligible features**

Constructed farm tracks may be classed as permanent ineligible features and excluded from area payment schemes.

### **Further information**

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides

farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](#).

See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **RP5: Cross drains**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the cross drains item.

### **How much will be paid**

£245 per drain.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution from agriculture
- where a farm track is acting as a conduit for water runoff or pollution
- in farmyards to redirect clean water

Where this item cannot be used

- to manage or redirect heavily polluted effluents and slurries
- without relevant advice or consent if track is identified as a historic routeway in the HEFER

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

This item will provide a drain to intercept and conduct surface runoff away from farm tracks and yards. The drain will help reduce channelling of surface runoff and the risk of sediment and other pollution entering a watercourse.

### **Requirements**

- position the cross drain so it catches the water on the uphill side of the track or yard and transfers it to an outfall where it will not cause new erosion or runoff issues

- redirect water from the cross drain to a stable drainage outlet such as a ditch, culvert or other outfall - low flows can be directed to a field or field margin
- construct the drain either by digging a partially covered channel to collect sediment and redirect surface water, or by constructing a low hump to direct surface flows
- maintain drains and drainage outfalls or the areas around humps by removing built-up sediment or other clogging materials
- either construct an open channel:
  - excavate a channel across the width of the track or in a yard to a depth of at least 100mm and 100mm to 250mm wide
  - line the channel with concrete and install a gridded top that must be at least 150mm wide
- or construct a raised hump:
  - excavate a foundation trench across the track or yard to a depth of at least 300mm
  - fill it with concrete
  - key in kerbstones across the trench so they protrude 60 to 100mm above the surrounding surface
- all capital works carried out must meet the relevant [British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance

Do not:

- direct any runoff towards any biodiversity, historic or archaeological features (identified on the FER, the Environmental Information Map or the HEFER), or damage them in any other way
- allow polluted water from drains to reach a watercourse or pond

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start



- written advice from a historic environment specialist if the track is a historic routeway
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Related Mid Tier items

This item can be used on the same area as the following items:

- [RP1 - Resurfacing of gateways](#)
- [RP4 - Livestock and machinery hardcore tracks](#)
- [RP7 - Sediment ponds and traps](#)
- [RP11 - Swales](#)
- [RP15 - Concrete yard renewal](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

### **Using this item with other measures**

Agreement holders should use this item with other measures, such as buffer strips, sediment traps, swales and dams, to slow the velocity of water across the land and prevent pollutants travelling to a watercourse. Follow best practice for reducing soil erosion and increasing water infiltration in fields.

### **How to choose a site for the drain**

Any water draining from the surrounding land should be diverted before it flows on to the track or yard. This can be done by using breaks such as hedges, ditches or buffers.

Cross drains should be placed at intervals across sloping tracks. The number of drains will increase with the length or steepness of the slope.

The distance between the drains will vary according to the site, but they must be close enough to collect heavy surface flows.

## **How to manage drain outfall**

Outfall from the drains should be directed to a specially created temporary water storage area. This will allow water to infiltrate the ground and will protect existing watercourses. It is essential to do this if the water is likely to be polluted (e.g. if livestock use the track or yard). Direct low flows to a well-managed, tussocky grass field margin. Additional capital items (for example, silt traps or swales) can be used to create a temporary water storage area.

## **How to maintain structures**

The structures should be checked for a build-up of sediment or other clogging pollutants after heavy rainfall. They should also be checked after agricultural activities have taken place that are likely to shift soil to the track (e.g. the movement of muddy machines or livestock).

## **Where to position tracks**

If possible, position tracks so they do not run directly downhill or carry pollutants directly between farmyard or fields and watercourses.

Consider using this item when using item [RP4 - Livestock and machinery hardcore tracks] in a place where runoff is still likely to be a problem.

## **Further information**

Improve the management of water on the land by using [rural sustainable drainage systems](#).

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](#).

## **RP6: Installation of piped culverts in ditches**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the installation of piped culverts in ditches item.

### **How much will be paid**

£340 per culvert.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only:

- in areas targeted to reduce water pollution from agriculture

or:

- in combination with options for the management and restoration of habitats or features with the support of a Natural England adviser

### **Where this item cannot be used**

- to replace an existing culvert structure
- where it may damage an environmental, historical or archaeological feature identified on the Farm Environment Record (FER), the Environmental Information Map or the HEFER
- where it will restrict the movement of migratory fish or eels
- without relevant advice or consents from the Environment Agency (EA) or flood defence consenting authority

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

This watercourse crossing will provide access for farm machinery or livestock. This will reduce the disturbance to the watercourse which will help reduce sedimentation and bacterial levels in the water.

If successful there will be:

- an adequate flow of water
- runoff of expected flows diverted under a track so farm machinery and livestock can cross
- farm machinery or livestock crossing tracks safely

## Requirements

- install a concrete pipe at least 450mm in diameter following the manufacturer's instructions
- ensure that pipes have a positive joint to preserve alignment
- make sure that the pipe lengths give a useable width at ground level that is appropriate for the traffic using the crossing:
  - minimum width of 4m for wheeled traffic
  - less than 4m acceptable for livestock footpaths and bridleways
- set the pipes on a firm bed and in true alignment
- make sure that the pipe gradient approximates to that of the ditch bed
- make sure that the pipe invert (the level of the inside bottom of the pipe) at the upstream end is fractionally below the bottom of the true ditch bed
- grade the ditch bed downstream if any deepening is needed to accommodate the culvert
- maintain the culvert for the duration of the agreement, removing debris that builds up so as to maintain flow
- where the above standard specifications for the culvert are not suitable for the weight of machinery using the crossing, applicants must obtain advice from a drainage or bridge engineer and complete the works in accordance with their advice - applicants are responsible for ensuring the culvert does not collapse
- ensure that all work:
  - meets relevant [British Standards](#), that is culverts must be constructed using concrete pipes that comply with BS 5911 and BS EN 1916, pipework must be laid in accordance with BS 8000 - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance
  - complies with the [culvert design and operation guide \(C689\)](#)

Do not:

- place any resulting spoil on environmental, historic or archaeological features as identified on the FER, the Environmental Information Map or the HEFER

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the site during the different stages of construction or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed
- if required, advice from a drainage or bridge engineer

Before applying, applicants should contact the Environment Agency and flood defence consenting authority if required for advice and gain any consents or permissions needed. You do not need to provide this consent with your application, but you will need to submit this consent with your payment claim.

## Related Mid Tier items

This item can be used on the same area as [RP4 - Livestock and machinery hardcore tracks](#).

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

Consider location and alignment

- avoid active river areas, particularly meander bends
- avoid depositional areas
- make the crossing perpendicular to the river
- consider floodplain crossings
- reduce the risk of pollution (such as the release of fine sediments) to protected species and their habitats
- where necessary, minimise erosion by installing protection measures (such as stone pitching or slabs) downstream of the culvert and on the sides of the ditch

### Embedding and maintaining culverts

- pack a stone-free filling tightly at the sides of the pipe and at least 300mm above it
- build up the filling in layers up to 150mm thick, making sure it is thoroughly consolidated before adding the next layer
- follow the manufacturer's guidance on how deep to cover backfill
- leave the finished backfill surface so it is crowned above the surrounding levels

Consider using a concrete pad to stabilise the bridge or track over the culvert. Make sure the pad is at least 150mm thick, adding an extra 300mm if the total depth of fill cover over the pipes is less than its diameter.

Try using sloping earth ends as headwalls where appropriate, with the slopes no steeper than 1 in 5. There should be a 1m extension on either end of the culvert beyond the required width of expected traffic.

### Further information

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](#)

## **RP7: Sediment ponds and traps**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the sediment ponds and traps item.

### **How much will be paid**

£10 per square metre.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution from agriculture
- in conjunction with a Feasibility Study or a CSF commissioned design plan for ponds or traps over 25 square metres

Where this item cannot be used

- to collect dirty water, effluents and slurries
- on historic or archaeological features or areas of existing wildlife interest identified on the Farm Environment Record (FER), the Environmental Information Map or the HEFER
- where it will restrict the movement of migratory fish or eels
- without relevant advice or consents from the Environment Agency (EA), Local Planning Authority or flood defence consenting authority

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

A sediment pond or trap will provide an area where muddy run-off from fields or tracks is allowed to pond so sediment will settle out. This will help reduce the risk of sediment and other pollutants entering a nearby watercourse.

## Requirements

- ensure that all work meets relevant [British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance

### **For sediment ponds or traps (less than 25 square metres)**

- excavate to an appropriate depth, creating gently sloping banks
- spread any excess soil thinly across the land, away from the excavated pond area

For larger sediment ponds or traps (greater than 25 square metres):

- follow the requirements set out in the [Feasibility Study \(PA2\)](#) or CSF design plan (Water-Holding Feature Management Plan).

Do not:

- place spoil on any historic or archaeological feature or wildlife area identified on the FER, the Environmental Information Map or the HEFER

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- a copy of the Feasibility Study or CSF design plan (Water-Holding Feature Management Plan) for ponds or traps over 25 square metres
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the site during the different stages of construction or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works



- photographs of the completed works in place and installed

Before applying, applicants must seek advice from the Environment Agency, Local Planning Authority and where relevant the Internal Drainage Board to check if consent is required to carry out the planned work. You do not need to provide this consent with your application, but you will need to submit this consent with your payment claim.

## **Related Mid Tier items**

This item can be used on the same area as the following options and items:

- [SW1 - 4m to 6m buffer strip on cultivated land](#)
- [SW2 - 4m to 6m buffer strip on intensive grassland](#)
- [SW4 - 12m to 24m watercourse buffer strip on cultivated land](#)
- [SW7 - Arable reversion to grassland with low fertiliser input](#)
- [SW8 - Management of intensive grassland adjacent to a watercourse](#)
- [SW11 - Riparian management strip](#)
- [WD3 - Woodland edges on arable land](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

## **Using this item with other measures**

This item should be used with other farm measures to reduce surface runoff and water pollution. Good soil management will encourage the filtration of surface water and minimise runoff. This will reduce the need for sediment ponds on the farm.

## **How to construct barriers**

The CSF design plan (Water-Holding Feature Management Plan) may provide site-specific information, including where to place barriers and how to construct them.

## **Creating multiple ponds or traps**

It is likely that several ponds or traps will be needed for successful reduction of sediment loads to the watercourse.

## **Checking ponds and traps for silt**

Sediment ponds and traps can collect a considerable amount of silt and need to be regularly checked and de-silted.

## **Further information**

The management of water on the land can be improved by using [rural sustainable drainage systems](#).

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](#).

## **RP8: Constructed wetlands for the treatment of pollution**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the constructed wetlands for the treatment of pollution item.

### **How much will be paid**

50% of costs.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Higher Tier

Only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution from agriculture
- to treat field and farmyard diffuse runoff
- in conjunction with a Feasibility Study or a Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) commissioned design plan

### **Where this item cannot be used**

- to treat slurry, silage liquor, heavily fouled water, or concentrated pesticide spills and washings (as defined as such under the Nitrate Action Plan Regulations, Slurry Silage and Agricultural Fuel Oil Regulations or Health and Safety Executive)
- on historic or archaeological features identified in the HEFER
- without relevant advice or consents from the Environment Agency (EA), or Internal Drainage Board

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

It will create and maintain a wetland features to treat lightly fouled or polluted water, generated from normal agricultural activities. This will help reduce the risk of sediment and other pollutants entering a nearby watercourse.

## Requirements

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- complete works according to the specification set out in the Implementation Plan or Feasibility Study and as agreed with a Natural England adviser
- follow the instructions set in a management plan (agreed with a Natural England adviser) for constructing and maintaining the wetland area
- get 3 quotes for completion of the work

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely successful applicants will not be allowed to:

- place spoil on any environmental, historic or archaeological feature

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- photographs of site before works start
- a copy of the Feasibility Study or CSF design plan (Water-Holding Feature Management Plan)
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is not available
- photographs of the site during the different stages of construction or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed

Before applying, applicants must seek advice from the Environment Agency, Local Planning Authority and where relevant the Internal Drainage Board to check if consent is required to carry out the planned work. You do

not need to provide this consent with your application, but you will need to submit this consent with your payment claim.

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- the 3 quotes for completion of the work

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

### **Specification**

A detailed specification will be produced, tailored to the site. A likely design would be a treatment structure built in at least 3 stages.

Stage 1 - The first stage is to create an open pond to act as a sediment trap without much wildlife value. The pond should be accessible to farm machinery for routine maintenance.

Stage 2 - The second stage should have some planting to encourage settlement and remove nutrients.

Stage 3 - The third stage should be a shallow wetland that is heavily vegetated to reduce pollutants in the water such as:

- nitrates or ammonia
- biological oxygen demand (BOD)
- faecal indicator organisms (FIOs)

Throughout each stage:

- restrict livestock access to reduce the risk of eroding or degrading the treatment area
- build on a non-permeable substrate (made up of 20% clay) or line the area so that there is a permanent pool of water for most of the year
- avoid building on sandy, gravelly and excessively wet soil in order to prevent contact with groundwater before treatment
- build gentle slopes with a gradient of no more than 1 in 4, the edges should provide good wildlife habitat and act as a safety feature

- make sure the pond edges are undulated to provide more edge habitat
- make sure outlet pipes are larger than inlet pipes to prevent water backing up along the system
- obtain a waste exemption if excavated material is to be removed (this information should be included in the agreed management plan)

### Manage outfall

- ensure any outfall of water is of high enough quality before it is discharged into the local watercourse

Applicants will need to agree acceptable water quality standard with EA before directing any outfall.

### **Further information**

CSF operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. Find out more about [CSF support](#).

Read the [constructed wetland user guide](#) produced by the Wildfowl and Wetland Trust for further help carrying out this option.

## **RP9: Earth banks and soil bunds**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the earth banks and soil bunds item.

### **How much will be paid**

£155 for each unit (100m of bund).

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution from agriculture or to help address flood risk
- on sites identified in either a Feasibility Study, an Implementation Plan or a CSF commissioned design plan

Where this item cannot be used

- on historic or archaeological features or areas of wildlife value as identified on the Farm Environment Record (FER), the Environmental Information Map or the HEFER
- without relevant advice or consents from the Environment Agency (EA), or Local Planning Authority, or Internal Drainage Board

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

An earth bank or soil bund can be used to:

- slow the movement of water, protecting streams and rivers from pollutants
- slow flows during high rainfall and reduce downstream flooding
- control water levels to aid raised water levels for habitat creation and restoration

## Requirements

- complete the construction as set out in the Feasibility Study, Implementation Plan or CSF design plan (Water-Holding Feature Management Plan)

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- a copy of the Feasibility Study or CSF design plan (Water-Holding Feature Management Plan)
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the site during the different stages of construction or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed

Before applying, applicants must seek advice from the Environment Agency, and where relevant the Internal Drainage Board to check if consent is required to carry out the planned work. you do not need to provide this consent with your application, but you will need to submit this consent with your payment claim.

Related Mid Tier options and items

This item can be used on the same area as the following options and items:

- [RP7 - Sediment ponds and traps](#)
- [RP11 - Swales](#)



- [SW1 - 4m to 6m buffer strip on cultivated land](#)
- [SW2 - 4m to 6m buffer strip on intensive grassland](#)
- [SW3 - In-field grass strips](#)
- [SW7 - Arable reversion to grassland with low fertiliser input](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

### Pick a location

Position bunds or banks on land that can support damp, vegetated habitat. Ideally on:

- tracks
- small, lightly contaminated yards
- hard standing
- the bottom of slopes

This item also works on grassland and arable fields, as single entities or to support buffer strips.

### Design and construction

Details of the design and construction of the earth bank or soil bund will be in the management plan. Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- form infiltration basins into 'V', 'U' or 'C' shapes
- measure bunds in a continuous length of 100m per unit with up to a 250m<sup>2</sup> runoff store
- dig down 0.8m in depth
- grade side slopes to no more than 1 in 3
- ensure half the stored water can empty within 24 hours
- flatten the soil when damp to strengthen the structure
- plant grass species in banks that can withstand wet and dry conditions
- establish vegetation on the basin floor to reduce clogging

- build bay silt traps where soil erosion is high to stop the basin from clogging
- regularly remove excess sediment from banks and bunds, reapplying it back to the field (contact the Environment Agency to check if a waste exemption is required)

## **To enhance buffer strips**

- place soil bunds at the field edge of buffer strips, to slow runoff
- build bunds 300mm to 500mm high by 600mm to 1000mm wide
- place larger bunds where complex field slopes divert runoff to pinch points

## **Establishing soil bunds**

Compact down soil bunds and then sow a seed mixture at a rate of 24g/m<sup>2</sup>. Form the seed mix from grass, legumes and wildflowers, e.g.:

- creeping red fescue (70%)
- smooth meadow-grass (20%)
- creeping bent (10%)

## **Building weirs and outlets**

Weirs and outlets can be built into the design as they can discharge more water than pipes and are less likely to block up.

The water should be directed on to stones or boulders to slow flow for piped overflows, or weirs in ditches and ponds.

## **Further information**

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](#).

## **RP10: Silt filtration dams or seepage barriers**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the silt filtration dams or seepage barriers item.

### **How much will be paid**

£75 per unit.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only:

- in ditches in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution from agriculture and for the reduction of flood risk
- in conjunction with a Feasibility Study, an Implementation Plan or a Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) commissioned design plan agreed with Natural England

Where this item cannot be used

- on historic or archaeological features or areas of existing wildlife interest identified on the Farm Environment Record (FER), the Environmental Information Map or the HEFER
- where it will restrict the movement of migratory fish or eels
- without relevant advice or consents from the Environment Agency (EA) or Internal Drainage Board

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

Silt filtration barriers and seepage barriers will slow the movement of water in ditches, to allow pollutants to settle out. This will help improve water quality and may reduce downstream flooding.

## Requirements

Complete the constructions as set out in the approved Feasibility Study, Implementation Plan or CSF design plan (Water-Holding Feature Management Plan).

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- a copy of the Feasibility Study, Implementation Plan or CSF design plan (Water-Holding Feature Management Plan)
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Before applying, applicants must seek advice from EA and where relevant the Internal Drainage Board to check if consent is required to carry out the planned work. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit consents or permissions with your payment claim. Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- written support from a CSF officer

Related Mid Tier items

This item can be used on the same area as the following item:

- [RP11 - Swales](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

The Feasibility Study, Implementation Plan or CSF design plan should include site-specific guidance for locating and constructing the barriers. However, it is likely that several barriers will be required for successful slowing of flows throughout the length of the water course.

### **Design and construction**

The design of the structure and the materials used will depend on the conditions set out in the plan. A range of materials could be used which include:

- timber piling or horizontal planks (with gaps between the boards to allow water flow)
- stone filled gabions
- recycled plastic drainage material, for example Aquadyne
- willow stakes and woven branches for a more natural appearance
- dams that allow for overflows in the centre (this prevents scouring of the ends of the barrier or dam)

Using willow stakes will help anchor the structure, as they may grow. This style of construction may not last very long so allow time for repair or reconstruction during the agreement.

The main function of the barrier is to slow and filter water flow through ditches or temporary water-holding features, rather than dam and hold water. Other capital items are available to dam or hold water.

### **Remove trapped silt**

Trapped silt should be monitored and removed at least once a year. It must only be disposed of in areas that have been set out in the agreement. The maintenance must be done carefully and regularly to avoid polluting sensitive bodies of water downstream or sensitive habitats on land.

## **Use this item with other measures**

This item should be used as part of a package of measures to reduce surface water runoff and related water pollution problems on farm.

## **Further information**

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](#).

## **RP11: Swales**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the swales item.

### **How much will be paid**

£5.95 per square metre.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution from agriculture

Where this item cannot be used

- to collect dirty water, effluents, or slurries
- on historic or archaeological features or areas of existing wildlife interest identified on the Farm Environment Record (FER), the Environmental Information Map or the HEFER
- where it will restrict the movement of migratory fish or eels
- without relevant advice or consents from the Environment Agency (EA), or Local Planning Authority, or Internal Drainage Board

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

A swale (channel) will collect surface runoff water or lightly contaminated water from farmyards or tracks. The collected water is conveyed to a watercourse or stored to infiltrate into the ground.

This item will help to reduce runoff and risk of soil erosion and water pollution. Swales can also slow water flows during heavy rainfall and reduce downstream flooding.

### **Requirements**

- either follow the requirements set out in the Feasibility Study or CSF design plan (Water-Holding Feature Management Plan)

- or construct the swale as follows:
  - construct a channel along a contour or on a slope gradient of no more than 2 degrees
  - mark the layout of the swale on the ground
  - excavate the swale bed to a depth of 750mm
  - stockpile the topsoil separately, to use on the bed and side slopes of the swale
  - construct the side slopes with a gradient of no more than 1 in 3
  - excavate a further 150 to 250mm and place the topsoil on the bed
  - establish a dense grass sward on the bed and sides of the swale

Do not:

- place any excavated spoil on historic or archaeological features or areas of wildlife value identified on the FER, the Environmental Information Map or the HEFER

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- water holding feature Management plan, Feasibility or Implementation Plan(s) if required
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work



Before applying, applicants must seek advice from the Environment Agency, Local Planning Authority and where relevant the Internal Drainage Board to check if consent is required to carry out the planned work. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit consents or permissions with your payment claim.

## **Related Mid Tier options and items**

This item can be used on the same area as the following options and items:

- [RP10 - Silt filtration dams or seepage barriers](#)
- [RP12 - Check dams](#)
- [SW1 - 4m to 6m buffer strip on cultivated land](#)
- [SW2 - 4m to 6m buffer strip on intensive grassland](#)
- [SW4 - 12m to 24m watercourse buffer strip on cultivated land](#)
- [SW7 - Arable reversion to grassland with low fertiliser input](#)
- [SW8 - Management of intensive grassland adjacent to a watercourse](#)
- [SW11 - Riparian management strip](#)
- [WD3 - Woodland edges on arable land](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

### **Use this item with other measures**

This item should be used with other farm measures to reduce surface runoff and water pollution. Good soil management will encourage the filtration of surface water and minimise runoff.

### **Use check dams or silt barriers**

Capital items such as check dams or silt filtration barriers can be used in swales to help slow water flow and encourage infiltration.

## How to prepare a seed mixture

To establish the sward, for best results sow a seed mixture at a seed rate of 25g per square metre. The mixture should be a multi-species grass mix, such as creeping red fescue (70%), smooth meadow-grass (20%) and creeping bent (10%).

## Further information

The management of water on the land can be improved by using [rural sustainable drainage systems](#).

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](#).

## **RP12: Check dams**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the check dams item.

### **How much will be paid**

£42 for each dam.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution from agriculture
- in conjunction with a Feasibility Study or a Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) commissioned design plan

Where this item cannot be used

- where it will restrict the movement of migratory fish or eels
- without relevant advice or consents from the Environment Agency (EA) or Internal Drainage Board

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

Check dams will slow the movement of water in small natural streams and ditches. They will slow surface water, allowing sediment and other pollutants to settle out, helping to improve water quality and reduce downstream flooding.

### **Requirements**

- follow the requirements set out in the Feasibility Study or CSF Design Plan

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- a copy of the Feasibility Study or CSF design plan (Water-Holding Feature Management Plan)
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Mid Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the site during the different stages of construction or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed

Before applying, applicants must seek advice from the Environment Agency and where relevant the Internal Drainage Board to check if consent is required to carry out the planned work. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit consents or permissions with your payment claim.

## Related Mid Tier items

This item can be used on the same area as the following items:

- [RP11 - Swales](#)
- [SW1 - 4m to 6m buffer strip on cultivated land](#)
- [SW2 - 4m to 6m buffer strip on intensive grassland](#)
- [SW4 - 12m to 24m watercourse buffer strip on cultivated land](#)
- [SW7 - Arable reversion to grassland with low fertiliser input](#)
- [SW8 - Management of intensive grassland adjacent to a watercourse](#)
- [SW11 - Riparian management strip](#)

- [WD3 - Woodland edges on arable land](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

### **Use several dams**

It is likely that several dams will be needed to manage water flows successfully. On small streams, a series of multiple dams should be used that are between 5 to 7 times wider than the channel. This will prevent woody debris becoming dislodged during floods.

Check the dams for silt

The dam must be checked and de-silted regularly to prevent it collecting large amounts of silt.

### **Design and construction**

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- construct the dam from local soils with a high clay content, timber or stone, as appropriate to the local landscape
- excavate a trench 200 mm deep across the width of the swale
- build up the check dam using 100mm to 600mm grade broken stone, wooden boards, gabions or earth to a height of 500 to 750 mm above the floor of the swale
- build the check dam at the down slope end of the trench and leave the upslope end of the trench empty
- side slopes of the check dam must be a gradient 1 in 2
- check dams must be built into the sides of the swale to avoid water bypassing the structure
- at least 1m to 2m downstream must be protected to dissipate energy from the dam
- place an overflow in the centre of the dam to prevent any scouring of the ends of the dam

## Further information

The management of water on the land can be improved by using [rural sustainable drainage systems](#).

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See [guidance about CSF support](#) for further information.

## **RP13: Yard - underground drainage pipework**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the yard - underground drainage pipework item.

### **How much will be paid**

£5.50 per metre.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution from agriculture
- with support from a Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) officer

Where this item cannot be used

- on covered or indoor yards
- on environmental, historic or archaeological features identified on the Farm Environment Record (FER), the Environmental Information Map or the HEFER
- without relevant advice, consents or permissions from the Environment Agency (EA), or Local Planning Authority

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

This item will improve existing outdoor yards to reduce the risk of runoff and water pollution.

### **Requirements**

- install 100mm or 150mm (internal diameter) drains
- excavate trenches that are at least the width of the pipe's outside diameter plus 300mm
- lay pipes on clay or sand that is at least 100mm thick

- to avoid settlement of solids or semi-solid material in dirty water drains, lay pipes to a fall of:
  - no less than 1 in 60 for 100mm internal diameter pipes
  - no less than 1 in 100 for 150mm internal diameter pipes
- place inspection pits at no more than 90m apart in straight lines
- use only uPVC pipes with sealed joints, and jointed according to the manufacturer's instructions
- when the pipe is laid, backfill to at least:
  - 600mm in areas without traffic
  - 900mm in areas with traffic
- use compacted excavated material such as smooth stone, clay or sandy soil for backfill and remove any surplus
- where it is not possible to backfill to 600mm or 900mm in areas with traffic then the pipes must be wrapped in plastic sheeting and encased in at least 150mm of concrete
- ensure that all work meets relevant [British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the site during the different stages of construction or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed



Before applying, applicants must seek advice from the EA and Local Planning Authority to check if consent is required to carry out the planned work. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit consents/permissions with your payment claim. Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- written support from a CSF officer

## **Related Mid Tier items**

This item can be used on the same area as the following items:

- [RP5 - Cross drains](#)
- [RP14 - Yard inspection pit](#)
- [RP15 - Concrete yard renewal](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

The existing uncovered yards should be made from:

- concrete
- hard core
- tarmac
- bare earth

## **Further information**

The Rivers Trust has further guidance on [dirty water separation](#).

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](#).

## **RP14: Yard inspection pit**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the yard inspection pit item.

### **How much will be paid**

£200 per unit.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution from agriculture
- with support from a Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) officer

Where this item cannot be used

- on covered or indoor yards
- without relevant advice or consents from the Environment Agency (EA)

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

This item will improve existing outdoor yards to reduce the risk of runoff and water pollution.

### **Requirements**

- ensure that all work meets relevant [British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance
- build an inspection pit or a catch pit:
  - make sure the internal area of the pit is at least 0.36 square metres
  - make sure the pit opening is at least 600mm in diameter

- build the pit onto a concrete base that is at least 250mm thick, with block walls rendered internally and externally
- construct the pit walls with:
  - solid concrete blocks at least 200mm thick
  - engineering brickwork at least 200mm thick
  - proprietary precast reinforced concrete
  - proprietary plastic or uPVC liner with a concrete surround at least 150mm thick
- make sure block walls are rendered internally and externally
- install all proprietary items according to the manufacturer's instructions to support the weight of traffic going over it
- design the cover and frame to carry a load appropriate to its situation, e.g. in high traffic areas this must be at least 10 kilo newtons per square metre
- embed the cover and frame securely so it is level with or is below the surrounding surface
- build at least 10m from a slurry or silage store if this item has an open grating

#### Inspection pits:

- the inspection pit channel must be benched half round, equal in diameter to the largest inlet pipe and extending the full length of the pit
- the side connections must discharge in the direction of flow of the main channel

#### Catch pits:

- install a pluggable catch pit and sump (at least 450mm deep with a submersible pump) at the point where clean drainage water leaves the yard
- monitor the drainage water for contaminants

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work

- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Mid Tier manual for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the site during the different stages of construction or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed

Before applying, applicants must seek advice from EA to check if consent is required to carry out the planned work. Consent may be required if the works are designed to transfer slurry or silage effluent and need to meet water resources control of water pollution regulations. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit consents or permissions with your payment claim. Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- written support from a CSF officer

## **Related Mid Tier items**

This item can be used on the same area as the following items:

- [RP5 - Cross drains](#)
- [RP13 - Yard - underground drainage pipework](#)
- [RP15 - Concrete yard renewal](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

The existing uncovered yards should be made from:

- concrete
- hard core

- tarmac
- bare earth

More detailed information about using this item is available through CSF. Applicants may also be able to request an infrastructure audit, slurry and manure handling plan, or pesticide handling or washdown facilities design plan.

## **Further information**

The Rivers Trust has further guidance on [dirty water separation](#).

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See [guidance about CSF support](#) for further information.

## **RP15: Concrete yard renewal**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the concrete yard renewal item.

### **How much will be paid**

£27.14 per square metre.

### **Where to use this item**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution from agriculture
- with support from a Catchment Sensitive Farming officer

### **Where this item cannot be used**

- On covered or indoor yards
- Manure, silage or slurry stores
- Areas housing livestock
- On environmental, historic or archaeological features identified on the Farm Environment Record (FER), the Environmental Information Map or the Historic Environment Farm Environmental Record (HEFER)
- Without relevant advice or permission from the Local Planning Authority

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

It improves or upgrades existing outdoor (uncovered) yard drainage to reduce foul drainage volumes, runoff and risk of water pollution.

### **Requirements**

You must:

- construct an upgraded concrete base to manage yard run-off, whilst not increasing the risk of silage or manure effluent loss

- construct the base with concrete (a minimum of 150 millimetres (mm) thick) on compacted and blinded hardcore that is at least 150mm thick
- reinforce the concrete base to minimise cracking and distribute the loads exerted by livestock or farm vehicles
- lay the concrete in bays and treat all joints with sealant that is resistant to effluent damage
- only fully load the concrete when it achieves its design strength (equivalent to 28 day strength)
- make sure that all work meets relevant [British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance

Do not:

- roof over (even at your own expense) an outside yard receiving aid through this item

### **Keeping records**

Before you apply, you must check with the Local Planning Authority to see if you need consent to carry out the planned work.

You must send the following with your application:

- written support from a CSF officer

You must keep the following records and supply them with your payment claim:

- any consents or permissions from the Local Planning Authority
- photographs of the site during the different stages of construction or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work (in addition to the ones stated above)
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start

Please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the relevant manual ([Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier](#)) for more details.

## Related Mid Tier items

You can use this item on the same area as the following items:

- [RP5 - Cross drains](#)
- [RP13 - Yard - underground drainage pipework](#)
- [RP14 - Yard inspection pit](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

You can use this item:

- in high traffic areas or in livestock movement and loafing areas
- on uncovered outdoor yards made of concrete, hardcore, tarmac or bare earth
- to reduce foul drainage volumes, runoff and risk of water pollution
- to help separate clean and dirty water

### Get more advice

More detailed information about using this item is available through Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF). You may also be able to request an infrastructure audit or a slurry and manure handling plan.

### Keep clean and dirty water separate

Do not let foul or dirty water contaminate clean water. Plan how to manage any additional runoff from the impermeable concrete area. You may need to restructure some clean and dirty drains, which may include adding:

- cross drains
- catchpits
- gulleys
- kerbs
- sleeping policemen



## Further information

The Rivers Trust has further guidance on [dirty water separation](#).

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](#).

See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **RP16: Rainwater goods**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the rainwater goods item.

### **How much will be paid**

£11.40 per metre.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution from agriculture

Where this item cannot be used

- for guttering and downpipes on proposed new buildings
- on covered or indoor yards

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

New guttering and downpipes (rainwater goods) will prevent the discharge of clean water on to fouled yard areas, which will help reduce risk of water pollution.

### **Requirements**

- install new guttering and downpipes on existing farm yard buildings
- direct clean water from rainwater goods into a clean water drain
- ensure that all work meets relevant [British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

## **Related Mid Tier items**

This item can be used on the same area as the following items:

- [RP13 - Yard - underground drainage pipework](#)
- [RP14 - Yard inspection pit](#)
- [RP15 - Concrete yard renewal](#)
- [RP17 - Storage tanks underground](#)
- [RP18 - Above ground tanks](#)
- [RP19 - First flush rainwater diverters and downpipe filters](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

## **Listed and historic buildings**

This item could be detrimental if used close to a historic farmstead or listed building. The nature and historic value of the existing surfaces should be taken into consideration. Get advice on whether listed building consent is needed.

## **Further information**

Read more on:

- [implementing a water management plan](#)

- [effective use of water on dairy farms](#)

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](#)

## **RP17: Storage tanks underground**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the storage tanks underground item.

### **How much will be paid**

£350 per cubic metre.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution from agriculture
- with support from a Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) officer

Where this item cannot be used

- without relevant advice or permission from the Local Planning Authority
- on historic or archaeological features

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

The underground storage tank will collect and contain rainwater and help to keep clean and dirty water separate. This will provide free clean water, which may be suitable to use for a number of tasks around the farm such as yard washing, instead of wasting potable water supplies.

### **Requirements**

- agree with a CSF officer where to install the tank and pump
- follow the manufacturer's instructions when installing the tank and pump
- use tanks made from either glass-reinforced plastic (GRP) or pre-cast concrete
- backfill with concrete to cover the tank and make good

- ensure that all work meets relevant [British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Before applying, applicants must seek advice from the Local Planning Authority to check if consent is required to carry out the planned work. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit consents or permissions with your payment claim. Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- written support from a CSF officer

## Related Mid Tier items

This item can be used on the same area as the following items:

- [RP16 - Rainwater goods](#)
- [RP18 - Above ground tanks](#)
- [RP19 - First flush rainwater diverters and downpipe filters](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

## **Installing the storage tank**

The work normally includes:

- installing the tank and pump
- a site excavation
- creating a hardstanding or concrete base for the tank
- installing connecting pipework

## **Water management**

Throughout the work make sure that foul or dirty water does not contaminate the clean water collected.

Applicants must also check if restrictions apply to using harvested rainwater in your supply chain. Contact the farm assurance scheme and purchasers of produce.

## **High water table**

These tanks are not suitable in ground with a high water table unless further structural work is undertaken to prevent such tanks from floating. Seek advice from the manufacturer.

## **Historic and archaeological features**

- get listed building consent if used close to a historic farmstead or listed building, as this option may have negative effects on it
- consider the effect of the option on the fabric and setting of the historic buildings, as well as the nature and historic value of the existing surfaces

## **Dirty water**

This item is not intended to be used for collecting dirty water, effluents and slurries.

Further information

Read more on:

- [implementing a water management plan](#)

- [effective use of water on dairy farms](#)

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](#) See the [Mid Tier manual](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.



## **RP18: Above ground tanks**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the above ground tanks item.

### **How much will be paid**

£100 per cubic metre.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution from agriculture
- with support from a Catchment Sensitive Farming officer

Where this item cannot be used

- without relevant advice or permission from the Local Planning Authority
- on historic or archaeological features

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

The above ground storage tank will collect and contain rainwater and help to keep clean and dirty water separate. This will provide free clean water, which may be suitable to use for a number of tasks around the farm such as yard washing, instead of wasting potable water supplies.

### **Requirements**

- agree with your CSF officer where to install the tank and pump
- install a new above-ground storage tank on hardstanding or concrete following the
- ensure that all work meets relevant [British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Before applying, applicants must seek advice from the Local Planning Authority to check if consent is required to carry out the planned work. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit consents/permissions with your payment claim. Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- written support from a CSF officer

## Related Mid Tier items

This item can be used on the same area as the following items:

- [RP15 - Concrete yard renewal](#)
- [RP16 - Rainwater goods](#)
- [RP17 - Storage tanks underground](#)
- [RP19 - First flush rainwater diverters and downpipe filters](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

## Installing the storage tank

There are no generic specifications for above-ground storage tanks since they are pre-made tanks supplied as fit for purpose, but the work normally includes:

- installing the tank and pump
- creating a hardstanding or concrete base for the tank
- installing connecting pipework

## Water management

Throughout the work make sure that foul or dirty water does not contaminate the clean water collected.

Applicants must also check if restrictions apply to using harvested rainwater in your supply chain. Contact the farm assurance scheme and purchasers of produce.

## Historic and archaeological features

- get listed building consent if used close to a historic farmstead or listed building, as this item may have negative effects on it
- consider the effect of the item on the fabric and setting of the historic buildings, as well as the nature and historic value of the existing surfaces

## Dirty water

This item is not intended to be used for collecting dirty water, effluents and slurries.

## Further information

Guidance on [implementing a water management plan](#).

Guidance about the [effective use of water on dairy farms](#).

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](#).

## **RP19: First flush rainwater diverters and downpipe filters**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the first flush rainwater diverters and downpipe filters item.

### **How much will be paid**

£125 per unit.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution from agriculture
- with a rainwater harvesting system
- with support from a Catchment Sensitive Farming officer

Where this item cannot be used

- without relevant advice or permission from the Local Planning Authority

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

It diverts and filters potentially contaminated roof water to keep leaves, debris and other contaminants out of diverters, clean water drains and water storage tanks. This will help provide clean water that can be used for a number of tasks around the farm such as yard washing, instead of wasting potable water supplies.

### **Requirements**

- install individual rainwater diverters and filters, wall-mounted diverters or stand-alone diverters (depending on the volumes to be treated) according to the manufacturer's guidelines

- make sure that contaminated water is not diverted to a clean water drain or discharged to ditches or watercourses
- ensure that all work meets relevant [British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Before applying, applicants must seek advice from the Local Planning Authority to check if consent is required to carry out the planned work. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit consents/permissions with your payment claim. Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- written support from a CSF officer

Related Mid Tier items

This item can be used on the same area as the following items:

- [RP16 - Rainwater goods](#)
- [RP17 - Storage tanks underground](#)
- [RP18 - Above ground tanks](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

### Improve water quality

- collect rainwater from roofs and buildings and use it for tasks around the farm such as yard washing - fitting a first flush rainwater diverter is critical to good quality water
- know that water diverters improve water quality, reduce tank maintenance and protect pumps by preventing the first flush of water, which may contain contaminants from the roof, from entering the tank
- use downpipe filters to keep leaves, debris and other contaminants out of diverters, clean water drains and water storage tanks - the work includes the supply and installation of downpipe filters

Agreement holders must also check if restrictions apply to using harvested rainwater in your supply chain. Contact the farm assurance scheme and purchasers of produce.

### Historic and archaeological features

- get listed building consent if used close to a historic farmstead or listed building, as this item may have negative effects on it
- consider the effect of the item on the fabric and setting of the historic buildings, as well as the nature and historic value of the existing surfaces

## Further information

Guidance on [implementing a water management plan](#).

Guidance about the [effective use of water on dairy farms](#).

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](#).

## **RP20: Relocation of sheep dips and pens**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the relocation of sheep dips and pens item.

### **How much will be paid**

£3,675 per unit.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution from agriculture
- with support from a Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) officer

Where this item cannot be used

- to build new, permanent sheep dips and holding pens on a farm where there are no existing dipping facilities
- to replace existing equipment in the same location
- without relevant advice or consents from the Environment Agency (EA) or Local Planning Authority

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

This item will install replacement sheep dips in new locations. Pollution from sheep dips can cause damage to people and aquatic wildlife. Relocating sheep dips can help reduce the risk of diffuse water pollution.

### **Requirements**

- install a new sheep dip bath and holding pens
- dip baths must be impermeable, have no drain outlet and must comply with the [Groundwater Protection Code](#)
- dip baths and drain pens must be installed at least:

- 10m from watercourses (including streams, ditches, land drains and wetlands)
- 30m from watercourses that drain into protected conservation sites (such as Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSIs))
- 50m from any spring, well or borehole
- meet relevant [British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance

Do not:

- install the dip baths and pens on a slope, or at the top of one, where there is a risk that spillage might drain to a watercourse, road or track

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of the existing site and dipping facilities before works start
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Before applying, applicants must seek advice from the EA and Local Planning Authority to check if consent is required to carry out the planned work. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit consents or permissions with your payment claim.

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- written support from a CSF officer

## Related Mid Tier items

This item can be used on the same area as the following items:



- [RP22 - Sheep dip drainage aprons and sumps](#)
- [RP23 - Installation of livestock drinking troughs \(in draining pens for freshly dipped sheep\)](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

How to get a permit to discharge sheep dip

Agreement holders will need an [environmental permit](#) to discharge sheep dip to land. A variation to an existing permit may also be required if the location of the discharge area has changed.

How to construct the dip baths

The most effective dip baths should:

- be circular or rectangular
- be of one-piece construction
- be UV-resistant if they are made of plastic
- have splash screens and lips, if needed, to prevent splashing
- have a roof to prevent clean water from yards, roofs or land running into them

More information is available on [designing dip baths](#)

## **How to construct the drain pens**

The most effective drain pens should:

- be large enough to hold sheep for at least 10 minutes after dipping
- have properly sealed floors and built-in slopes (allowing excess dip to drain back to the bath, rather than soaking into the ground, soil or a surface water drain)
- have concrete areas that are impermeable, with watertight sealed joints
- have a filter or trap to prevent dirt and dip draining back into the bath

## How to avoid polluting the water supply

The back-siphoning of dip during filling can lead to water pollution. Make sure the hose for filling the bath:

- is not submerged in the bath
- has a double check valve to prevent back-siphoning
- is not used for domestic water supply purposes

How to protect the historic environment

Agreement holders should avoid using this item:

- close to a historic farmstead or listed building (get advice on listed building consent)
- on sites of archaeological or historic importance as identified in the HEFER (get advice on Scheduled Monument consent from Historic England, before using this item on such sites) Agreement holders should also consider the character of the landscape when constructing new fencing lines. This particularly applies in designated landscapes or historic parkland.

Agreement holders must consult Natural England if intending to install the dip on an SSSI.

## Further information

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](#).

## **RP21: Relocation of sheep pens only**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the relocation of sheep pens only item.

### **How much will be paid**

£1,830 per unit.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution from agriculture
- with support from a Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) officer

This item can also be used to move a static holding pen used in conjunction with a mobile sheep dip.

Where this item cannot be used

- to build new, permanent sheep dip facilities on a farm where there are no existing dipping facilities
- to replace existing equipment in the same location
- without relevant advice or consents from the Environment Agency or Local Planning Authority

How this item will benefit the environment

This item will install new sheep dipping pens in new locations. Pollution from sheep dips can cause damage to people and aquatic wildlife. Relocating sheep pens can help reduce risk of diffuse water pollution.

Requirements

- new sheep holding pens must be installed at least:

- 10m from watercourses (including streams, ditches, land drains and wetlands)
- 30m from watercourses that drain into protected conservation sites (such as Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSIs))
- 50m from any spring, well or borehole
- install new pens and comply with the [Groundwater Protection Code](#)
- meet relevant [British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance

Do not:

- install the pens (or any dip baths) on a slope, or at the top of one, where there is a risk that spillage might drain to a watercourse, road or track

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of the existing site and current dipping facilities before works start
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Before applying, applicants must seek advice from the EA and Local Planning Authority to check if consent is required to carry out the planned work. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit consents/permissions with your payment claim. Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- written support from a CSF officer

Related Mid Tier items

This item can be used on the same area as the following items:

- [RP20 - Relocation of sheep dips and pens](#)
- [RP22 - Sheep dip drainage aprons and sumps](#)
- [RP23 - Installation of livestock drinking troughs \(in draining pens for freshly dipped sheep\)](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

### **How to get a permit to discharge sheep dip**

Agreement holders will need an [environmental permit](#) to discharge sheep dip to land. A variation to an existing permit may also be required if the location of the discharge area has changed.

### **How to construct the drain pens**

The most effective drain pens should:

- be large enough to hold sheep for at least 10 minutes after dipping
- have properly sealed floors and built-in slopes (allowing excess dip to drain back to the bath, rather than soaking into the ground, the soil or a surface water drain)
- have concrete areas that are impermeable, with watertight sealed joints
- have a filter or trap to prevent dirt and dip draining back into the bath

### **How to protect the historic environment**

This item should not be used:

- close to a historic farmstead or listed building (get advice on listed building consent)
- on sites of archaeological or historic importance as identified in the HEFER (get advice on Scheduled Monument consent from Historic England, before using this item on such sites)

Agreement holders should also consider the character of the landscape when constructing new fencing lines. This particularly applies in designated landscapes or historic parkland.

Agreement holders must consult Natural England if intending to install the dip on an SSSI.

## **Further information**

Follow this guidance when [designing dip baths](#).

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](#)

## **RP22: Sheep dip drainage aprons and sumps**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the sheep dip drainage aprons and sumps item.

### **How much will be paid**

£18.25 per square metre.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution from agriculture
- with support from a Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) officer

This item can be used to move a static holding pen used in conjunction with a mobile sheep dip.

Where this item cannot be used

- build new, permanent sheep dips facilities on a farm where there are no existing dipping facilities
- replace existing equipment in the same location
- without relevant advice or consents from the Environment Agency or Local Planning Authority

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

It will install a new sheep dip drainage apron and sump in new locations. Pollution from sheep dips can cause damage to people and aquatic wildlife. Relocating sheep dips and pens can help reduce risk of diffuse water pollution.

## Requirements

- design the drainage aprons to redirect drainage water from the pen area back to the dip bath
- the apron must be made of impermeable concrete
- design the residue sump to catch debris, such as wool and faeces, and prevent it from re-entering the dipping tank
- construct the sump of engineering brick walls set on a concrete base
- install a drainage apron and sump which complies with the [Groundwater Protection Code](#)
- meet relevant [British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of the existing site and current dipping facilities before works start
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Before applying, applicants must seek advice from the EA and Local Planning Authority to check if consent is required to carry out the planned work. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit consents/permissions with your payment claim. Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- for Mid Tier, written support from a CSF officer



## Related Mid Tier items

This item can be used on the same area as the following items:

- [RP21 - Relocation of sheep pens only](#)
- [RP23 - Installation of livestock drinking troughs \(in draining pens for freshly dipped sheep\)](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

### How to get a permit to discharge sheep dip

Agreement holders will need an [environmental permit](#) to discharge sheep dip to land. A variation to an existing permit may also be required if the location of the discharge area has changed.

### Where to install drain pens

New drain pens should be located at least:

- 10m from watercourses (including streams, ditches, land drains and wetlands)
- 30m from watercourses that drain into protected conservation sites (such as Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSIs))
- 50m from any spring, well or borehole

Dip baths and pens should not be installed on a slope, or at the top of one, where there is a risk that spillage might drain to a watercourse, road or track.

### How to get best results

Drain pens should preferably have a roof to prevent clean water from yards, roofs or land running into them.

### How to protect the historic environment

Agreement holders should avoid using this item:

- close to a historic farmstead or listed building (get advice on listed building consent)
- on sites of archaeological or historic importance as identified in the HEFER (get advice on Scheduled Monument consent from Historic England, before using this item on such sites)

Agreement holders should also consider the character of the landscape when constructing new fencing lines. This particularly applies in designated landscapes or historic parkland. Agreement holders must consult Natural England if intending to install the dip on an SSSI. How to construct the drain pens

The most effective drain pens should:

- be large enough to hold sheep for at least 10 minutes after dipping
- have properly sealed floors and built-in slopes (allowing excess dip to drain back to the bath, rather than soaking into the ground, the soil or a surface water drain)
- have concrete areas that are impermeable, with watertight sealed joints
- have a filter or trap to prevent dirt and dip draining back into the bath

## **Further information**

Follow this guidance when [designing dip baths](#)

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](#).

## **RP23: Installation of livestock drinking troughs (in draining pens for freshly dipped sheep)**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the installation of livestock drinking troughs (in draining pens for freshly dipped sheep) item.

### **How much will be paid**

£68 per unit.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution from agriculture
- with support from a Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) officer

This item can be used to move a static holding pen used in conjunction with a mobile sheep dip.

### **Where this item cannot be used**

- in conjunction with the installation of new permanent sheep dip and holding pens on a farm where there are no existing dipping facilities
- to replace existing equipment in the same location
- without relevant advice or consents from the Environment Agency or Local Planning Authority

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

This item will install new livestock drinking troughs in relocated sheep dip facilities. Pollution from sheep dips can cause damage to people and aquatic wildlife. Relocating sheep dips and pens can help reduce risk of diffuse water pollution.

## Requirements

- install the water trough on a level hard base in either the draining pen or a fenced area
- the trough must be made of galvanised steel, concrete, spray-moulded glass-reinforced cement (GRC) or polyethylene
- connect the trough to a water supply or supply water from a bowser (if using mains water supply, applicants must comply with the [Water Supply \(Water Fittings\) Regulations 1999](#))
- make sure that pipework is medium-density blue polyethylene (with an external diameter of at least 25mm)
- make sure all joints on the pipework are watertight and made of brass or plastic
- bury the pipework below cultivation depth, to at least 600mm, or as determined by the local water supplier
- meet relevant [British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of the existing site and current dipping facilities before works start
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Before applying, applicants must seek advice from the EA and Local Planning Authority to check if consent is required to carry out the planned work. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will

need to submit consents/permissions with your payment claim. Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- written support from a CSF officer

Related Mid Tier items

This item can be used on the same area as the following items:

- [RP20 - Relocation of sheep dips and pens](#)
- [RP21 - Relocation of sheep pens only](#)
- [RP22 - Sheep dip drainage aprons and sumps](#)
- [RP28 - Roofing \(sprayer washdown area, manure storage area, livestock gathering area, slurry stores, silage stores\)](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

### **Sheep dip, baths and pens**

For more details on installing dip baths and pens, and on discharging sheep dip, please refer to [RP20 - Relocation of sheep dips and pens](#), [RP21 - Relocation of sheep pens only](#) and [RP22 - Sheep dip drainage aprons and sumps](#).

### **How to protect the historic environment**

This item should not be used:

- close to a historic farmstead or listed building (get advice on listed building consent)
- on sites of archaeological or historic importance as identified in the HEFER (get advice on Scheduled Monument consent from Historic England, before using this item on such sites)

### **Further information**

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides

farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](#)

## **RP24: Lined biobed plus pesticide loading and washdown area**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the lined biobed plus pesticide loading and washdown area item.

### **How much will be paid**

£118 per square metre.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution from agriculture
- with support from a Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) officer

Where this item cannot be used

- within 10m of a watercourse
- within 50m of a spring, borehole or well
- within 250m of a borehole used to supply water for producing domestic food without prior agreement from the Environment Agency (EA)
- on historic or archaeological features or areas of wildlife value identified on the Farm Environmental Record (FER), the Environmental Information Map or the HEFER
- without relevant advice, consents or waste exemption from the Environment Agency (EA)

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

This item will contain and collect sprayer and applicator washings and degrade them in a biobed. This will help prevent pesticides from entering drains or water bodies, which will help reduce the risk of water pollution.

Requirements

- meet the requirements of the T32 waste exemption
- meet relevant [British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance

## Loading and washdown area

Install a concrete bunded loading area, holding tanks, and fixed pumps and pipes to remove washings from the tank, as follows:

- remove topsoil and excavate an area for the washdown area and tank
- remove or divert any field drains that cross the site
- cover the site with 140mm to 160mm of well compacted hardcore and at least 25mm of sand blinding
- lay a damp-proof membrane weighing at least 1200g
- lay a reinforced concrete slab at least 150mm thick to falls of at least 1:100
- construct a concrete bund around the perimeter of the slab, making sure that all concrete joints are sealed with a proprietary sealant
- make sure the bund is at least 100mm high, so that it can contain liquids
- make sure the concrete bunded area is as wide as the sprayer plus 2m, and as long as the sprayer plus 1.5m
- make sure the bunded concrete slab contains a slotted-cover type drain connected to a silt trap with a removable cover that has a nominal capacity of 250mm below the inlet
- alternatively, lay the concrete so it is sloping 4 ways to a drain in the centre of the slab - the drain should have a silt trap within it
- direct the drain containing the silt trap to a tank or chamber (no larger than 1500 litres) from which pesticide washings can be pumped and disposed of
- make sure the holding tank is made from seamless polyethylene, glass-reinforced plastic (GRP) or pre-cast concrete
- make sure the holding tank is sized according to local rainfall and the area of concrete (if there is no roof or cover)
- make sure the whole structure is impermeable

## Biobed

To construct a below-ground biobed:



- excavate an area for the biobed
- remove and block off any field drains
- compact the sides of the earth bank to a slope of 30 to 35 degrees (about 1 in 1.5) towards the base
- lay an impermeable synthetic liner at least 1.2mm thick (pesticide grade) on top of a geotextile membrane underlay (190g per square m) and 25mm of sand blinding

To construct an above-ground biobed:

- use pre-cast or reinforced concrete and a 1.2mm thick liner, or an impermeable pesticide grade container
- follow the liner manufacturer's installation instructions

Any necessary holding tanks, pumps and pipes must then be installed for the below or above-ground biobed.

How to install a biobed outlet

To construct a biobed outlet (except for evaporation systems):

- either insert a drain through the liner to create a 100mm bonded outlet at the lowest point of excavation
- alternatively:
- create an internal sump when digging the biobed pit
- lay the liner to incorporate the sump
- make sure the liner is not perforated
- insert a central, permeable, vertical access tube (0.5m in diameter) to allow water to flow into the sump base
- install a pump within the tube, operated by a float switch setting
- place a ring of perforated drainage pipe into the base of the biobed on top of the liner to assist the pump flow
- install pumps to carry the treated discharge from the biobed to a vegetated area for irrigation; or pump it to a storage tank for irrigation or re-use

How to prepare the biomix

- mix one part peat-free compost, one part topsoil and 2 parts straw (wheat or barley) by volume
- allow the biomix to compost for 30 to 90 days before using it to fill the biobed to an effective depth of 1m, topping it up if there is any settlement
- use at least 1 cubic m of biomix for every 1000 litres of liquid treated in any 12 month period
- turf over the biomix (except for evaporation systems)
- lay perforated pipes to distribute pesticide washings across the surface

The biobed does not need a cover or roof, unless it is an evaporation system.

How to use evaporation systems (biobeds designed to work by evaporation)

- cover the biobed with roof sheeting, using side ventilation to allow evaporation to occur without rainfall entering the system
- prepare the biomix as detailed for a non-evaporation system, but with a 50:50 ratio of soil and straw, and without turving over it
- base the treatment volumes on evaporation calculations
- get advice on design and volume calculations from specialists with experience in these systems

Offset biobeds

- collect pesticide washings from an existing pesticide loading and washdown area in a storage tank
- pump them for treatment in the offset biobed

Drive-over biobeds

- construct a bunded drive-over grid above the biobed, with supporting foundations
- make sure the grid and its foundations are suitable for the loading of any equipment driven over the grid

Do not treat more than 15,000 litres of pesticide washings (excluding rainfall) in any 12 month period.

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- documents associated with the [exemption for the treatment of waste in a biobed or biofilter](#) (exemption T32), issued by the EA
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the site during the different stages of construction or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed

Before applying, applicants must seek advice from the EA and obtain any consent that may be required to carry out the planned work. Applicants must check whether they are in a [Groundwater Source Protection Zone 1 area](#). You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit consents or permissions with your payment claim. Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- written support from a CSF officer

## Related Mid Tier item

This item can be used on the same area as [RP28 - Roofing \(sprayer washdown area, manure storage area, livestock gathering area, slurry stores, silage stores\)](#).

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

## How to get further design advice

[Further design advice](#) is available on how to size the loading and washdown area and holding tanks, and on pesticide washing volume calculations, from [Catchment Sensitive Farming](#) and in the Biobed Manual on the [Voluntary Initiative](#) website. Payment rate is £118 per square metre of the bunded area.

## How to choose a location

The biobed should be constructed in an area set aside for pesticide loading and washing operations, and where there is no other traffic.

It can be constructed on the same area as the following features, even though they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme:

- farmyards
- areas of land, or farm buildings, not used for production

## How to maintain the biobed

Add fresh, pre-composted biomix to the biobed every year to maintain 1m depth. Replace the biomix every 5 years. A [U10](#) or [U11 exemption](#) for spreading waste will be required to spread the biomix to land. Hazardous waste must not be treated in the biobed or biofilter.

What to do with pesticide washings

The pesticide washings from the loading and washdown area collected in the holding tank should be pumped before the tank reaches capacity using a pump float switch. Transfer the washings to the biobed for treatment.

## How to main the slab, bund and pumps

Inspect the concrete slab and bund regularly and repair any damage or deterioration. The pumps will also need to be checked regularly to make sure they are operating properly.

Also ensure that:

- the area is not used for any purpose other than pesticide handling operations

- the concrete is not damaged so that the area becomes impermeable
- the storage tank does not overflow

## **Further information**

More information about pesticide handling areas and biobeds, including sizing and volume calculations, is available from the [Voluntary Initiative](#).

[Catchment Sensitive Farming](#) (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. CSF provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](#)

## **RP25: Lined biobed with existing washdown area**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the lined biobed with existing washdown area item.

### **How much will be paid**

£77 per square metre.

### **Where the item is available**

Where to use this item

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution from agriculture
- with support from a Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) officer

Where this item cannot be used

- within 10m of a watercourse
- within 50m of a spring, borehole or well
- within 250m of a borehole used to supply water for producing domestic food without prior agreement from the Environment Agency (EA)
- on historic or archaeological features or areas of wildlife value identified on the Farm Environment Record (FER), the Environmental Information Map or the HEFER
- without relevant advice, consents or waste management licence from the Environment Agency (EA)

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

A lined biobed will treat the pesticide residues that arise from pesticide handling activities. This will help prevent pesticides from entering drains or water bodies, which will help reduce the risk of water pollution.

## Requirements

- meet relevant [British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance
- meet the requirements of the T32 waste exemption

## Biobed

Follow the requirements as set out in [RP24 – Lined biobed plus pesticide loading and washdown area](#) under Biobed.

Do not treat more than 15,000 litres of pesticide washings (excluding rainfall) in any 12 month period.

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- documents associated with the [exemption for the treatment of waste in a biobed or biofilter](#) (exemption T32), issued by the EA
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the site during the different stages of construction or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed

Before applying, applicants must seek advice from the EA and obtain any consent that may be required to carry out the planned work. Applicants must check whether they are in a [Groundwater Source Protection Zone 1 area](#). You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will

need to submit consents/permissions with your payment claim. Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- written support from a CSF officer

## **Related Mid Tier items**

This item can be used on the same area as [RP27 - Sprayer or applicator load and washdown area](#).

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

How to choose a location

The biobed should be constructed in an area set aside for pesticide loading and washing operations, and where there is no other traffic.

It can be constructed on the same area as the following features, even though they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme:

- farmyards
- areas of land, or farm buildings, not used for production

## **How to maintain the biobed**

Add a fresh, pre-composted biomix to the biobed every year to maintain 1m depth. Replace the biomix every 5 years. A waste exemption [U10](#) will be required to spread the biomix. Hazardous waste must not be treated in the biobed or biofilter.

## **What to do with pesticide washings**

The pesticide washings collected in the holding tank should be pumped before the tank reaches capacity. Use a pump float switch to dispose of the washings (a T32 exemption will be required for this) or to transfer them to a biobed or biofilter for treatment.



## Further information

More information about pesticide handling areas and biobeds, including sizing and volume calculations, is available from the [Voluntary Initiative](#).

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](#)

## **RP26: Biofilters**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the biofilters item.

### **How much will be paid**

£990 per unit.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution from agriculture

Where this item cannot be used

- within 10m of a watercourse
- within 50m of a spring, borehole or well
- within 250m of a borehole used to supply water for producing domestic food without prior agreement from the Environment Agency (EA)
- on historic or archaeological features or areas of wildlife value identified on the Farm Environment Record (FER), the Environmental Information Map or the HEFER
- without relevant advice, consents or waste management licence from the Environment Agency (EA)

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

The biofilter will degrade pesticide residues that arise from pesticide handling activities. This will help prevent pesticides from entering drains or water bodies, which will help reduce the risk of water pollution.

### **Requirements**

Agreement holders will need to install a biofilter. This should be constructed either as set out in the approved Feasibility Study or

Implementation Plan, or as described below and which to meet the T32 exemption.

To construct a biofilter applicants must:

- use 3 new, chemical-resistant impermeable containers - these will typically be 1000 litre intermediate bulk containers (IBCs) stacked vertically
- store pesticide washings in additional containers next to the IBCs, either before or after treatment
- alternatively, pump the washings directly from an underground storage tank that collects washings from a pesticide handling area
- cut the tops off the IBCs, leaving the corners intact
- insert wire mesh lining in the base of each one
- cover the lining with a permeable membrane
- install a layer (at least 10cm) of pea gravel over the membrane so that the drainage outlet to the container below is not blocked
- make a biomix by mixing one part peat-free compost, 1 part topsoil and 2 parts straw (wheat or barley) by volume
- allow the biomix to compost for 30 to 90 days before filling the IBCs
- fill the IBCs with biomix, leaving a 10cm gap at the top for piping
- allow the biomix to settle, then top up to a volume of at least 0.5 cubic metres of biomix in each one
- stack the 3 IBCs vertically into a tower on a flat concrete base
- if the biofilter is not covered, replace the top of the uppermost container to prevent rainfall from getting in
- install pumps, pipes and a hose to pump washings from the initial storage tank to the top biofilter container and on to the biomix through a piped ring distribution system
- allow the washings to flow by gravity through the pipes to the containers below
- pump discharge from the bottom container to a storage tank, or for direct irrigation through a perforated hose on a vegetated area
- build a concrete bund at least 100mm high around the biofilter
- meet the requirements of the T32 waste exemption

- meet relevant [British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance

Do not treat more than 15,000 litres of pesticide washings (excluding rainfall) in any 12 month period.

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- documents associated with your [exemption for the treatment of waste in a biobed or biofilter](#) (exemption T32), issued by the EA
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the site during the different stages of construction or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed

Before applying, applicants must seek advice from the EA and obtain any consent that may be required to carry out the planned work. Applicants must check whether they are in a [Groundwater Source Protection Zone 1 area](#) with EA. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit consents/permissions with your payment claim.

## Related Mid Tier items

This item can be used on the same area as the following items:

- [RP27 - Sprayer or applicator load and washdown area](#)
- [RP28 - Roofing \(sprayer washdown area, manure storage area, livestock gathering area, slurry stores, silage stores\)](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

## **How to choose a location**

The biofilter should be situated where it can be used safely, for example:

- away from thoroughfares
- on a flat concrete base
- against a wall or other surface where it will be well-supported

The biofilter can be placed in a farmyard or building or under a roof. It can also be placed on areas of land, or farm buildings, that are not used for production. For best results, it should be located close to the pesticide handling and washdown area.

## **How to maintain the biofilter**

Fresh, pre-composted biomix should be added to the biofilter to maintain its depth. The biomix should remain moist, using irrigation if necessary. Care must be taken not to allow the container to overflow. The biomix should be replaced every 5 years. A [U10](#) or [U11](#) exemption for spreading waste will be required to spread the biomix. The biofilter should not be used to treat hazardous waste.

## **Further information**

More information about pesticide handling areas and biobeds, including sizing and volume calculations, is available from the [Voluntary Initiative](#)

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](#).

## **RP27: Sprayer or applicator load and washdown area**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the sprayer or applicator load and washdown area item.

### **How much will be paid**

£40 per square metre.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution from agriculture
- with support from a Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) officer

Where this item cannot be used

- within 10m of a watercourse
- within 50m of a spring, borehole or well
- within 250m of a borehole used to supply water for producing domestic food without relevant advice from the Environment Agency (EA)
- on historic or archaeological features or areas of wildlife value identified on the Farm Environmental Record (FER), the Environmental Information Map or the HEFER

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

This item will contain and collect washings from sprayers or applicators. These will then be degraded in a biofilter or biobed, which will help reduce the risk of water pollution.

## Requirements

- follow the requirements as set out in [RP24 – Lined biobed plus pesticide loading and washdown area](#) under Loading and washdown area
- meet relevant [British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the site during the different stages of construction or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed

Before applying, applicants must seek advice from the EA and obtain any consent that may be required to carry out the planned work. Applicants must check whether they are in a [Groundwater Source Protection Zone 1 area](#) with EA. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit consents or permissions with your payment claim. Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- written support from a CSF officer

## Related Mid Tier items

This item can be used on the same area as the following items:

- [RP26 - Biofilters](#)

- [RP28 - Roofing \(sprayer washdown area, manure storage area, livestock gathering area, slurry stores, silage stores\)](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

### How to get further design advice

[Further design advice](#) is available on how to size the loading and washdown area and holding tanks and on pesticide washing volume calculations, from [Catchment Sensitive Farming](#) and in the Biobed Manual on the [Voluntary Initiative](#) website.

### How to choose a location

The item should be constructed in an area set aside for pesticide loading and washing operations where there is no other traffic.

It can be constructed on the same area as the following features, even though they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme:

- farmyards
- areas of land, or farm buildings, not used for production

### What to do with pesticide washings

The pesticide washings collected in the holding tank should be pumped before the tank reaches capacity using a pump float switch. To dispose of the washings transfer them to a biobed or biofilter for treatment (a [T32 waste exemption](#) will be required for this). Alternatively, pesticide washings can be disposed of via a registered waste carrier to a suitably permitted disposal site or to a permitted area approved by the Environment Agency on the farm.

### How to main the slab, bund and pumps

The concrete slab and bund regularly and repair any damage or deterioration. The pumps will also need to be checked regularly to make sure they are operating properly.

Also ensure that:



- the area is not used for any purpose other than pesticide handling operations
- the concrete is not damaged so that the area becomes impermeable
- the storage tank does not overflow

## Further information

More information about pesticide handling areas, biobeds and biofilters, including sizing and volume calculations, is available from the [Voluntary Initiative](#).

[Catchment Sensitive Farming](#) (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](#).

## **RP28: Roofing (sprayer washdown area, manure storage area, livestock gathering area, slurry stores, silage stores)**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the roofing (sprayer washdown area, manure storage area, livestock gathering area, slurry stores, silage stores) item.

### **How much will be paid**

£62 per square metre.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution from agriculture
- with support from a Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) officer

This item can be used for roofing a sprayer washdown area but only where a bunded concrete pad is being used and all pesticide washings drain to a holding tank (sump), without an associated drive-over biobed.

### **Where this item cannot be used**

- to cover a livestock housing unit
- to cover a biobed
- to repair or replace existing roofing
- to cover concrete funded under [RP15 Concrete yard renewal](#) or concrete funded under a current Catchment Sensitive Farming agreement
- without relevant advice or consents from the Environment Agency or Local Planning Authority

## How this item will benefit the environment

This item will provide new roofing to reduce water pollution by preventing rainfall from getting into:

- sprayer washdown areas
- manure storage areas
- livestock gathering areas
- slurry and silage stores

## Requirements

- build a roof structure impermeable to rainwater
- install guttering and drains to direct roof water to a clean water drain
- make sure that drainage works meet any building and local authority requirements
- meet the requirements of the [silage, slurry and agricultural fuel oil \(SSAFO\) regulations 2010](#)
- meet relevant [British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Before applying, applicants must seek advice from:

- the Environment Agency to check what is required as new and significantly altered stores may have to meet the [silage, slurry and agricultural fuel oil \(SSAFO\) regulations 2010](#)
- the local planning authority, to check whether planning permission is required to carry out the planned works

You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit consents/permissions with your payment claim.

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- written support from a CSF officer

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

### **How to get more detailed advice**

Further design advice, such as an infrastructure audit, slurry and manure handling plan, or pesticide handling report, may be available from CSF.

### **How to separate clean and dirty water**

Foul or dirty water should not be permitted to contaminate clean waste. Plan how to manage any additional runoff from the impermeable roofed area. The restructuring of clean and dirty drains may be required, or additional works such as:

- cross drains
- catch pits
- gulleys
- kerbs
- sleeping policemen

### **Make sure channels and pipes meet the relevant regulations**

Any foul or dirty water (including slurry or manure residues), and any associated channels and pipes, should meet the SSAFO regulations. Channels and pipes should have a minimum design life of 20 years (with maintenance).

## What this item can be used to cover

This item should be used within existing yard areas that lie between or immediately adjacent to existing infrastructure.

This item can cover:

- manure stores (proof will be needed that a pollution problem exists)
- yards where animals are handled, feed, drink or exercise
- slurry and silage stores (make sure the existing floors, walls and effluent collection are not a pollution risk - contact the EA for advice)
- silage self-feeding sites

It can be used over pesticide sprayer or applicator loading and washdown areas, providing:

- the roof covers the bunded wash-down area and the drain to the holding tank
- there is a minimum 1m overhang on each side
- the bunded area is a minimum of the sprayer transport width (with the booms folded) plus 2m, and the sprayer length plus 1.5m
- the foundations and structural supports are secure and do not breach the bund, so that no pesticide washings can escape

Side walls and shades can also be built with the roof, though only at the applicant's own expense and as long as it does not breach any consents or permits.

## Further information

More information about separating clean and dirty water is available from the [Rivers Trust](#).

More information about pesticide handling areas and biobeds, including sizing and volume calculations, is available from the [Voluntary Initiative](#).

[Catchment Sensitive Farming \(CSF\)](#) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](#).

See the [Mid Tier manual](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **RP29: Self supporting covers for slurry stores**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the self supporting covers for slurry stores item.

### **How much will be paid**

£30.50 per square metre.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution from agriculture
- for roofing an existing above ground circular store
- with support from a Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) officer

Where this item cannot be used

- for existing square or rectangular slurry stores
- for floating covers
- to cover any structure other than a slurry store
- without relevant advice or consents from the Environment Agency (EA) or Local Planning Authority

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

This item will provide a self-supporting cover to an existing circular slurry store. This will stop rainwater from entering slurry stores and reduce the volume of dirty water that needs to be stored and spread.

### **Requirements**

- install a self-supporting cover with a minimum design life of 20 years (with maintenance)

- install a rainproof, self-supporting cover, supported above the slurry store and fastened by tensioners to the side of the tank
- make sure the tank is able to support the cover
- install the cover when the store is empty
- direct the rainwater away from the slurry store into a clean water drain or rainwater harvesting system
- display appropriate signs to warn of the dangers of confined spaces and fragile covers
- meet the requirements of the [SSAFO regulations 2010](#) and [Nitrate Vulnerable Zone \(NVZ\)](#) requirements
- meet relevant [British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Before applying, applicants must seek advice from:

- the Environment Agency, to check what is required as new and significantly altered stores may have to meet the [silage, slurry and agricultural fuel oil \(SSAFO\) regulations 2010](#)
- the local planning authority, to check whether planning permission is required to carry out the planned works

You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit consents/permissions with your payment claim.



Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- written support from a CSF officer

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

### **How to get more detailed advice**

[Further design advice](#) is available on how to size the loading and washdown area and holding tanks, and on pesticide washing volume calculations, from CSF.

### **Consult an engineer before using this item**

Before work is carried out, a structural or civil engineer must check that the existing store is able to support a cover. A specialist supplier or tank manufacturer should be consulted.

### **Further information**

More information about separating clean and dirty water is available from the [Rivers Trust](#).

More information on using covers on [circular slurry stores](#) is available.

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](#).

## **RP30: Floating covers for slurry stores and lagoons**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the floating covers for slurry stores and lagoons item.

### **How much will be paid**

£5.60 per square metre.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution from agriculture
- on existing slurry stores or lagoons

Where this item cannot be used

- without relevant advice or consents from the Environment Agency (EA) or Local Planning Authority

How this item will benefit the environment

A floating cover for slurry stores and lagoons will help to reduce the volume of dirty water that needs to be stored and spread.

### **Requirements**

- install a floating cover with a minimum design life of 5 years (with maintenance)
- install a rainproof floating cover on a slurry store or tank
- make sure the tanks or the lagoon's earth banks are able to support the cover and fastening implements
- install the cover when the store is empty

- direct the rainwater away from the cover into a clean water drain or rainwater harvesting system
- display signs to warn of the dangers of confined spaces and fragile covers
- secure the cover to avoid wind damage and to prevent rainwater running off and mixing with contaminated effluent
- place the cover on floats if needed
- meet the requirements of the [SSAFO regulations 2010](#) and [Nitrate Vulnerable Zone \(NVZ\)](#) requirements
- meet relevant [British Standards](#) - examine copies of the most up-to-date standards for guidance

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Before applying, applicants must seek advice from:

- the Environment Agency, to check what is required as new and significantly altered stores may have to meet the [silage, slurry and agricultural fuel oil \(SSAFO\) regulations 2010](#)
- the local planning authority, to check whether planning permission is required to carry out the planned works

You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit consents/permissions with your payment claim.

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

### **How to get more detailed advice**

[Further design advice](#) is available on how to size the loading and washdown area and holding tanks, and on pesticide washing volume calculations, from CSF.

### **Regulations for slurry stores**

The slurry stores should meet the SSAFO regulations which cover the design, construction and maintenance of the stores.

### **How to maintain the drains**

Drains should take rainwater from the cover, making sure it does not mix with effluent, and transport it to clean water ditches and drains. A pump may be needed to help transport the water.

### **Further information**

More information about separating clean and dirty water is available from the [Rivers Trust](#).

More information on using covers on [circular slurry stores](#) is available.

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](#).

## **RP31: Equipment to disrupt tramlines in arable areas**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the equipment to disrupt tramlines in arable areas item.

### **How much will be paid**

£1,500 per machine.

### **Where to use this item**

It is available for Higher Tier only:

- in areas targeted for the reduction of water pollution from agriculture
- on farms with crops or fields, identified as at risk of soil erosion in the Farm Environment Record (FER)
- to purchase one piece of equipment

You must have support from a Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) officer to use this item.

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

It will support the purchase of equipment that can loosen soil that has compacted in wheeled tramlines. This will help reduce surface runoff, risk of soil erosion damage and water pollution.

### **Requirements**

You must:

- purchase a spiked or rotary harrow, or tine device that can have a direct loosening effect on compacted soil in the wheeled tramline area.

Make sure the device is built to attach directly to one of the following:

- a tractor

- a sprayer being towed behind a tractor
- a self-propelled sprayer

### **Keeping records**

You must keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the purchased equipment
- a delivery note with serial number for the equipment

Please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the Higher Tier manual for more detail.

### **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

#### **Pick a location**

Areas most likely to benefit from this item include:

- fields that are connected to bodies of water at risk of failing water framework directive requirements due to diffuse water pollution from agriculture (DWPA)
- designated sites that are failing their condition assessment due to DWPA
- fields that are at risk of soil erosion:
  - as identified in the FER
  - where slopes are complex or are inclined at more than 3 degrees

Seek advice from an agronomist or farm adviser who holds a BASIS soil and water management certificate, or equivalent.

#### **Choose the right equipment**

Choose a device:

- that has a direct loosening effect on compacted soil within the wheeled tramline area, which will improve surface infiltration and increase surface roughness

- that creates diagonally offset holes ('pock marks') to infiltrate the topsoil to a depth of between 7.5 centimetres (cm) and 16.5cm

Where you select a rotary harrow, the wheel should be rimmed with spikes that are offset to each other and at a right angle to the direction of travel.

### **How to use the equipment**

The equipment should be used:

- with correctly inflated tyres to reduce tyre compaction within the tramline area
- when machinery passes over the soil for the first time or soon after, such as during the first spray operation

### **Use this item with other measures**

This item should be used with other measures that reduce soil erosion and water runoff. These items and options include:

- in-field grass areas
- double headlands to disconnect water pathways

### **Further information**

You can find more information on [sustainable soil husbandry and the identification of soil erosion issues](#) online .

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](#).

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **RP32: Small leaky woody dams**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the small leaky woody dams item.

### **How much will be paid**

£461.39 for each dam

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Higher Tier and woodland creation grant

Only:

- in catchments targeted for flood risk measures
- for dams in streams between 1m and 2.99m
- where approved by the Environment Agency or Lead Local Flood Authority

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

Leaky woody dams will slow the movement of water and help push flows onto the floodplain during floods. This will increase temporary storage of flood waters within water channels and out on to the floodplain, help delay the passage of flood water downstream, allow sediment to settle out, and reduce downstream flood risk.

### **Requirements**

Agreement holders will need to:

- follow the indicative drawings in the [Higher Tier manual Annex 2c](#) for maximum effectiveness
- construct the dam from logs large enough to span the water channel and out on to the floodplain to provide a stable and long-lasting structure
- secure the dam in line with the requirements of the Environment Agency or Lead Local Flood Authority



- align dams at right angles to channel banks to reduce bank scour
- build dams to allow low flows to pass unimpeded at all times
- site dams on slow flowing reaches of the water course that have on average 2m of floodplain on either side
- build dams to a height sufficient to encourage water to spread onto the floodplain upstream of the dam
- build dams in series (minimum 3 dams) at a spacing between dams of about 5 to 7 times the width of the channel
- make sure dams are not installed directly upstream of pinch points such as bridges or culverts that back up flows and are likely to swamp the dam
- check and maintain dams to keep the structure effective
- follow the requirements set out in any Feasibility Study or CSF Design Plan

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- a copy of the Feasibility Study or woodland management plan or CSF design plan (Water-Holding Feature Management Plan), where applicable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the site during the different stages of the construction or build
- contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed

Before applying, applicants must seek advice from the Environment Agency and where relevant the Lead Local Flood Authority to check if consent is required to carry out the planned work. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit consents or permissions with your payment claim.

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

Detailed design can vary and the siting of leaky woody dams in natural water courses will be dictated by local circumstances and availability of or easy access to import suitable materials to site. [Higher Tier manual Annex 2c](#) has details of indicative design of dams.

### **Check the dams for silt**

The dam will need to be checked and may need de-silted regularly to prevent it collecting large amounts of silt.

### **Further information**

The management of water on the land can be improved by using [rural sustainable drainage systems](#).

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for [further information on CSF](#) support.

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **RP33: Large leaky woody dams**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the large leaky woody dams item.

### **How much will be paid**

£764.42 for each dam

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Higher Tier and woodland creation grant

Only:

- in catchments targeted for flood risk measures
- for dams in streams and river channels between 3m and 5m
- where approved by the Environment Agency or Lead Local Flood Authority

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

Leaky woody dams will slow the movement of water and help push flows onto the floodplain during floods. This will increase temporary storage of flood waters within water channels and out on to the floodplain, help delay the passage of flood water downstream, allow sediment to settle out, and reduce downstream flood risk.

### **Requirements**

Agreement holders will need to:

- follow the indicative drawings in the [Higher Tier manual Annex 2c](#) for maximum effectiveness
- construct the dam from logs large enough to span the water channel and out on to the floodplain to provide a stable and long-lasting structure
- secure the dam in line with the requirements of the Environment Agency or Lead Local Flood Authority

- align dams at right angles to channel banks to reduce bank scour
- build dams to allow low flows to pass unimpeded at all times
- site dams on slow flowing reaches of the water course that have on average 2m of floodplain on either side
- build dams to a height sufficient to encourage water to spread onto the floodplain upstream of the dam
- build dams in series (minimum 3 dams) at a spacing between dams of about 5 to 7 times the width of the channel
- make sure dams are not installed directly upstream of pinch points such as bridges or culverts that back up flows and are likely to swamp the dam
- check and maintain dams to keep the structure effective
- follow the requirements set out in any Feasibility Study or CSF Design Plan

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of the existing site
- a copy of the Feasibility Study or woodland management plan or CSF design plan (Water-Holding Feature Management Plan), where applicable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the site during the different stages of the construction or build
- contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed

Before applying, applicants must seek advice from the Environment Agency and where relevant the Lead Local Flood Authority to check if consent is required to carry out the planned work. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit consents or permissions with your payment claim.

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

Detailed design can vary and the siting of leaky woody dams in natural water courses will be dictated by local circumstances and availability of or easy access to import suitable materials to site. [Higher Tier manual Annex 2c](#) has details of indicative design of dams.

### **Check the dams for silt**

The dam will need to be checked and may need de-silted regularly to prevent it collecting large amounts of silt.

### **Further information**

The management of water on the land can be improved by using [rural sustainable drainage systems](#).

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for [further information on CSF](#) support.

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## SB1: Scrub control and felling diseased trees

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the scrub control and felling diseased trees item.

### How much will be paid

Payment rates

Method of removal	Stem diameter	Percentage covered per ha	Payment per ha
Machine cut	Less than 7cm	Under 50%	£260
Machine cut	Less than 7cm	50% and over	£520
Machine cut	7cm and above	Under 50%	£520
Machine cut	7cm and above	50% and over	£1,040
Manual cut	Not applicable	Under 50%	£980

Method of removal	Stem diameter	Percentage covered per ha	Payment per ha
Manual cut	Not applicable	50% and over	£1,680

## Where to use this item

It is available for Higher Tier only:

- to control or manage scrub with the agreement of Natural England (NE) or the Forestry Commission (FC)
- to remove immature trees that could spread disease and that cannot be economically felled with the agreement of the FC

## How this item will benefit the environment

It will restore or maintain priority habitats and protect historic or archaeological features. It will prevent disease spreading from infected sites to the wider environment.

## Requirements

You must:

- when to carry out the work
- whether to cut by hand or machine
- what to do with stumps
- how to dispose of cut material
- how to control regrowth and injurious weeds
- how to fell all diseased trees within an agreed area
- to remove non-symptomatic trees to reduce the risk of disease (as agreed with the adviser)
- what biosecurity measures to use to avoid transferring disease to other sites

## Keeping records

You must get any relevant consents before you apply for this item. This may include:

- a felling licence from the Forestry Commission
- consent from NE to use the item on a Site of Special Scientific Interest (SSSI)
- consent from Historic England to use the item on a Scheduled Monument

You do not need to send the consents with your application, but you will need to send any that are required to with your payment claim.

You must keep the following records and supply them with your annual payment claim:

- photographs of the completed work
- a felling licence from the Forestry Commission

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- consent from NE to use the item on a Site of Special Scientific Interest (SSSI)
- consent from Historic England to use the item on a Scheduled Monument
- any consents or permissions connected with the work (in addition to the ones listed above)
- receipted invoices or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- records of when the scrub control was carried out
- a record of any pesticide or herbicide treatments, including dates and locations
- a woodland management plan indicating the need for scrub control, if the scrub control takes place in woodland - this does not apply to diseased trees
- an Implementation Plan or Feasibility Study, if applicable, setting out the need for scrub control
- photographs of the trees/scrub, before works start



Please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

## **Related items**

You can use this item on the same area as item [TE12 - Stump grinding](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### **Definitions of scrub, diseased trees and immature trees**

Scrub means any woody shrubs, including European gorse, bramble and young trees. It does not include dwarf or western gorse, so this item cannot be used to control those species.

To be eligible under this grant, diseased trees are defined as immature larch infected with *Phytophthora ramorum* subject to a Statutory Plant Health Notice (SPHN).

An immature tree is one that is up to 25 years old.

### **When to use this item**

With this item, cut scrub or trees manually or with a machine. Manual removal is carried out on foot, with a clearing saw or chainsaw, and machine cutting from a cab, by a tractor fitted with a flail.

This item can be used:

- if scrub is encroaching on to species-rich grassland
- around archaeological sites or historic features
- if species that depend on managed scrub are present, for example turtle dove and brown hairstreak
- within woodland to create permanent or temporary open areas

### **How to remove scrub**

To remove scrub:

- cut scrub to ground level
- don't disturb roots or leave protruding stems

- use item [TE12 - Stump grinding](#)
- keep the site free of scrub for the rest of the agreement

### **What to do with diseased trees**

If you have an SPHN for diseased trees, they must follow the guidance in the SPHN. If there isn't an SPHN, fell all infected trees in the contract area and follow the FC's biosecurity guidance.

### **Further information**

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **SB2: Scrub control - difficult sites**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the scrub control - difficult sites item.

### **How much will be paid**

Up to 80% of actual costs.

### **Where to use this item**

It is available for Higher Tier only on sites that either:

- need specialist operations or machinery, with costs that cannot be covered by the scheme's fixed-rate scrub control payments - this includes sensitive habitats and areas with difficult or hazardous working conditions, such as steep slopes, bogs and islands, or
- have it as a requirement of an approved Forestry Commission [woodland management plan](#)

### **Where this item cannot be used**

- To control dwarf and western gorse, as these are key parts of heathland
- To manage scrub by grazing

### **Requirements**

You must:

- send at least 3 written quotations for completing the work to Natural England or the Forestry Commission - quotes must identify associated costs
- carry out scrub control during the autumn and winter
- follow guidance on what to do with any stumps and how to dispose of cut material
- control re-growth

## Keeping records

You must send the following with your application:

- 3 quotes for completion of the work

You must keep the following records and supply them with your annual payment claim:

- receipted invoices or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of the completed work

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- records of when the scrub control was carried out
- a record of any pesticide or herbicide treatments, including dates and locations
- a Forestry Commission approved Woodland Management Plan or a Natural England approved implementation plan, if relevant
- photographs of site before works start
- item specification, if required

Please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### Management

Cut scrub to ground level. Don't disturb the roots or leave protruding stems.

For stump removal use the [TE12 - Stump grinding](#).

## Further information

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **SB3: Tree removal**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the tree removal item.

### **How much will be paid**

£144 per tree.

### **Where to use this item**

It is available for Higher Tier only if there is a net cost for the removal of timber, allowing for any timber sales.

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

It will support the removal of trees, helping to restore open habitats or prevent damage to environmental features.

### **Requirements**

You must agree a specification for the work with Natural England, including:

- the removal of trees in the agreed places and at the agreed times
- make sure that no trees are uprooted (or roots removed after felling) on historic or archaeological features
- the removal of felled trees from the site, leaving some wood stacked in the agreed areas

### **Keeping records**

Before you apply, contact the Forestry Commission to see if you need a [felling licence](#) or an [environmental impact assessment](#).

You must keep the following records and send them with your annual payment claim:

- photographs of the completed work

- a copy of the advice from the Forestry Commission

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of the trees to be removed

Please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail.

## **Further information**

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **SB4: Chemical bracken control**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the chemical bracken control item.

### **How much will be paid**

£170 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Higher Tier

Only with a land management option and where agreed with Natural England.

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

It is for chemically controlling bracken. This will restore or maintain high value natural habitats and their associated wildlife, protect archaeological features and help maintain or enhance the landscape's character.

### **Requirements**

Agreement holders will need to agree with Natural England a specification for the work, including:

- the use of asulam or glyphosate to control bracken, providing this is within the approval for the product at the time of application

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- copies of the Implementation Plan or Feasibility Study, if one exists



- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item

### **Bracken control**

If the application is successful one of two approaches will be followed depending on the size and complexity of the bracken problem. There is no fixed threshold, but Natural England will help with the choice.

### **Large sites**

On larger sites, particularly where major habitat restoration is involved, a Natural England approved Implementation Plan or Feasibility Study will be needed. This will include:

- areas to be controlled
- methods of control
- follow up treatments to control re-growth
- any risks to sites of archaeological or ecological importance, soil erosion risks or effects on the landscape (short and long term)

### **Small sites**

On smaller, less complex sites an Implementation Plan or Feasibility Study may not be needed. On such sites a simple plan may suffice, one that includes a map showing areas to be treated and dates of control.

## Environmental concerns

Make sure that the planned bracken control has a minimal negative effect on other environmental interests on the site. In general, chemical control causes less disturbance to archaeological sites, ground nesting birds and invertebrates than mechanical control. But it will kill other species of fern and may be more damaging to other plants around the site.

All herbicide applications (including aerial application) must follow the law and relevant codes of practice. [Natural England's bracken control guidelines](#) should also be followed.

Make sure any relevant consents are in place before carrying out the work. This includes [consent from the Environment Agency to spray near a watercourse](#).

If any areas are missed they will need to be sprayed in the following year.

## Site regeneration

As the site regenerates, control any bracken regrowth or weeds such as nettle, thistle, dock or ragwort. More effective bracken control may result if combined with appropriate grazing, where possible, due to the effects of trampling.

## Further information

Further information is available from:

- Symes, N. & Day, J. 2003. A practical guide to the restoration and management of lowland heathland, The RSPB, Sandy
- guidance on [habitat management for reptiles](#) from the ARC Trust
- Natural England's guide to [grazing management of lowland heathland](#)
- Natural England's guide to [protecting soils and the historic environment when restoring or re-creating lowland heathland](#)

## **SB5: Mechanical bracken control**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the mechanical bracken control item.

### **How much will be paid**

£169 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Higher Tier

Only with a land management option and where agreed with Natural England.

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

This item is for mechanically controlling bracken. This will restore or maintain high value natural habitats and their associated wildlife, protect archaeological features and help maintain or enhance the landscape's character.

### **Requirements**

Agreement holders will need to agree with Natural England a specification for the work.

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- copies of the implementation plan or feasibility study, if one exists

- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item

## **Bracken control**

If the application is successful one of two approaches will be followed depending on the size and complexity of the bracken problem. There is no fixed threshold, but Natural England will help with the choice.

## **Large sites**

On larger sites, particularly where major habitat restoration is involved, a Natural England approved Implementation Plan or Feasibility Study will be needed. This will include:

- areas to be controlled
- methods of control
- follow up treatments to control re-growth
- any risks to sites of archaeological or ecological importance, soil erosion risks or effects on the landscape (short and long term)

## **Small sites**

On smaller, less complex sites an Implementation Plan or Feasibility Study may not be needed. On such sites a simple plan may suffice, one that includes a map showing areas to be treated and dates of control.

## Environmental concerns

Make sure that the planned bracken control has a minimal negative effect on other environmental interests on the site. You should follow [Natural England's bracken control guidelines](#).

In general, mechanical control may cause more disturbance to archaeological sites, ground nesting birds and invertebrates than chemical control. During the nesting season make sure that birds are not nesting in the treated area.

## Frequency

The site should be treated twice in year 1 and this repeated for at least three years, depending on the level of success achieved.

## Site regeneration

As the site regenerates, control any bracken regrowth or weeds such as nettle, thistle, dock or ragwort. More effective bracken control may result if combined with appropriate grazing, where possible, due to the effects of trampling.

## Further information

Further information is available from:

- Symes, N. & Day, J. 2003. A practical guide to the restoration and management of lowland heathland, The RSPB, Sandy
- guidance on [habitat management for reptiles](#) from the ARC Trust

## SB6: Rhododendron control

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the rhododendron control item.

### How much will be paid

Slope of site	Rhododendron height	Payment
Level or gentle slope (0 to 11 degree incline)	Average height is less than 2.5m tall	£2,800 per hectare (ha)
Moderate slope (12 to 18 degree incline)	Between 2.5m to 4m tall	£3,200 per ha
Steep or very steep slope (19 degrees or more)	Average height is over 4m tall	£4,400 per ha

The higher rate will apply where the site is classed in 1 or more of these categories, for example if the site is on a steep slope with an average height of less than 2.5m.

### Where to use this item

Available for Higher Tier

### How this item will benefit the environment

It supports rhododendron control, reducing the negative effect this can have on a site.

Rhododendron reduces the biodiversity value of a site, hindering woodland regeneration and, once established, is difficult and costly to eradicate.

Rhododendron can also be a host for the fungus-like pathogen *Phytophthora ramorum*, which affects larch.

## Requirements

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- check the slope on the ground - it cannot be based solely on map contours
- destroy all rhododendron within the target area
- cut all live rhododendron material from the stump, allowing access for chemical spraying of any re-growth
- treat all stumps with a suitable herbicide on the day of being cut and in frost free and rain free conditions - rain should not be forecast for at least 6 hours
- dispose of cut material so that it allows access to stumps for chemical spraying of any re-growth
- control any injurious weed species, when the site regenerates, if there is a risk of spread to pasture land (used by grazing livestock or conserved for forage)
- chemically treat re-growth with a recommended herbicide - follow the manufacturer's guidance on application rates and safety requirements
- keep the operations in line with recommendations in the Forestry Commission practice guide [Managing and controlling invasive rhododendron](#)

## Removing infected rhododendron

When removing rhododendron infected with *Phytophthora ramorum* or *Phytophthora kernoviae*, agreement holders must:

- clean or disinfect clothing, equipment and vehicles according to advice given in the [Forestry Commission biosecurity guidance](#)
- use disinfectants that have gone through a Control of Substances Hazardous to Health (COSHH) safety assessment as well as an environmental assessment

## **Burning waste material**

Agreement holders may need to discuss whether to burn cut waste material with their local Forestry Commission or Natural England adviser. If told to burn it, agreement holders must:

- agree in advance where the burn site will be
- build bonfires far enough away from trees (at least 10m from the crown of any tree) to avoid damaging them
- make sure that burning sites and piles of wood are not on patches of ground where they could damage species-rich grassland, anthills or other ecological or archaeological features
- clean up the site as soon as possible after burning - burning on a metal sheet reduces damage to the soil and makes it easier to remove ash from the site

## **What the management plan needs to include**

When used on a woodland site the woodland management plan needs to both:

- identify rhododendron as being present
- identify rhododendron as posing a threat to successful management

These do not apply if rhododendron is being removed due to a tree health issue.

## **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- an approved woodland management plan (unless the rhododendron is infected by *Phytophthora ramorum*, *Phytophthora kernoviae* or within 3km of an Statutory Plant Health Notice and a management plan is not needed)
- any bank statements, receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- Forestry Commission Management Plan approval letter, if required



Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

### **Assess the slope class**

The payment rate depends on the slope of the site and height of the rhododendron.

Applicants can estimate the slope by eye but a clinometer will give a better assessment.

Contours on maps can give an indication of slope but applicants will need to check the slope on the ground.

Slope class	Type	Percentage incline (%)	Degree
1	Level	0 to 10	0 to 6
2	Gentle	11 to 20	7 to 11
3	Moderate	21 to 33	12 to 18
4	Steep	34 to 50	19 to 27

Slope class	Type	Percentage incline (%)	Degree
5	Very steep	over 51	over 28

## **SP1: Difficult sites supplement**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the difficult sites supplement.

### **How much is paid**

£62 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this supplement**

Available for Higher Tier

Only in combination with a land management option on whole parcels if either of these apply:

- where grazing management has been abandoned or is in danger of abandonment
- on parcels less than 1ha in area with stockproof traditional boundaries, including banks, hedges, walls or wet ditches (gateways must be less than 3.6m wide)

### **Where this supplement cannot be used**

With [UP3 - Management of moorland](#)

The Isles of Scilly

In the Isles of Scilly it can be used in combination with a land management option on whole parcels if any of these apply:

- on arable land up to and including 0.4ha in area
- on arable fields up to and including 5ha in area that are sub-divided into small bulb fields no bigger than 0.4ha, and are bounded by granite walls or salt tolerant shrub hedges ('fences')
- on pastoral fields up to and including 2ha in area

## How this supplement will benefit the environment

It supports the management of particularly difficult sites. It also retains small fields and their locally characteristic boundary pattern.

## Requirements

Agreement holders are likely to need to keep boundaries and, where required, reintroduce grazing.

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels
- confirmation that the eligibility requirements are met

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- map identifying access gateways - these can be marked on any map including the Farm Environment Record (FER)

The detailed requirements for this supplement will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

## Related supplements

This supplement can be located on the same area as the following supplements:

- [GS15 – Haymaking supplement](#)
- [GS16 – Rush infestation control supplement](#)
- [GS17 - Lenient grazing supplement](#)
- [SP2 - Raised water level supplement](#)
- [SP3 – Bracken control supplement](#)
- [SP4 – Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP9 – Threatened species supplement](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this supplement

The following section gives advice on carrying out this supplement successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this supplement

This supplement is available at the discretion of Natural England on sites that need an exceptionally high and sustained time and labour input.

Examples include sites:

- with very poor accessibility, remoteness or isolation, where it is very difficult to walk livestock or to transport livestock to the site
- with hazards to personnel and livestock within or next to the site, such as:
  - cliffs or extremely steep slopes or scree
  - sparse riverside land
  - islands
  - mineshafts
  - landslips
  - subsidence
  - gullies
  - with hazards to livestock, such as:
    - poisonous vegetation from which stock cannot be excluded
    - regular disturbance by dogs
    - urban fringe locations
    - where it is very difficult to locate stock within a site for welfare checks

## **Where this supplement cannot be used**

The supplement is not intended for:

- mechanical vegetation control - supplements such as [GS15 - Haymaking supplement](#) or a capital item are more appropriate
- sites currently grazed to acceptable levels for nature conservation
- sites where grazing is not secured for the lifetime of the agreement
- small parcels which are not stockproof or are not managed individually

## **SP2: Raised water level supplement**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the raised water level supplement.

### **How much will be paid**

£127 per hectare (ha).

### **How long this supplement lasts**

This supplement lasts for 10 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme.

### **Where to use this supplement**

Available for Higher Tier

Only in combination with the one of following land management options:

- [GS6 - Management of species-rich grassland](#)
- [GS7 - Restoration towards species-rich grassland](#)
- [GS8 - Creation of species-rich grassland](#)
- [GS13 - Management of grassland for target features](#)
- [GS14 - Creation of grassland for target features](#)

And in combination with another land management option with the written confirmation of a Natural England specialist.

### **How this supplement will benefit the environment**

It is for raising or maintaining water levels in ditches and adjacent land.

Suitable water levels will be maintained on the option the supplement's applied to.

## Requirements

Agreement holders will need to raise and maintain high water levels using suitable water control structures, or maintain existing in-field wetness.

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- consents or permissions connected with this work

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

The detailed requirements for this supplement will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

## Related supplements

This supplement can be located on the same area as the following supplements:

- [GS15 - Haymaking supplement](#)
- [GS16 - Rush infestation control supplement](#)
- [GS17 - Lenient grazing supplement](#)
- [SP1 - Difficult sites supplement](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP5 - Shepherding supplement](#)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly](#)
- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [WT11 - Wetland cutting supplement](#)

- [WT12 - Wetland grazing supplement](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this supplement**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this supplement successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this supplement

### **Pick the right location**

This supplement can be used when the cost of raising or maintaining water levels is not covered by the underlying option.

The supplement usually requires active management of water levels. However, naturally wet sites (where groundwater levels are naturally high or where levels are managed by a third party, such as the local internal drainage board) may also be suitable.

To justify the supplement the site wetness should both:

- be appropriate for the habitat or historic feature and any targeted species present
- lead to increased management costs which are not accounted for by the option (such as difficulties in sward management or livestock health implications)

When water levels are being actively managed, the land levels, topography, soils and underlying geology should be suitable for water level management. The site, either alone or combined with a group of sites, should form a natural hydrological unit.

Water management structures (such as sluices or bunds) may be needed to separate the site from neighbouring land - these may be available as capital items.

### **Unsuitable sites**

Unsuitable sites include those where:

- the base option already includes the costs of water level management (such as the wet grassland and wetland options), unless the supplement is approved by a Natural England specialist



- the supplement increases the risk of flooding or waterlogging elsewhere
- the water supply lacks the quantity or quality to achieve the objectives
- raising water levels would damage priority habitats or species, or features of archaeological, historic or landscape value, unless approved mitigation measures can be taken
- the proposal would damage third party land or buildings, infrastructure or other assets unless approved mitigation measures are taken
- there are conflicts with public access or other uses of the area that cannot be resolved

## **Consents and permissions**

Applicants should always consult the local land drainage authority about changes to water levels or restoration works that affect water courses or the floodplain. This may be the local internal drainage board, the Environment Agency or the local authority.

Planning consent may be needed, such as for flood defence bank removal, or for the installation of bunds or embankments within the floodplain.

Applicants may also need the local planning authority's permission to divert a public right of way.

## **SP3: Bracken control supplement**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the bracken control supplement.

### **How much will be paid**

£153 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this supplement**

Available for Higher Tier

Whole and part-parcel

Only in combination with a land management option. The most common such options include:

- [LH1 - Management of lowland heathland](#)
- [LH2 - Restoration of forestry and woodland to lowland heathland](#)
- [LH3 - Creation of heathland from arable or improved grassland](#)
- [UP1 - Enclosed rough grazing](#)
- [UP2 - Management of rough grazing for birds](#)
- [UP3 - Management of moorland](#)

This supplement can also be used to control bracken on other options, such as on dry grassland, woodland or sand dunes.

Where this supplement cannot be used

On the same area in the same year as the bracken control capital items:

- [SB4 - Chemical bracken control](#)
- [SB5 - Mechanical bracken control](#)

This supplement would normally be used in subsequent years, as a follow-up to these items.

## **How this supplement will benefit the environment**

It controls the spread of, or removes, existing dense stands of bracken. This will maintain or restore biodiversity value and protect archaeological sites.

If successful the underlying vegetation will develop and spread, and will develop a diverse mosaic structure and composition, including undisturbed bare ground and varied vegetation types.

Successfully managing the remaining vegetation (usually by grazing or cutting) will reduce the chances of bracken spreading back. Locally characteristic plant communities and the species they support will expand or even colonise the site.

## **Requirements**

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- control bracken so that cover is reduced to a set proportion by a set date
- only carry out chemical control on specifically identified areas
- use temporary grazing controls to protect vegetation regeneration
- graze to break up litter beds and damage young fronds to offer extra bracken control
- control any re-infestation during the term of the agreement
- carry out specific follow up cutting or grazing management tailored to their site

## **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels
- consents or permissions connected with this work
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

Applicants will need to send the following with their application:

- a map of the extent of bracken - this can be marked on any map including the Farm Environment Record (FER)

Before applying, the applicant should get Environment Agency's consent if this is within a water catchment area. You do not need to provide these with your application, but you will need to submit any that are required with your payment claim.

The detailed requirements for this supplement will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

## **Related supplements**

This supplement can be located on the same area as the following supplements:

- [UP6 - Upland livestock exclusion supplement](#)
- [WD9 - Livestock exclusion supplement - scrub and successional areas](#)
- [SP1 - Difficult sites supplement](#)
- [SP5 - Shepherding supplement](#)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly](#)
- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)

## **SP4: Control of invasive plant species supplement**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the control of invasive plant species supplement.

### **How much will be paid**

£324 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this supplement**

Available for Higher Tier

Whole and part-parcel

Only in combination with an appropriate annual management option.

Where this supplement cannot be used

For rush control.

### **How this supplement will benefit the environment**

It supports the active management and eradication of particularly severe infestations of invasive non-native species that are damaging a feature of interest, such as:

- Himalayan balsam
- Japanese knotweed
- floating pennywort and other invasive aquatic plants

Active management is needed to maintain or restore wildlife value or protect archaeological features.

If successful there should be a reduction in cover and density of non-native invasive species. Native plants and animals will re-establish the area cleared, returning a more natural balance to the habitat.

## Requirements

Agreement holder are likely to need to:

- control the invasive species so that cover is reduced to a set proportion by a set date
- only carry out chemical control on specifically identified areas
- use temporary grazing controls to protect vegetation regeneration
- control any re-infestation during the term of the agreement
- carry out specific follow up cutting or grazing management tailored to their site

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices

The detailed requirements for this supplement will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

## Related supplements

This supplement can be located on the same area as the following supplements:

- [CT6 – Coastal vegetation management supplement](#)
- [GS15 – Haymaking supplement](#)
- [GS16 – Rush infestation control supplement](#)
- [GS17 – Lenient grazing supplement](#)
- [SP1 - Difficult sites supplement](#)
- [SP2 - Raised water level supplement](#)
- [SP5 - Shepherding supplement](#)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly](#)
- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement](#)

- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [SW14 – Nil fertiliser supplement](#)
- [UP4 – Management of moorland vegetation supplement](#)
- [UP5 – Moorland re-wetting supplement](#)
- [UP6 – Upland livestock exclusion supplement](#)
- [WD9 – Livestock exclusion supplement](#)
- [WT11 – Wetland cutting supplement](#)
- [WT12 – Wetland grazing supplement](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this supplement**

The following section gives advice on carrying out this supplement successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this supplement.

### **Non-native invasive species**

Invasive non-native plants are species that:

- have been introduced to the UK either intentionally or unintentionally
- spread and damage the environment, the economy and health

### **Where this supplement can be used**

Use this supplement when aiming to do more than just control an invasive species' spread and, if feasible, eradicate it. Exact details will be agreed with Natural England.

This supplement can also be used to control non-native invasive species in marginal areas (such as riverbanks, riparian habitats, ditches, channels, field margins, corners and ponds). This can only be done if there is a Countryside Stewardship land management option on that land parcel.

### **Where this supplement cannot be used**

- to control [weeds listed in the Weeds Act 1959](#)
- to control bracken and gorse - use the appropriate supplement
- for complying with cross compliance requirements

- for rush infestations - if this is on land under a Countryside Stewardship option then apply for [GS16 - Rush infestation control supplement](#)

## Controlling non-native invasive species

Invasive species can be controlled through a range of methods, including:

- containing a species in a limited area
- preventing (or slowing) its spread
- localised population reduction or eradication in particular areas

Alternative methods include cutting by hand or cutting mechanically, applying herbicide or an alternative agreed method, depending on the plant being controlled.

If the applicant has permission to spray herbicide make sure that the person spraying has the relevant qualifications and certifications.

When controlling and disposing of invasive non-native plants on land, specific legal responsibilities must be complied with, including:

- spraying with herbicide
- cutting and burning
- burying invasive plant material
- disposing of invasive plant and contaminated soil off site

## Further information

Get more information on invasive weeds from:

- the guide to [harmful weeds and invasive, non-native plants](#)
- guidance on the [Wildlife and Countryside Act and landowners' responsibilities](#)



## SP5: Shepherding supplement

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the shepherding supplement.

### How much will be paid

£7 per hectare (ha)

### Where to use this supplement

It is available for Higher Tier on part-parcels on land where shepherding needs to be introduced, reintroduced or where significant changes to current practices are needed.

You must combine it with one of the following options:

- [CT1 - Management of coastal sand dunes and vegetated shingle](#)
- [CT2 - Creation of coastal sand dunes and vegetated shingle on arable land and improved grassland](#)
- [GS6 - Management of species-rich grassland](#)
- [GS7 - Restoration towards species-rich grassland](#)
- [GS8 - Creation of species-rich grassland](#)
- [GS9 - Management of wet grassland for breeding waders](#)
- [GS10 - Management of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl](#)
- [GS11 - Creation of wet grassland for breeding waders](#)
- [GS12 - Creation of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl](#)
- [GS13 - Management of grassland for target features](#)
- [GS14 - Creation of grassland for target features](#)
- [LH1 - Management of lowland heathland](#)
- [LH2 - Restoration of forestry and woodland to lowland heathland](#)
- [LH3 - Creation of heathland from arable or improved grassland](#)
- [UP2 - Management of rough grazing for birds](#)
- [UP3 - Management of moorland](#)
- [WT6 - Management of reedbed](#)

- [WT7 - Creation of reedbed](#)
- [WT8 - Management of fen](#)
- [WT9 - Creation of fen](#)
- [WT10 - Management of lowland raised bog](#)

## **How this supplement will benefit the environment**

If successful there will be:

- improvements in the quality of vegetation
- overgrazing reduced in some areas and increased in others
- better habitats for birds, mammals and insects
- less damage to archaeological features and vulnerable soils and less poaching (trampling)
- more suitable conditions for threatened species to thrive
- improved visibility of historic and archaeological features

## **Requirements**

You must:

- keep records of shepherding or herding activities on the agreed area

## **Keeping records**

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- record of shepherding activity
- photographs of the management undertaken

## **Related supplements**

You can locate this item on the same area as the following supplements:

- [GS15 – Haymaking supplement](#)
- [GS16 – Rush infestation control supplement](#)
- [GS17 – Lenient grazing supplement](#)
- [SP2 - Raised water level supplement](#)
- [SP3 – Bracken control supplement](#)
- [SP4 – Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)

- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP7 - Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly](#)
- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [UP4 – Management of moorland vegetation supplement](#)
- [UP5 – Moorland re-wetting supplement](#)
- [UP6 – Upland livestock exclusion supplement](#)
- [WT12 – Wetland grazing supplement](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this supplement**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### **Pick the right location**

Only use this supplement in areas where you have agreed with Natural England that shepherding is needed to help improve the option land.

Use mineral licks or supplementary feed in agreed locations to help with stock management

Do not use this supplement where:

- boundaries are not proofed against livestock and they cannot be controlled effectively
- there is little or no shepherding available in the area
- the site is not grazed
- there is already a local practice, custom or regulation in place for shepherding

### **Further information**

- See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## SP6: Cattle grazing supplement

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the cattle grazing supplement.

How much is paid

£45 per hectare (ha).

Where to use this supplement

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only in combination with a land management option where cattle grazing is appropriate for delivering the aims of the option.

In Mid Tier with:

- [GS5 Permanent grassland with very low inputs in SDAs](#)
- [GS6 Management of species rich grassland](#)
- [WD4 Management of wood pasture and parkland](#)
- [UP2 Management of rough grazing for birds](#)

In Higher Tier:

- with a land management option where cattle grazing is appropriate for delivering the aims of the option

Where this supplement cannot be used

With:

- [GS17 - Lenient grazing supplement](#)
- [SW14 - Nil fertiliser supplement](#)

How this supplement will benefit the environment

There should be:

- a more varied sward structure, which will increase wildlife diversity

- better control of scrub, bracken and coarse vegetation
- better grazing of wet areas and difficult sites such as steep slopes

## Requirements

- graze the site according to a stocking calendar agreed with Natural England
- in Mid Tier at least 60% of the grazing Livestock Units must comprise of cattle

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels

## Related Mid Tier supplements

This supplement can be located on the same area as the following supplements:

- [GS15 – Haymaking supplement](#)
- [GS16 – Rush infestation control supplement](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this supplement

The following section gives advice on carrying out this supplement successfully, but does not form part of the requirements for this supplement.

## Where to use this supplement

It can be used at sites where:

- cattle are being introduced
- significant changes to the current grazing regime are needed to improve the quality of the habitat

## Type of cattle

Many cattle breeds or cross-breeds may be capable of meeting requirements:

- cattle with low nutritional requirements, such as dry suckler cows, are best for sites with fibrous herbage
- mature, placid cattle are best suited for sites where there are ground-nesting birds, as they reduce the risk of trampling

### Timing

Graze different habitat types at different times of the year and with a range of cattle numbers.

## **SP7: Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly supplement.

### **How much will be paid**

£279 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this supplement**

Available for Higher Tier

Only:

- in the Isles of Scilly
- with a land management option where cattle grazing will help achieve the option's goals

### **How this supplement will benefit the environment**

It is for the introduction of conservation grazing on the Isles of Scilly on land that is not currently grazed by cattle.

If successful there will be:

- a more varied sward structure that will increase wildlife diversity
- better control of scrub, bracken and coarse vegetation
- better grazing of wet areas and difficult sites such as steep slopes

### **Requirements**

Agreement holders will need to graze cattle on the land with the option. Grazing needs to follow the stocking calendar agreed with Natural England.

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels
- stocking calendar agreed with Natural England

The detailed requirements for this supplement will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

## **Related supplements**

This supplement can be located on the same area as the following supplements:

- [CT6 – Coastal vegetation management supplement](#)
- [GS15 – Haymaking supplement](#)
- [GS16 – Rush infestation control supplement](#)
- [SP2 - Raised water level supplement](#)
- [SP3 – Bracken control supplement](#)
- [SP4 – Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [WD9 – Livestock exclusion supplement – scrub and successional areas](#)
- [WT12 – Wetland grazing supplement](#)

## **Further information**

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.



## SP8: Native breeds at risk supplement

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the native breeds at risk supplement.

How much is paid

£94 per hectare (ha).

Where to use this supplement

Available for Higher Tier

Only on land in combination with a land management option. The species and breed used for grazing must be confirmed in writing by Natural England as being appropriate for achieving the option's aims.

[Native breed at risk](#) (NBAR) grazing livestock must be used that are either:

- registered pedigree purebreeding animals
- genetically-provable purebred progeny of registered pedigree purebreeding parents of the same eligible NBAR breed

Where this supplement cannot be used

- on common land and shared grazing areas
- in combination with [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)

How this supplement will benefit the environment

It is for the conservation of genetic diversity in native breeds at risk.

The number of NBAR stock on the farm will increase or be maintained as agreed. This makes sure that the breeds will not become extinct in England.

Requirements

- state how many registered pedigree purebreeding NBAR livestock they will be keeping, or agreeing to keep, by the end of the agreement

- graze specific parcels with the breeds at risk in accordance with a stocking calendar

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- a monthly record of grazing animals at the parcel level
- unique individual animal movement identification numbers for each eligible animal
- any changes to the original documentation since submission of the application, such as replacement animals
- stocking calendar agreed with Natural England
- the unique individual permanent NBAR breed identification numbers for each eligible animal - either the pedigree registration number or birth notification number
- breed registration records and proof of animal provenance, parentage and availability for each animal

The detailed requirements for this supplement will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

### Related supplements

This supplement can be located on the same area as the following supplements:

- [CT6 – Coastal vegetation management supplement](#)
- [GS15 – Haymaking supplement](#)
- [GS16 – Rush infestation control supplement](#)
- [GS17 – Lenient grazing supplement](#)
- [SP2 - Raised water level supplement](#)
- [SP3 – Bracken control supplement](#)
- [SP4 – Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP5 – Shepherding supplement](#)
- [SP7 – Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly](#)

- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [WD9 – Livestock exclusion supplement – scrub and successional areas](#)
- [WT12 – Wetland grazing supplement](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this supplement

The following section gives advice on carrying out this supplement successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this supplement.

## Breeds

The [UK NBAR list](#) shows the eligible breeds. Information on suitable breeds for different types of grassland and how to manage them is available at the [Grazing Animals Project](#).

On farms with mainstream breeds as well as NBAR livestock payment will be limited to an area of land sufficient to maintain the eligible NBAR livestock.

## **SP9: Threatened species supplement**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the threatened species supplement.

### **How much will be paid**

£120 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this supplement**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier in combination with a land management option where either:

- at least one [priority species](#) is present on the site
- you can manage the site to create the right conditions to allow the introduction, re-colonisation or range extension of a named priority species

For Higher Tier only, the management work must have written support from a specialist.

In Mid Tier you can only use this option if it meets the relevant criteria, you have written approval from RPA and it supports the management for brown hairstreak butterfly, corn bunting or turtle dove.

### **For turtle dove use of this supplement with AB12 or OP3**

You can only use if your land is located (partly/wholly) within the following priority counties:

- Bedfordshire
- Berkshire
- Buckinghamshire
- Cambridgeshire
- Devon
- Dorset
- East Riding of Yorkshire
- East Sussex

- Essex
- Gloucestershire
- Hampshire
- Herefordshire
- Hertfordshire
- Isle of Wight
- Kent
- Leicestershire
- Lincolnshire
- Norfolk
- North Yorkshire
- Northamptonshire
- Nottinghamshire
- Oxfordshire
- Rutland
- South Yorkshire
- Suffolk
- Surrey
- Warwickshire
- West Sussex
- Wiltshire
- Worcestershire

## **Where this supplement cannot be used**

For any work within the scope of standard options or capital items.

## **Requirements**

### **Brown hairstreak**

If brown hairstreak is specified in the approval of high value options you must:

- cut hedgerows on a 3-5 year rotation, with no more than a third of any hedgerow being cut in any one year and allow suckering blackthorn growth to develop from the hedgerow

For Mid Tier only, if brown hairstreak is specified you must use SP9 with BE3 Management of hedgerows and include a Wild Pollinator and Farm Wildlife Package in the agreement

## **Corn bunting**

If corn bunting is specified in the approval of high value options you must:

- use the underlying option AB10 on a part or whole field scale. It must be a minimum of 24m wide and you must locate it within 200m of a strip or block of one of the following options:
  - AB8 Flower rich margins
  - AB1 Nectar Flower Mix
  - OP4 Multi species ley
- re-establish the underlying AB10 in the same location each spring for at least 3 years
- make sure the AB9 Winter bird food or OP2 Wild bird seed mixture is at least 48m wide and the mix must include 60% spring barley and you must re-established it every year
- if undertaking AB6 retain any subsequent regeneration until at least 14 August of the following year after harvest

For Mid Tier only, if corn bunting is specified you must use SP9 with AB10 Unharvested cereal headland, and the Arable or Mixed Wild Pollinator and Farm Wildlife Package and AB12 must be included in the agreement.

## **Turtle dove**

For Mid Tier only, if turtle dove is specified in the approval you must:

- use this supplement with AB12 or OP3
- include an Arable or Mixed Wild Pollinator and Farm Wildlife Package and the following options - AB11 and BE3 or WD7 - in the agreement
- have at least 2 but no more than 20 feeding areas per agreement if you use this supplement with AB12 or OP3

- use the supplementary feeding mix listed in the Turtle Dove Feeding Protocol within the [Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option section](#) at all times
- spread the summer supplementary feeding mix at a rate of 5kg once a week for 20 weeks between 1 April and 30 September – you can vary the amount to be fed each week up to a maximum of 2 kg per week to match demand as necessary
- make sure each feeding area supplies 100kg during the feeding period. Do not use feed hoppers

## Keeping records

You must keep the following records and supply them on request

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- priority species specialist report

## Related supplements

You can locate this supplement on the same area as all other supplements except:

- [SW14 – Nil fertiliser supplement](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this supplement

### Eligible SP9 area when used with BE3

For every 2,000m of BE3 management of hedgerows you can claim 1.00 ha of SP9 which is equivalent to £0.06 per metre. We adjust the amount of SP9 payable on a pro rata basis according to the length of BE3 which you are managing for brown hairstreak as follows:

Examples	Length managed	SP9 payable	Amount
A hedgerow that is 1000m in length is	2000m of BE3/SP9 management	1.00ha of SP9 payable	£120/year

Examples	Length managed	SP9 payable	Amount
managed for brown hairstreak (as per the BE3 and SP9 prescriptions) on both sides			
A hedgerow that is 1000m in length is managed for brown hairstreak (as per the BE3 and SP9 prescriptions) for 500m on one side and 300m on the other side	800m of BE3/SP9 management	0.40ha of SP9 payable	£48/year

There is no restriction on the amount of hedgerow that you can manage for brown hairstreak, provided the butterfly occurs on the holding.

### **Eligible SP9 area when being used with AB12 or OP3**

For each tonne (1000kg) of AB12 or OP3 you are using to supply summer supplementary feeding for turtle doves you can claim 3.00ha of SP9. This supplement will help cover the substantially higher cost of the bespoke turtle dove seed mix as well as additional labour costs associated with maintaining a higher number of feeding areas, staggered feeding days and record keeping.



## Minimum and maximum quantity of AB12 and OP3 to be used with SP9

To be eligible to use the SP9 supplement with AB12 or OP3 to deliver summer supplementary feeding for turtle doves all agreements must contain a minimum of 2 feeding areas (equivalent to 200kg of supplementary feeding using AB12 or OP3).

In addition, use of this supplement with AB12 or OP3 is restricted to a maximum of 4 feeding areas per every 250ha of agreement land as follows:

Area in agreement (ha)	Maximum number of turtle dove feeding areas per agreement
less than 250 ha	4
250 to 499 ha	8
500 to 749 ha	12
750 to 999 ha	16
more than 1000 ha	20

# **Turtle Dove Feeding Protocol**

## **What to feed**

A mix designed to reflect a range of seed types known to be well represented in turtle dove diet.

You must use the following summer supplementary feeding mix at all times:

- 35% oilseed rape
- 35% white millet
- 10% canary seed
- 10% sunflower hearts
- 10% wheat

Do not use tailings.

## **Where to feed**

You must site all supplementary feeding locations on bare or sparsely-vegetated ground within 300m of suitable turtle dove nesting habitat (in other words, tall, thick hedges or areas of dense scrub), within close proximity to ponds.

The feeding locations must have patchy, short vegetation less than 15cm in height with a minimum of 30% (preferably 50-60%), bare ground from April to September, as turtle doves will not forage within tall or dense vegetation.

Suitable feeding locations include cultivated fallows, sparsely vegetated field margins, farm tracks and areas of hard standing. You can locate the feeding locations in-field or at the field edge adjacent to boundaries.

Where the vegetation height is more 15cm or the area of bare ground falls below 30%, you must manage the feeding location to maintain optimal ground conditions (by mowing or shallow cultivation) or move it. You can move feeding locations occasionally - where you need to do this, make sure you move them as short a distance as possible.

## **When to feed**

Carry out turtle dove supplementary feeding for 20 weeks between 1 April and 31 August. Whilst most turtle doves return to the UK from late April/early May

onwards it is recommended to start feeding a couple of weeks early to draw in other birds such as pigeons that will, in turn, signpost the feeding areas.

In addition, in years when turtle doves embark on their migration to Africa later, you can, where appropriate, extend feeding into September.

### **How much to feed during the feeding period**

For each feeding location, you must supply 100kg of the specified seed mix during the feeding period.

### **How much to feed each week**

Feed 5kg once a week at each feeding location. You can vary the amount to be fed each week by up to 2kg per week to match demand as necessary.

### **How often to feed**

Feed at least once a week unless there is visible evidence of uneaten seed starting to accumulate.

To make sure a continuous supply of seeds is available - as well as to minimise seed spoilage and consumption by non-target species - feed smaller amounts of seed more often, or alternatively, stagger feeding over a number of days. See example feeding programme below:

Field name	RLR field parcel number	Feeding period	No. of weeks to feed	How often to feed	Designated feeding day	Amount to feed each week kg	Total to be fed during feeding period
Abbey Field	TM12345678	1 April – 31	20	Once a week	Monday	5kg once a week	0.100 tonne

Field name	RLR field parcel number	Feeding period	No. of weeks to feed	How often to feed	Designated feeding day	Amount to feed each week kg	Total to be fed during feeding period
------------	-------------------------	----------------	----------------------	-------------------	------------------------	-----------------------------	---------------------------------------

---

		August	20	week			
--	--	--------	----	------	--	--	--

---

Blacklands	TM23456789	1 April – 31 August	20	Once a week	Wednesday	5kg once a week	0.100 tonne
------------	------------	---------------------	----	-------------	-----------	-----------------	-------------

---

Chapel Field	TM34567891	1 April – 31 August	20	Once a week	Friday	5kg once a week	0.100 tonne
--------------	------------	---------------------	----	-------------	--------	-----------------	-------------

---

Long Meadow	TM45678912	1 April – 31 August	20	Once a week	Sunday	5kg once a week	0.100 tonne
-------------	------------	---------------------	----	-------------	--------	-----------------	-------------

---

						Total supplementary feed to be fed during the	0.400 tonne
--	--	--	--	--	--	---	-------------

---

Field name	RLR field parcel number	Feeding period	No. of weeks to feed	How often to feed	Designated feeding day	Amount to feed each week kg	Total to be fed during feeding period
------------	-------------------------	----------------	----------------------	-------------------	------------------------	-----------------------------	---------------------------------------

feeding period

## How to feed

Feed by hand or use equipment such as a slug pellet applicator, fertiliser spreader or purpose built supplementary feeding spreader to scatter the seeds thinly over a wide area. This helps to reduce the risk of attracting undesirable non-target species. As a guide, if you spread seed in a strip measuring 50m by 5m wide this should achieve the best distribution of seeds.

## Hygiene

To minimise the risk of disease and parasite transfer between birds using supplementary feeding areas, you must:

- avoid spreading the seed too thickly - this can encourage parasites harmful to turtle doves, as well as attract undesirable non-target species such as rats
- not use feed hoppers
- spin or scatter the mix only to avoid creating feed piles or long trails
- stop feeding, if there is a visible build-up of unused food, until seeds are no longer visible
- move feeding locations at least every other year to minimise pathogen build up

## Feeding diary

To help you demonstrate compliance with the prescriptions and the turtle dove feeding protocol, you must keep the following records supply on request:

- details of the mixture used (weight of components and cost)
- dates of feeding
- amount of feed spread on each date
- total amount (kg) of supplementary feed fed during the feeding period
- the location of the feeding areas

## **Further information**

See the [Higher Tier](#) or [Mid Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **SP10: Administration of group managed agreements supplement**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the administration of group managed agreements supplement.

How much will be paid

£6 per hectare (ha).

Where to use this supplement

Available for Higher Tier

Only in combination with an annual management option. The agreement land must be common land or have shared tenure with 2 or more legal interests.

How this supplement will benefit the environment

It is for agreements with shared tenure. It supports good administration of these agreements.

A well-administered agreement group will meet regularly and keep suitable records.

Requirements

Register with the Rural Payments Agency

Agreement holders will need to [register with the Rural Payments Agency \(RPA\)](#) if they have not already done so. All participants in the agreement must be registered with the RPA and have their own Single Business Identifier. The agreement group must be separately registered.

Carry out the management as set out in the agreement.

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- an up to date list of agreement participants - send revised versions to the RPA and Natural England within 30 days of any change
- any bank statements, receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- records documenting the activities and decisions of the group, association or committee - this includes records of meetings, constitution and agreement documentation and management of changes to the group membership or participants list
- a copy of a written internal agreement

The detailed requirements for this supplement will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

### Related options

This supplement may be used with most land management options and other supplements but not with the organic conversion or organic land management options.

### Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this supplement

The following section gives advice on carrying out this supplement successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this supplement.

### Picking the right situation

This supplement can be used where a group rather than an individual manages agreement land. This will often apply where the agreement is on common land or where there is shared grazing.

### Internal agreements

This internal agreement needs to state:

- the group's governance
- responsibilities for achieving the agri-environment agreement requirements
- how members will be paid



- the evidence that all participants and the group are registered as a business with the RPA

## **SW1: 4m to 6m buffer strip on cultivated land**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the 4m to 6m buffer strip on cultivated land option.

### **How much will be paid**

£353 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on the edges of cultivated fields, between the productive part of the field and an existing feature or habitat (which must be identified on the Farm Environment Record (FER)), such as:

- hedgerows and hedge trees
- remnants of trees on former boundary lines
- stone walls
- woodlands
- ponds, ditches, rivers and streams

You can also use it next to:

- trackways that channel runoff water directly to a watercourse
- fence lines that form links between areas of wildlife habitat identified on the FER

### **Where this option cannot be used**

- Overlapping a public right of way (such as a footpath or bridleway)
- From 1 January 2019, on land already receiving funding for Ecological Focus Areas (EFAs) declared for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS)

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

A grass buffer strip may provide new habitat, protect existing landscape features, and improve water quality.

Next to existing features, it will provide habitat for wildlife, and form links or corridors between other habitats.

Next to a watercourse, it will also prevent pollutants, such as sediment and nutrients, from being transported in surface water runoff.

## Requirements

You must:

- establish or maintain a 4 to 6m wide grass buffer strip during the first 12 months of the agreement
- once the strip has been established, cut between 1 and 3m of the strip next to the crop edge every year after 15 July
- only cut the remaining width to control woody growth (leaving aside areas containing fallen timber)
- where there are hedgerow trees over 30 centimetres (cm) in diameter at breast height, leave fallen timber beneath the canopy, stacking any timber that obstructs management of the buffer strip

Do not:

- remove the limbs (including lower limbs) of any hedgerow trees that are over 30cm in diameter at breast height
- apply any fertilisers or manures
- use the buffer strip as an access route for vehicles or stock
- use pesticides, except for herbicides to weed wipe or spot treat injurious weeds, invasive non-native species, nettles or bracken

## Keeping records

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- photographs of the strips

On your annual claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

## Related Mid Tier options

You can use the following options on the same area as this option:

- [OR3 - Organic conversion - rotational land](#)
- [OR4 - Organic conversion - horticulture](#)
- [OT3 - Organic land management - rotational land](#)
- [OT4 - Organic land management - horticulture](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### **Using this option on existing buffer strips**

You can use this option on buffer strips that are already established, unless they are being paid for through another scheme. However, the buffer strip should be on land that can be cultivated (for example, it cannot be on a very steeply banked strip alongside a boundary).

You can continue to manage buffer strips established under Entry Level Stewardship (ELS) under a new Countryside Stewardship agreement.

### **How to choose a site**

To protect watercourses, create the buffer strip:

- next to the watercourse
- across the slope on long, steep slopes, to intercept runoff before it builds to a damaging flow

To benefit wildlife, select a location that links habitats, or that is next to:

- watercourses
- hedgerows (particularly hedges with mature hedgerow trees)
- stone walls
- remnants of trees on former boundary lines
- groups of trees in strips along the edge of woodland

To protect archaeological features, create the buffer strip beside:

- archaeological features located above the ground
- historic features
- metal parkland fencing

## How to manage the buffer strip

- Remove any subsoil compaction where required to prepare a seedbed, except on archaeological features
- Control weeds and cut regularly in the first 12 to 24 months of establishment to encourage grasses to tiller
- Avoid cutting when the soil is wet, to prevent compaction
- Keep the buffer strip in place and do not re-sow for the duration of the agreement

The buffer strip can be partly covered by a hedge, as long as the hedge is located on land that is eligible for this option.

## Further information

See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **SW2: 4m to 6m buffer strip on intensive grassland**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the 4m to 6m buffer strip on intensive grassland option.

How much will be paid

£170 per hectare (ha).

Where to use this option

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

On the edges of intensively managed, improved grassland fields receiving more than 100kg/ha of nitrogen per year in the form of fertilisers or manures, between the productive part of the field and a feature or habitat (which must be identified on the Farm Environment Record (FER)), such as:

- hedgerows and hedge trees
- remnants of trees on former boundary lines
- stone walls
- woodlands
- ditches, rivers and streams

This option can also be used:

- next to trackways that channel runoff water directly to a watercourse
- next to fence lines that form links between areas of wildlife habitat identified on the FER

Where this option cannot be used

- overlapping a public right of way (such as a footpath or bridleway)

How this option will benefit the environment

It provides new habitat and protects existing landscape features.

When placed next to existing features, it will provide habitat for wildlife, and form links or corridors between other habitats.

## Requirements

- establish or maintain a 4 to 6m wide grass buffer strip during the first 12 months of the agreement
- leave an uncut buffer strip 4 to 6m wide around the edge of any fields that will be mown (livestock can graze this strip along with the aftermath)
- only cut the sward to control woody growth
- where there are hedgerow trees over 30cm in diameter at breast height, leave fallen timber beneath the canopy, stacking any timber that obstructs management of the buffer strip

## Do not:

- remove the limbs (including lower limbs) of any hedgerow trees that are over 30cm in diameter at breast height
- apply any fertilisers or manures
- use the buffer strip as an access route for vehicles or stock
- use pesticides, except for herbicides to weed wipe or spot treat injurious weeds, invasive non-native species, nettles or bracken

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- input records showing that the grassland has received more than 100kg of nitrogen per ha per year

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the strips

## Related Mid Tier options

The following options can be used on the same area as this option:

- [OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OR3 - Organic conversion - rotational land](#)
- [OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT3 - Organic land management - rotational land](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully, but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

### Using this option on existing buffer strips

This option can be used on buffer strips that are already established, unless they are required or being paid for through another scheme.

Buffer strips established under Entry Level Stewardship (ELS) can continue to be managed under a new Countryside Stewardship agreement.

### How to choose a site

To benefit wildlife, select a location that links habitats, or that is next to:

- watercourses
- hedgerows (particularly hedges with mature hedgerow trees)
- stone walls
- remnants of trees on former boundary lines
- groups of trees in strips along the edge of woodland

To protect archaeological features, create the buffer strip beside:

- archaeological features located above the ground
- historic features
- metal parkland fencing

### How to manage the buffer strip

- remove any subsoil compaction where required to prepare a seedbed, except on archaeological features
- control weeds and cut regularly in the first 12 to 24 months of establishment to encourage grasses to tiller
- avoid cutting when the soil is wet, to prevent compaction

Applicants should consider using option [SW11 - Riparian management strip](#) on sloping fields next to a watercourse where there is a risk of soil erosion, runoff or bankside trampling.



## SW3: In-field grass strips

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the in-field grass strips option.

How much will be paid

£557 per hectare (ha).

Where to use this option

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

- only on cultivated land identified on the Farm Environment Record (FER) as at risk of soil erosion or surface runoff
- only on part parcels that are no more than 30% of the parcel area

Where this option cannot be used

- from 1 January 2019, on land already receiving funding for Ecological Focus Areas (EFAs) declared for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS)

How this option will benefit the environment

Grass areas or strips will help to reduce the quantity of sediment, nutrients and pesticides transported through surface runoff water, both within fields and from field to field.

Requirements

- establish or maintain a dense grassy area during the first 12 months of the agreement
- once it has been established, cut the entire area every year after 15 July
- exclude all livestock from the strip

Do not:

- apply any fertilisers or manures
- use the grassed area as an access route for vehicles or stock

- use pesticides, except for herbicides to weed wipe or spot treat injurious weeds, invasive non-native species, nettles or bracken

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

### Related Mid Tier options

The following options can be located on the same area as this option:

- [OR3 - Organic conversion - rotational land](#)
- [OR4 - Organic conversion - horticulture](#)
- [OT3 - Organic land management - rotational land](#)
- [OT4 – Organic land management - horticulture](#)

### Advice and suggestion for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

#### How to achieve the best results

Water infiltration on the grass strip will be improved through appropriate management of the adjoining land. Strips will trap sediment better if large volumes of overland flow are not coming from surrounding land.

This option can be used at the margins of fields that are vulnerable to erosion to capture sediment or materials carried in runoff water.

Creating breaks, such as hedgerows and woodland, on long, steep slopes will complement the grass strips.

#### How to choose a site

The grass strip should be created:

- on natural drainage pathways (eg the bottom of a valley) - to stop runoff water from creating rills and gullies
- on long, sloping fields, with the strip placed parallel to the slope and alternated with wide, cultivated strips - to slow runoff water and trap sediment and organic material
- not overlapping a public right of way (such as a footpath or bridleway)

#### How to manage the grass strip

- remove any subsoil compaction where required to prepare a seedbed, except on archaeological features
- control weeds and cut regularly in the first 12 to 24 months of establishment to encourage grasses to tiller
- avoid cutting when the soil is wet, to prevent compaction
- the buffer strip should remain in place and not be re-sown for the duration of the agreement

Where there is a need to implement this option on more than 30% of the parcel, applicants should consider instead using option [SW7 - Arable reversion to grassland with low fertiliser input](#) to cover a larger area.

## **SW4: 12m to 24m watercourse buffer strip on cultivated land**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the 12m to 24m watercourse buffer strip on cultivated land option.

How much will be paid

£512 per hectare (ha).

Where to use this option

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

- only on cultivated land identified on the Farm Environment Record (FER) as at risk of soil erosion or surface runoff
- only on land next to ditches, rivers or streams

Where this option cannot be used

- overlapping a public right of way (such as a footpath or bridleway)
- from 1 January 2019, on land already receiving funding for Ecological Focus Areas (EFAs) declared for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS)

How this option will benefit the environment

It establishes a grass buffer to help reduce the risk of potential pollutants, such as sediment, pesticides and nutrients (mainly phosphate), being transported to watercourses in surface water runoff. It may also provide habitat for wildlife, and form links between other habitats.

Requirements

- establish or maintain a 12 to 24m wide grass buffer strip during the first 12 months of the agreement
- cut the 6m next to the crop along the entire length of the buffer strip every year after 15 July, once the strip has been established
- only cut the remainder of the strip to control woody growth
- exclude all livestock from the strip

Do not:

- apply any fertilisers or manures
- use the buffer strip as an access route for vehicles or stock
- use pesticides, except for herbicides to weed wipe or spot treat injurious weeds, invasive non-native species, nettles or bracken

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

Related Mid Tier options

The following options can be located on the same area as this option:

- [OR3 - Organic conversion - rotational land](#)
- [OR4 - Organic conversion - horticulture](#)
- [OT3 - Organic land management - rotational land](#)
- [OT4 - Organic land management - horticulture](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

Using this option on existing buffer strips

This option can be used on buffer strips that are already established, unless they are required or being paid for through another scheme. The buffer strip should be on land that can be cultivated (eg it cannot be on a very steeply banked strip alongside a boundary).

Buffer strips established under Entry Level Stewardship (ELS) can continue to be managed under a new Countryside Stewardship agreement.

## How to choose a site

Create the buffer strip adjacent to a watercourse across a long, steep slope, to intercept and slow runoff water before it builds to a damaging flow. Care should be taken to minimise the amount of water that is channelled along the edge of the buffer strip.

## How to manage the buffer strip

- remove any subsoil compaction where required to prepare a seedbed, except on archaeological features
- control weeds and cut regularly in the first 12 to 24 months of establishment to encourage grasses to tiller
- avoid cutting when the soil is wet, to prevent compaction
- the buffer strip should remain in place and not be re-sown for the duration of the agreement

The buffer strip can be partly covered by a hedge, as long as the hedge is located on land that is eligible for this option.

## **SW5: Enhanced management of maize crops**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the enhanced management of maize crops option.

How much will be paid

£133 per hectare (ha).

Where to use this option

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Whole parcel

Rotational

Only on land where maize is grown

Where this option cannot be used

- on parcels identified in the Farm Environment Record (FER) as at high risk of soil erosion or surface runoff

How this option will benefit the environment

It reduces the risk of soil erosion and surface runoff in fields where maize is grown. It will slow runoff water before it builds to a damaging flow, and remove sediment, organic material, nutrients and chemicals carried in the water.

Requirements

- harvest the maize crop by 1 October
- establish a quick-growing cover crop by 15 October that will provide a dense cover and protect the land from soil erosion and runoff

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the option area taken on 2 October

#### Related Mid Tier options

The following options can be located on the same area as this option:

- [OR3 - Organic conversion - rotational land](#)
- [OT3 - Organic land management - rotational land](#)

#### Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

#### Choice of cover crop

- a mix or a single crop can be used, but crops should be suitable for winter sowing, fast growing and frost tolerant to provide adequate cover over winter
- a mixture of seeds, such as vetch, phacelia, barley or mustard, can be sown, but the choice of cover crop will depend on herbicide selected and the rates of application for the previous crop
- choice of cover crop will also depend on the crops grown in the rotation

#### How to establish the cover crop

- remove any areas of soil compaction but do not subsoil on archaeological features
- sow the cover crop (within 2 weeks of harvesting and no later than 15 October)
- establish by drilling or broadcasting
- sow at a suitable seed rate to provide a dense cover and protect from soil erosion



- nutrients should only be used in line with crop requirements; no more than the recommended amount of slurry or manure should be applied for either the maize or the crop that follows it
- nutrient input must be based on an approved fertiliser management recommendation system ([Nutrient Management Guide RB209](#) or similar)

Using this option next to a watercourse

For fields next to a watercourse, options [SW1 - 4m to 6m buffer strip on cultivated land](#) or [SW4 - 12m to 24m watercourse buffer strip on cultivated land](#) should be considered. These field margin options will help to capture any sediment or organic materials carried in the runoff water.

## SW6: Winter cover crops

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the winter cover crops option.

How much will be paid

£114 per hectare (ha).

Where to use this option

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Whole or part parcel

Rotational

Only on one of the following

- cultivated land that is vulnerable to nitrate leaching
- cultivated land, draining directly to a watercourse, that is identified on the Farm Environment Record (FER) as at risk of soil erosion or surface runoff

Where this option cannot be used

- from 1 January 2019, on land already receiving funding for Ecological Focus Areas (EFAs) declared for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS)

How this option will benefit the environment

Cover crops help to reduce nitrate leaching on land that would normally be left bare or down to stubbles during winter. It may also reduce the risk of potential pollutants, such as sediment and nutrients, being carried to neighbouring watercourses.

Requirements

- establish a quick-growing cover crop by 15 September that will provide a dense cover and protect the land from soil erosion and runoff

- destroy the cover crop in late January or early February, a maximum of 6 weeks before establishing the following spring crop. When weather conditions delay establishment of a spring crop, the cover crop can be left until mid-March.

Do not:

- apply any fertilisers or manures

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

Related Mid Tier options

The following options can be located on the same area as this option:

- [HS3 - Reduced-depth, non-inversion cultivation on historic and archaeological features](#)
- [OR3 - Organic conversion - rotational land](#)
- [OR4 - Organic conversion - horticulture](#)
- [OT3 - Organic land management - rotational land](#)
- [OT4 - Organic land management - horticulture](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

How to choose the right location

This option should be used on vulnerable soil types, particularly light sandy soils within nitrate vulnerable areas.

Use the [run-off and soil erosion risk assessment form](#) to identify fields at moderate or higher risk of surface run-off or soil erosion. You can then

mark these fields on your Farm Environment Record map. You don't have to use this form. You can use your own document if it gives enough information to meet the requirements

### Choice of cover crop

- a mix or a single crop can be used, but crops should be suitable for winter sowing, fast growing (to mop up N) and frost tolerant to provide adequate cover over winter
- a mixture of seeds, such as rye, vetch, phacelia, barley or mustard, can be sown, or other crops such as ryegrass or tillage radish, but the choice of cover crop will depend on herbicide selected and the rates of application for the previous crop
- choice of cover crop will also depend on the crops grown in the rotation

### How to manage the crop

- remove any areas of soil compaction but do not subsoil on archaeological features
- establish the cover crop by 15 September, so it can take up soil nitrate before winter drainage water leaches it below the depth of the developing plant
- establish by drilling or broadcasting
- sow at a suitable seed rate to provide a dense cover and protect from soil erosion
- destroy the cover crop in late January or February, before it is too well developed – if left too late nitrate leaching may increase the following winter
- cover crop destruction may include an application of glyphosate prior to destruction by cultivation for the following crop

### Using this option next to a watercourse

On fields next to a watercourse that are at risk of soil erosion and runoff, applicants should also consider creating grass buffer strips. They will help to capture any sediment or organic materials carried in runoff water.

Options [SW1 - 4m to 6m buffer strip on cultivated land](#), [SW4 - 12m to 24m watercourse buffer strip on cultivated land](#), or other grass buffer options may be used.

## **SW7: Arable reversion to grassland with low fertiliser input**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the arable reversion to grassland with low fertiliser input option.

How much will be paid

£311 per hectare (ha).

Where to use this option

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Whole or part parcel

Only on one of the following:

- cultivated land that is identified in the Farm Environment Record (FER) as at risk of soil erosion or surface runoff
- cultivated land that has been identified as important for buffering sensitive habitats

Applicants must have support from a Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) officer to use this option.

Applicants must meet one of the following conditions:

- be following a recommended fertiliser management system to plan nutrient inputs across the farm
- plan to adopt a recommended fertiliser management system within 18 months of the start of the agreement
- qualify as a low intensity farmer

How this option will benefit the environment

A dense grass sward in arable fields at risk of soil erosion or surface runoff will stabilise the soil, reduce nutrient losses, and buffer sensitive habitats, such as designated aquatic habitats. It will also reduce surface runoff, which may help to reduce the risk of flooding.

## Requirements

- where it is necessary to reseed, establish a grass sward by 1 October using a seed mixture of at least 5 species (see the “What to sow” section below)
- from year 2, manage the sward by grazing and/or cutting to achieve an average sward height of between 5cm and 15cm in November - remove all cuttings
- exclude all livestock from 1 October to 15 March
- make sure that, by year 2, less than 10% of the area is bare ground
- livestock manures may be applied to supply up to 100kg of total nitrogen per ha per year - where livestock manures are not used, nitrogen fertiliser can be used to supply no more than 50kg/ha of total nitrogen per year

### Do not:

- use pesticides, except for herbicides to weed wipe or spot treat injurious weeds, invasive non-native species, nettles or bracken
- apply any manure or fertiliser between 15 August and 1 February
- supplementary feed except for mineral blocks (non-energy based)

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels
- evidence that a recommended fertiliser management system is used or evidence to support low intensity farmer claim

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- written endorsement from a CSF officer

## Related Mid Tier options

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- [OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [SW14 - Nil fertiliser supplement](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

How to choose the right location

This option should be used in targeted areas to reduce diffuse water pollution. It can also be used to buffer sensitive habitats (ie aquatic habitats designated as Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSI)) that are under significant threat from diffuse water pollution. For further advice on where this option should be used, refer to national and regional targeting guidelines.

This option will not be suitable:

- if it will have a damaging effect on sites of archaeological interest
- on sites with pests (eg rabbits, mink, thistles and ragwort) that are not under control, and that prevent land management or threaten the established vegetative cover

Where this option is used to buffer sensitive habitats, it may be combined with [SW14 - Nil fertiliser supplement](#).

How to manage the sward

- when preparing a seedbed, remove any subsoil compaction, except on archaeological features
- control weeds and cut regularly in the first 12 to 24 months of establishment to encourage grasses to tiller
- where cutting, avoid doing so when the soil is wet, to prevent compaction
- remove any cuttings that will otherwise damage the sward
- avoid supplementary feeding, except with mineral blocks

What to sow

The choice of grass species should be tailored to the soil type and cutting regime.

The following species will grow in most conditions and can form part of a basic grass seed mixture (however, cocksfoot and timothy should be used with care, as they are tussocky, vigorous and can become dominant):

- timothy
- cocksfoot
- crested dogstail
- red fescue
- smooth stalked meadow grass

The environmental benefits can be increased by adding wild flowers. Where adding wild flowers, applicants should ensure that the grass mixture is not too vigorous. Fairly robust flower species should be used, such as:

- ox-eye daisy
- black knapweed
- bird's-foot-trefoil
- common sorrel

### Catchment Sensitive Farming

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](#).



## **SW8: Management of intensive grassland adjacent to a watercourse**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the management of intensive grassland adjacent to a watercourse option.

### **How much will be paid**

£202 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on whole parcels on grassland that meets each of the following requirements:

- sloping fields that drain directly into a watercourse
- it receives more than 200kg/ha of nitrogen per year
- it is identified on the Farm Environment Record (FER) as at risk of soil erosion or surface runoff, or has been identified as important for buffering sensitive habitats

You must have support from a Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) officer to use this option and must also meet one of the following conditions:

- you are following a recommended fertiliser management system to plan nutrient inputs across the farm
- you plan to adopt a recommended fertiliser management system within 18 months of the start of the agreement
- you qualify as a low intensity farmer

### **Where this option cannot be used**

- On parcels within a severely disadvantaged area (SDA)

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

Reducing stocking density and fertiliser inputs on improved grassland will help reduce soil compaction, surface run-off and risk of diffuse pollution to the watercourse. Reducing surface runoff may help to reduce the risk of flooding. The

option may also reduce the risk of nitrate loss to ground and surface water if it is used with [SW14 - Nil fertiliser supplement](#).

## Requirements

You must:

- where it is necessary to reseed, establish a grass sward by 1 October using a seed mixture of at least 5 species (see the section “What to sow” below)
- from year 2, manage the sward by grazing or cutting to achieve an average sward height of between 5cm and 15cm in November
- where cutting, cut the sward after 15 July – remove all the cuttings
- exclude all livestock from 1 October to 15 March
- make sure that, by year 2, less than 10% of the area is bare ground
- make sure that any livestock manures you apply supply no more than 100kg of total nitrogen per ha per year - where you do not use livestock manures, you can use nitrogen fertiliser to supply no more than 50kg/ha of total nitrogen per year

Do not:

- use pesticides, except for herbicides to weed wipe or spot treat injurious weeds, invasive non-native species, nettles or bracken
- apply any manure or fertiliser between 15 August and 1 February

## Keeping records

You must send the following with your application:

- written support from a CSF officer

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at parcel level, including associated invoices
- stock records to show grazing activity on each parcel
- evidence that you are using a recommended fertiliser management system or that you are a low intensity farmer
- input records showing that the grassland has received more than 200kg of nitrogen per ha per year

## Related Mid Tier options

You can locate the following options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [SW14 - Nil fertiliser supplement](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### How to choose the right location

You should use this option in targeted areas to reduce diffuse water pollution. You can also use it to buffer sensitive habitats (that is aquatic habitats designated as Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSI)) that are under significant threat from diffuse pollution. For further advice on where you can use this option, read the national and regional targeting guidelines.

This option will not be suitable:

- if it will have a damaging effect on sites of archaeological interest
- on sites with pests (for example, rabbits, mink, thistles and ragwort) that are not under control, and that prevent land management or threaten the established vegetative cover

Where you use this option to buffer sensitive habitats, you can combine it with [SW14 - Nil fertiliser supplement](#).

### How to manage the sward

- Where you are required to reseed, remove any subsoil compaction except on archaeological features
- Control weeds and cut regularly in the first 12 to 24 months of establishment to encourage grasses to tiller
- Where cutting, avoid doing so when the soil is wet, to prevent compaction
- Remove any cuttings that will otherwise damage the sward
- Do not apply manure or fertiliser between 15 August and 1 February

- Avoid supplementary feeding, except with mineral blocks

## **What to sow**

Where you are required to reseed, tailor the choice of grass species to the soil type and cutting regime.

The following species will grow in most conditions and can form part of a basic grass seed mixture:

- timothy (use with care as this is tussocky, vigorous and can become dominant)
- cocksfoot (use with care as this is tussocky, vigorous and can become dominant)
- crested dogstail
- red fescue
- smooth stalked meadow grass

You can increase the environmental benefits by adding wildflowers. If you add wildflowers, make sure that the grass mixture is not too vigorous. Use fairly robust flower species, such as:

- ox-eye daisy
- black knapweed
- bird's-foot-trefoil
- common sorrel

## **Catchment Sensitive Farming**

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. You can find more information on [CSF support](#) online.

## **Further information**

See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **SW9: Seasonal livestock removal on intensive grassland**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the seasonal livestock removal on intensive grassland option.

How much will be paid

£88 per hectare (ha).

Where to use this option

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Whole parcel

Only on grassland that meets each of the following requirements:

- it drains directly to a watercourse
- it receives more than 100kg/ha of nitrogen per year
- it is identified on the Farm Environment Record (FER) as at risk of soil erosion or surface runoff, or has been identified as important for buffering sensitive habitats or species

Where this option cannot be used

- on parcels within a severely disadvantaged area (SDA)

How this option will benefit the environment

Livestock will be removed at particular times of the year from fields adjacent to a watercourse that are prone to waterlogging, compaction or poaching. This will help improve soil structure, reduce surface runoff and risk of diffuse pollution to the watercourse. Reducing surface runoff may help to reduce the risk of flooding.

Requirements

- exclude all livestock from the land for 5 and a half consecutive months during the period 1 September to 15 April; this must include excluding all livestock during the period 1 December to 15 March

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- stock records to show grazing activity on each parcel
- input records showing that the grassland has received more than 100kg of nitrogen per ha per year

### Related Mid Tier options

The following options can be located on the same area as this option:

- [OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland](#)

### Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

### Storing manures and moving livestock

Applicants should not:

- store manure on the site
- cause soil damage on other parcels by removing livestock from the site
- apply any fertilisers or manures from 15 August to 31 January

as doing so might breach cross compliance and other regulations.

## **SW10: Seasonal livestock removal on grassland in SDAs next to streams, rivers and lakes**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the seasonal livestock removal on grassland in SDAs next to streams, rivers and lakes option.

How much will be paid

£36 per hectare (ha).

Where to use this option

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Whole parcel

Only on grassland that meets each of the following requirements:

- permanent grassland that drains directly into a watercourse and is prone to waterlogging, compaction or poaching, where it is important to remove livestock during the winter
- in a severely disadvantaged area (SDA) and below the moorland line

How this option will benefit the environment

Livestock will be removed at particular times of the year from fields adjacent to a watercourse that are prone to waterlogging, compaction or poaching. This option will help enhance water quality by reducing the input of nutrients and sediment to streams, rivers and lakes caused by surface runoff and the leaching of nutrients from adjacent farmland.

Requirements

- exclude all livestock from the land from 1 October to 15 March

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices

- stock records to show grazing activity on each parcel

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- evidence that the parcel is prone to waterlogging, compacting or poaching and drains directly to a watercourse - the location of affected parcels can be marked on any map including the Farm Environment Record (FER)

Related Mid Tier options

The following options can be located on the same area as this option:

- [OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OR2 - Organic conversion - unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT2 - Organic land management - unimproved permanent grassland](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

Storing manures and moving livestock

Applicants should not:

- store manure on the site
- cause soil damage on other parcels by removing livestock from the site
- apply any fertilisers or manures from 15 August to 31 January

as doing so might breach cross compliance and other regulations.



## SW11: Riparian management strip

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the riparian management strip option.

How much will be paid

£440 per hectare (ha).

Where to use this option

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Part parcel

Only on land that meets each of the following requirements:

- it is located next to ditches, rivers or streams
- it is grazed

Where this option cannot be used

- adjacent to any other grassland option or adjacent to woodland
- on moorland or unenclosed land
- on designated open access land
- on Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSIs) unless approved by Natural England

How this option will benefit the environment

It prevents livestock access to the watercourse and provides a buffer strip. This will help reduce bankside erosion and the transport of pollutants to the watercourse. It will also provide habitat for wildlife and form links between other habitats. As the scrub develops, it may also help to shade and cool the watercourse.

Requirements

- keep livestock from the riparian strip, leaving no access the watercourse

- make sure the riparian strip is at least 4m wide, but not more than 12m wide
- control all invasive non-native species, such as Japanese knotweed, giant hogweed or Himalayan balsam
- cut only to control woody growth so that it does not exceed 80% of the total area

Do not:

- apply any fertilisers or manures
- apply pesticides, except for herbicides to weed wipe or spot treat injurious weeds, invasive non-native species, nettles or bracken

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- SSSI approval if required

Related Mid Tier options

The following options can be located on the same area as this option:

- [OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OR3 - Organic conversion - rotational land](#)
- [OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT3 - Organic land management - rotational land](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

How to choose a site

This option should be used in targeted areas to reduce diffuse water pollution, in particular where livestock access to the watercourse is causing a significant water quality issue.

### How to manage the strip

Use permanent fencing to exclude livestock from the strip and watercourse. Include a gate in the fence to provide access to the site for management. Capital grants are available in Mid Tier for a variety of fencing and water supply capital items.

High tensile wire should be used rather than netting if the fence alongside the strip is likely to be flooded. This will help to reduce the chance of debris snagging and therefore will withstand more flood pressure.

Invasive or non-native weeds should be controlled in a way that is not harmful to the stream.

Woody species such as alder, willow and sallow should be encouraged, but not permitted to cover the strip completely. Trees or scrub must be controlled if they start to dominate the strip. This should be carried out in small stages and patches by:

- making scalloped indents along the field or riparian edges
- cutting back isolated sections of larger trees

## SW12: Making space for water

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the making space for water option.

### How much will be paid

£640 per hectare (ha).

### How long this option lasts

This option lasts for 20 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme. This is because the work needs a high level of change.

### Where to use this option

It is available for Higher Tier on whole or part parcels on arable, temporary grassland or improved permanent grassland that meets all of the following conditions:

- the site, either alone or as part of a group application, forms a natural hydrological unit
- the Environment Agency have provided written support
- the site is identified in a relevant Site of Special Scientific Interest (SSSI) strategic river restoration plan, or [River Basin Management Plan](#)

To use this option you must also meet one of the following conditions:

- be following a recommended fertiliser management system to plan nutrient inputs across the farm
- plan to adopt a recommended fertiliser management system within 18 months of the start of the agreement
- qualify as a low intensity farmer

### Where this option cannot be used

- On land already receiving funding for Ecological Focus Areas (EFAs) declared for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS)

## **Features that can be included in this option**

Over the life of the agreement the features present on the land may change or move. The following features can be included even if they are not eligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- new areas of water (rivers, streams, becks and brooks, ponds, standing water), bare ground, cobble, gravel
- increased areas of water (rivers, streams, becks and brooks, ponds, standing water)

## **How this option will benefit the environment**

It will help water flow in a winding course across floodplains, flooding temporarily to restore river and wetland habitats. This will also reduce the risk of high energy flows and soil erosion, and allow water to drain freely back into the river channel.

If successful there will be:

- new areas of river and wetland habitats appearing, such as new channels, temporary ponds in old channels and wet grassland
- gradual erosion and movement of the river bed and river banks
- deposits of gravel, sand and silt appearing in the river channel and on the floodplain after a flood

## **Requirements**

You must:

- prepare the land to receive additional floodwater from the watercourse next to it and allow the river and water to move freely in the floodplain
- establish grassland
- follow grazing or cutting requirements, including exclude livestock at certain times
- limit manure and fertiliser applications

The agreement will set out what you cannot do. It is likely you will not be allowed to:

- use pesticides other than for control of injurious weeds or invasive species
- create new tracks for vehicle access
- undertake land forming and earthworks, works to river banks or bed, flood defences or bank protection and drainage works other than as set out in the agreement
- carry out supplementary feeding

## **Keeping records**

Before you apply, get advice from the Environment Agency and any consent or approval that you need. You do not need to send this with your application, but you will need to send it with your annual payment claim.

You must send the following with your application:

- a map of permitted access routes – you can mark these on any map, including the Farm Environment Record (FER)
- SSSI strategic river restoration plan or river basin management plan

You must send the following with your annual payment claim:

- support from the Environment Agency

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any bank statements, receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected to the work
- a record of all management activity on the option area for each parcel
- a monthly record of the numbers of livestock grazing each parcel
- photographs of works completed on shingle banks, river channels, flood defences or bank protection, or any completed land forming or earth works
- evidence that you are using a recommended fertiliser management system or that you are a low intensity farmer

## **Related options**

You can locate the following options and supplements in the same area as this option:

- [BE3 – Management of hedgerows](#)
- [OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP9 – Threatened species supplement](#)
- [WT3 – Management of ditches of high environmental value](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### **How to choose the right location**

In most cases you will need professional advice to choose the right location for this option. It is usually in areas where flooding and river movement is the most active. Marginal land next to river SSSIs that require restoration for river habitats and species is suitable. In some circumstances this option may be suitable for land next to priority habitat rivers.

You cannot use this option where there is an existing obligation to carry out the works or management required, for example as a planning condition or as compensation.

This options aims to restore natural river movement which in most cases is likely to make the land ineligible for BPS. You should check with the RPA before claiming BPS on the land under this option.

### **Consents and permissions**

You will need advice and relevant consents from the Environment Agency, Natural England and the local authority before you can carry out any work.

### **Feasibility studies**

You will need a Feasibility Study to assess the feasibility of restoring the river on the site. A feasibility study can be funded.

### **Capital works plan**

You will need a capital works plan to set out how to alter the current course of the river. It should include the engineering requirements to remove flood banks or

bank protection. Funding is available to help support the development of an implementation plan and to carry out major preparatory works.

### **Get help to carry out this option**

In some cases you may need to hire a specialist project or site manager to act as a clerk of works to help carry out this option.

### **Access routes and managing flood risk**

You may need new routes or bridges to access and maintain the site. Do not locate these where they will affect future river movement or temporary flooding. You must identify escape routes and refuge areas for people or livestock to use during floods.

### **Work with neighbouring farms**

You may need to work with neighbouring farms to manage land within the hydrological unit and make sure you can access the land.

### **Further information**

Whole-river restoration strategies have been developed for rivers designated as SSSIs. This option can be used to help implement them. Read more about [restoring designated rivers in England](#) on the River Restoration Centre website.

[River Basin Management Plans](#) are drawn up for river basin districts in England, Wales and Scotland as a requirement of the water framework directive.

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.



## **SW13: Very low nitrogen inputs to groundwaters**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the very low nitrogen inputs to groundwaters option.

How much will be paid

£251 per hectare (ha)

Where to use this option

Available for Higher Tier

Whole parcel

Only on improved grassland that meets each of the following requirements:

- the area receives more than 200kg of nitrogen per ha per year
- the area is specified as a priority Water Framework Directive (WFD) groundwater failure within the Countryside Stewardship targeting, for which this option is a priority
- this option must be applied to all land parcels within the target area

To use this option an applicant must also meet one of the following conditions:

- be following a recommended fertiliser management system to plan nutrient inputs across the farm
- plan to adopt a recommended fertiliser management system within 18 months of the start of the agreement
- qualify as a low intensity farmer

How this option will benefit the environment

It will reduce nutrient input to grassland in highly targeted locations to help slow or reverse nutrient levels in groundwater. This will be targeted to help specific designated sites and Water Framework Directive Protected Areas.

Requirements

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- graze or cut for hay or silage to get an average sward height of between 5cm and 15cm in November
- make sure bare ground covers less than 10% of the total area by year 2

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- plough, cultivate or re-seed
- supplementary feed except for the provision of mineral blocks (non-energy based)
- use pesticides or herbicides, except to spot-treat or weed-wipe to control injurious weeds, invasive non-natives, nettles or bracken
- apply manures or fertilisers except when the parcel is cut, and limit this to either 12 tonnes of well-rotted farmyard manure per ha per year or up to 50kg of nitrogen per ha per year

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected to the work
- records of all management activity on the option area for each parcel
- a monthly record of the number of livestock grazing the land
- evidence that a recommended fertiliser management system is used or evidence to support low intensity farmer claim

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

Related options

The following options can be located on the same area as this option:

- [BE3 – Management of hedgerows](#)
- [OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OR3 - Organic conversion - rotational land](#)
- [OT1 – Organic land management – rotational land](#)
- [OT3 - Organic land management - rotational land](#)
- [WT3 – Management of ditches of high environmental value](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

How to choose the right location

This option is only available in targeted areas. The targeting is restricted to specified areas to improve the quality of groundwater feeding into at risk (nitrogen-limited) designated sites and failing groundwater drinking water protected areas.

This option will also be restricted to areas where grassland is the major agricultural land use, ie at least 80% of land is grassland receiving more than 200 kg nitrogen per hectare per year.

## SW14: Nil fertiliser supplement

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the nil fertiliser supplement.

### How much will be paid

£131 per hectare (ha).

### Where to use this supplement

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on whole or part parcels:

- greater than 1ha
- in combination with either [SW7 - Arable reversion to grassland with low fertiliser input](#) or [SW8 - Management of intensive grassland adjacent to a watercourse](#)

You must have support from a Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) officer to use this supplement and must also meet one of the following conditions:

- be following a recommended fertiliser management system to plan nutrient inputs across the farm
- plan to adopt a recommended fertiliser management system within 18 months of the start of the agreement
- qualify as a low intensity farmer

### How this supplement benefits the environment

It helps to reduce the risk of nitrate loss to ground and surface water by reducing nutrient inputs to zero.

### Requirements

Do not:

- apply any fertilisers or manures

### Keeping records

You must send the following with your application:

- written support from a CSF officer

On your annual claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- evidence that you are using a recommended fertiliser management system or that you are a low intensity farmer

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

Catchment Sensitive Farming (CSF) operates in parts of the country where there are water quality issues linked to farming. The scheme provides farmers with free advice and training. See guidance for further information on [CSF support](#)

## **Further information**

See the [Mid Tier](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **SW15: Flood mitigation on arable reversion to grassland**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the flood mitigation on arable reversion to grassland option.

### **How much will be paid**

£488 per ha

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Higher Tier on whole or part parcels, only on arable or temporary grassland that meets all of the following:

- the site, either alone or as part of a group application forms a natural hydrological unit
- you have written support from the Environment Agency or Lead Local Flood Authority and where relevant Internal Drainage Board
- a Natural England adviser or a person nominated by NE has endorsed your application

### **Features that can be included in this option**

You can include the following features if they are part of the land, even if they are not eligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- ditches, dykes, drains and streams that are less than 4m wide for the majority of their length in the parcel
- natural unsurfaced roads, tracks, paths and bridleways, as long as the requirements can still be met
- bracken
- areas of scrub, rock outcrops, and boulders up to 0.1 ha

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It will intercept and slow surface runoff from rainfall events and provide space for water from streams and rivers to be stored during a flood event to help manage flood risk. It can be used in three ways:

- to slow down surface runoff on land outside the floodplain by creating temporary storage behind suitable structures such as low earth bunds and modified field-boundaries, or enhanced hollows and depressions
- to enable the re-connection of the river with the floodplain in areas that will not attract funding from an Environment Agency (EA) flood scheme or option [SW12 - Making space for water](#). Flood water will be allowed to spread across the land and naturally subside
- to reconnect the river and floodplain in association with specific Priority River Habitats and SSSIs where the Making Space for Water option is targeted

If successful there will be new areas of temporary water storage both in the floodplain and outside it that help delay peak flood flows reaching communities and infrastructure at risk of flooding.

## Requirements

You must:

- prepare the land to receive additional surface runoff or flood water
- establish grassland
- limit manure and fertiliser applications

Do not:

- use pesticides, including herbicides, except to spot treat or weed wipe or to control injurious weeds or invasive non-natives
- undertake land forming and earthworks, works to river banks or bed, flood defences or bank protection and drainage works other than as set out in the agreement

## Keeping records

Before you apply, you should contact the Environment Agency, Lead Local Flood Authority and where relevant Internal Drainage Board for advice and any consent/approval that is required. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit it with your payment claim.

You must send the following with your claim:

- written support from the Environment Agency, Lead Local Flood Authority and Internal Drainage Board (where relevant)

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with any work
- field operations at the parcel level including soil loosening to remove compaction, clearance of flood debris, de-silting of banded areas, reseeded
- dates and photographs of flooding
- NE endorsement
- photographs of the management undertaken

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. You should discuss and agree these requirements with your adviser.

## **Related options**

You can locate a number of other options and supplements on the same area as this option. You should discuss and agree these with your adviser

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### **How to choose the right location**

In most cases you'll need professional advice to choose the right location for this option. Each situation will have different priorities.

Slowing down surface runoff – a CSF Water Management Plan or a [PA1 Implementation Plan](#) may be sufficient. In complex applications you may need more advice, such as a [PA2 Feasibility Study](#). Your NE Adviser can guide you to possible sources of relevant advice.

You'll need a feasibility study for reconnecting the river and flood plain – this could be funded using [PA2](#) but could also be provided by another project. This study should explore the options and provide evidence for the recommended solution. You can use capital items where major preparatory works are required to restore a priority habitat or priority species.



You cannot use the option where there is an existing obligation to carry out the works or management required, for example, as a planning condition or as compensation.

You'll need a Capital Works Plan to set out how to alter the current course of the river. It should include the engineering requirements to implement the option.

## **Consents and permissions**

You will need advice and relevant consents from the Environment Agency for land adjacent to main rivers, Lead local Flood Authority for other land and the Internal drainage Board in your area.

## **Get help to carry out this option**

In some cases you may need to hire a specialist project or site manager to act as a clerk of works to help carry out this option.

## **Access routes and managing flood risk**

You may need new routes or bridges to access and maintain the site. You should not locate these where they will affect future river movement or temporary flooding.

Identify escape routes and refuge areas for people or livestock to use during floods.

## **Work with neighbouring farms**

You might need to work with neighbouring farms to manage land within the hydrological unit and make sure you can access the land.

## **Further information**

Whole-river restoration strategies have been developed for rivers designated as SSSIs. You can use this option to help implement them. You can read more about [restoring designated rivers in England](#) on the River Restoration Centre website.

Strategic Flood Risk Assessments are being developed for all land in England, contact your local EA Adviser for more information.

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.



## **SW16: Flood mitigation on permanent grassland**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the flood mitigation on permanent grassland option.

### **How much will be paid**

£256 per ha

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Higher Tier on whole or part parcels, only on permanent grassland that meets all of the following:

- the site, either alone or as part of a group application forms a natural hydrological unit
- the Environment Agency or Lead Local Flood Authority and where relevant Internal Drainage Board have provided written support
- a Natural England adviser or a person nominated by NE has endorsed the application

### **Features that can be included in this option**

You can include the following features if they are part of the land, even if they are not eligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- ditches, dykes, drains and streams that are less than 4m wide for the majority of their length in the parcel
- natural unsurfaced roads, tracks, paths and bridleways, as long as the requirements can still be met
- bracken
- areas of scrub, rock outcrops, and boulders up to 0.1ha

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It will intercept and slow surface runoff from rainfall events and provide space for water from streams and rivers to be stored during a flood event to help manage flood risk. It can be used in three ways:

- to slow down surface runoff on land outside the floodplain by creating temporary storage behind suitable structures such as low earth bunds and modified field-boundaries, or enhanced hollows and depressions
- to enable the re-connection of the river with the floodplain in areas that will not attract funding from an Environment Agency (EA) flood scheme or option [SW12: Making space for water](#). Flood water will be allowed to spread across the land and naturally subside
- to reconnect the river and floodplain in association with specific Priority River Habitats and SSSIs where the Making Space for Water option is targeted

If successful there will be new areas of temporary water storage both in the floodplain and outside it that help delay peak flood flows reaching communities and infrastructure at risk of flooding.

## Requirements

You must:

- prepare the land to receive additional surface runoff or flood water
- establish grassland
- limit manure and fertiliser applications

Do not:

- use pesticides, including herbicides, except to spot treat or weed wipe or to control injurious weeds or invasive non-natives
- undertake land forming and earthworks, works to river banks or bed, flood defences or bank protection and drainage works other than as set out in the agreement

## Keeping records

Before you apply, you should contact the Environment Agency, Lead Local Flood Authority and where relevant Internal Drainage Board for advice and any consent/approval that is required. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit it with your payment claim.

You must send the following with your claim:

- written support from the Environment Agency, Lead Local Flood Authority and Internal Drainage Board (where relevant)

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with any work
- field operations at the parcel level including soil loosening to remove compaction, clearance of flood debris, de-silting of bunded areas, reseeded
- dates and photographs of flooding
- NE endorsement
- photographs of the management undertaken

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. You should discuss and agree these requirements with your adviser.

## **Related options**

You can locate a number of other options and supplements on the same area as this option. You should discuss and agree these with your adviser.

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### **How to choose the right location**

In most cases you will need professional advice to choose the right location for this option. Each situation will have different priorities.

Slowing down surface runoff – a CSF Water Management Plan or a [PA1 Implementation Plan](#) may suffice. In complex applications you may need further advice, such as a [PA2 Feasibility Study](#). Your NE Adviser can guide you to possible sources of relevant advice.

Reconnecting the river and flood plain will need a feasibility study – this could be funded using [PA2 Feasibility Study](#) but could also be provided by another project. This study should explore the options and provide evidence for the recommended solution. Capital items may also be used where major preparatory works are required to restore a priority habitat or priority species.

The option must not be used where there is an existing obligation to carry out the works or management required, for example as a planning condition or as compensation.

You will need a Capital Works Plan to set out how to alter the current course of the river. It should include the engineering requirements to implement the option.

## **Consents and permissions**

You'll need advice and relevant consents from the Environment Agency for land adjacent to main rivers, Lead local Flood Authority for other land and the Internal drainage Board in their areas.

## **Get help to carry out this option**

In some cases you may need to hire a specialist project or site manager to act as a clerk of works to help carry out this option.

## **Access routes and managing flood risk**

You may need new routes or bridges to access and maintain the site. Do not locate these where they will affect future river movement or temporary flooding.

You must identify escape routes and refuge areas for people or livestock to use during floods.

## **Work with neighbouring farms**

You might need to work with neighbouring farms to manage land within the hydrological unit and make sure you can access the land.

## **Further information**

Whole-river restoration strategies have been developed for rivers designated as SSSIs. You can use this option to help implement them. Read more about [restoring designated rivers in England](#) on the River Restoration Centre website.

Strategic Flood Risk Assessments are being developed for all land in England, contact your local EA Adviser for more information.

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **TE1: Planting standard hedgerow tree**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the planting standard hedgerow tree item.

How much will be paid

£8.80 per tree.

Where the item is available

Available for Mid Tier, Higher Tier and hedgerows and boundaries grant

Where to use this item

In hedgerows on agreement land

How this item will benefit the environment

Hedgerow trees provide shelter, food, nesting sites and song posts, as well as stepping stones between woodland habitats, and make a valuable contribution to the landscape.

Requirements

- carry out work between 30 September and 31 March when the hedge is still dormant
- plant into gaps in the hedge - if there is no suitable gap then plant into a notch cut into the hedgerow
- plant each tree in a pit deep and wide enough to contain the full depth and width of the root system
- plant native species at least 2 metres tall
- plant trees in irregular spacing with at least 20m between them to allow for full crown development
- tag each tree with a brightly coloured durable material
- drive a clearly visible stake into the hedgerow on either side of the tree
- stake and tie each tree securely, using material appropriate to the size and species of the tree

- use rubber flexible and adjustable tree ties to prevent wind damage
- maintain stakes and ties until the tree is established
- remove ties when the tree is established and no longer needs support
- prevent livestock and wild animal damage
- control weeds until the trees have established
- replace any dead trees in the following planting season

Do not:

- plant beneath or within 20m of overhead power lines or other overhead and underground services
- let tree guards damage the growing tree

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- the date, location and method of any weed control undertaken
- the dates of planting
- details of age, height and species planted
- photograph of the location of where each tree will be planted
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- a record of where hedgerow trees are to be planted - this can be marked on any map including the Farm Environment Record (FER)



## Related Mid Tier items

This item can be used with the following items:

- [BN5 - Hedgerow laying](#)
- [BN6 - Hedgerow coppicing](#)
- [BN7 - Hedgerow gapping-up](#)
- [BN11 - Planting new hedges](#)
- [TE6 - Tree guard \(tube and mesh\)](#)
- [TE7 - Tree guard \(wood post and rail\)](#)
- [TE8 - Tree guard \(wood post and wire\)](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out the item successfully but does not form a part of the requirements for this item.

### Plant the trees

Planting should not be undertaken:

- during frost
- during a drought
- in waterlogged ground

When planting:

- only use native trees already present in the local area
- space the trees far enough to let crowns develop without competing or producing too much shade
- space far enough apart so the gaps between trees can be easily trimmed with a mechanical flail
- use irregular spacing to create a more natural landscape - look at the local landscape to see what is appropriate

### Make the trees visible

The biggest threat to young hedgerow trees is flailing. Hand-trimming a hedge 1m either side of young trees is an effective way to make them more visible. Also warn machine operators to look out for them.

## TE2: Planting standard parkland tree

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the planting standard parkland tree item.

How much will be paid

£24.50 per tree.

Where to use this item

Available for Higher Tier

- [WD4 - Management of wood pasture and parkland](#)
- [WD5 - Restoration of wood pasture and parkland](#)
- [WD6 - Creation of wood pasture](#)

How this item will benefit the environment

If successful new standard trees will be established in wood pasture and parklands, replacing lost trees or restoring sustainable populations.

Requirements

- plant each tree in a pit deep and wide enough to contain the full depth and width of the root system
- plant native species at least 2 metres tall with enough spacing to allow for full crown development
- replace dead trees in the following planting season
- carry out work between 1 November and 31 March
- stake and tie each tree securely, using material appropriate to the size and species of tree
- prevent wind damage by using flexible rubber and adjustable tree ties
- maintain stakes and ties until the tree is established
- remove ties when the tree is established and no longer needs support
- protect trees from livestock and wild mammals

- control weeds until the trees have become established.

Do not:

- plant trees beneath or within 20m of overhead power lines, or other overhead and underground services
- let tree guards damage the growing tree

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of the site where trees will be planted before works start
- the date location and method of any weed control undertaken
- the dates of planting
- details of age, height and species planted
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

Related items

This item can be used with the following items:

- [TE6 - Tree guard \(tube and mesh\)](#)
- [TE7 - Tree guard \(wood post and rail\)](#)
- [TE8 - Tree guard \(wood post and wire\)](#)
- [TE8 - Tree guard \(wood post and wire\)](#)

## TE3: Planting fruit trees

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the planting fruit trees item.

How much will be paid

£22.50 per tree.

Where to use this item

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only with:

- [BE3 - Management of hedgerows](#)
- [BE4 - Management of traditional orchards](#)
- [BE5 - Creation of traditional orchards](#) (Higher Tier only)

How this item will benefit the environment

It will ensure the continuation of fruit trees in hedgerows where it is characteristic of the local landscape.

Requirements

- apple, pear and cherry trees must be at least 2 years old and have a well-branched head supported by 2m of clear stem
- plum or damson trees must be at least 2 years old and have 1.5m of clear stem
- maiden fruit trees must be 1-year-old grafted trees with a single stem
- rootstocks must be:
  - M25 for apples
  - seedling pear for pears
  - Brompton or Myrobalan B for plums
  - F12.1 for cherries
- plant bare-rooted fruit trees between November and March, while they are not in leaf

- remove all grass and weeds in a 1m diameter circle around each tree station before planting
- plant the trees in a pit deep and wide enough to contain the full depth and width of the root system with room to spare
- make sure the tree's graft union is at least 75mm above ground level
- stake standard trees and tie them securely (maiden trees can be established successfully without staking)
- tie the tree to the stake above the grafting union so that it is held firmly upright but some movement is allowed
- use flexible and adjustable rubber tree ties to prevent wind damage
- maintain the stakes and ties until the tree is established, loosening the ties if they cut into the tree
- remove the ties once the tree is established and no longer requires support
- protect the trees from grazing animals
- make sure guards allow access to the tree for:
  - carrying out formative pruning
  - applying mulch
  - clearing vegetation around the base
- replace planted trees that die in the following planting season
- at the end of the agreement, there must be a living tree in good condition

Do not:

- fasten guards to the tree itself
- allow guards to cause damage to the growing tree

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of the planting location before works start

- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Related Mid Tier items

This item can be used with the following items:

- [TE6 - Tree guard \(tube and mesh\)](#)
- [TE7 - Tree guard \(wood post and rail\)](#)
- [TE8 - Tree guard \(wood post and wire\)](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out the item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

Weed control

Weed control is essential to successful fruit tree planting. To reduce competition for water and nutrients, keep a 1m diameter circle around the tree clear of all vegetation for at least the first 3 years after planting.

## TE4: Supply and plant tree

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the supply and plant tree item.

### How much will be paid

£1.28 per tree.

### Payment for creating new woodland

Successful applicants will get paid up to £6,800 per hectare (ha) if they are using this item to create new woodland.

### Payments for restocking after a tree health issue

Successful applicants will be paid if they're restocking woodland where trees have been infected by *Chalara fraxinea* or *Phytophthora ramorum*. They'll be paid up to the following amounts:

Restock tree species	Ancient woodland site	Other
Native	£3,500 per ha	£2,750 per ha
Non-native	£1,750 per ha	£2,250 per ha

Support is only available if trees are infected by *Chalara fraxinea* or *Phytophthora ramorum*.

The Forestry Commission or the Animal and Plant Health Agency (APHA) must confirm cases of *Chalara fraxinea*.

*Phytophthora ramorum* infected larch and sweet chestnut has to be confirmed by a statutory plant health notice (SPHN).

## **Where to use this item**

Available for Higher Tier

On:

- bare land (any land that has not been woodland for at least 10 years before the date of application)
- woodland (following felling due to a plant health disease)
- hedgerows

This item can be used to plant single trees, clumps of trees, hedgerows or woodlands.

## **Where this item cannot be used**

- if tree planting could damage areas of ecological, archaeological or historic interest
- to plant woodland for producing Christmas trees or biomass
- for restocking woodlands following a conditional felling licence (except where this has been issued for tree health reasons)
- to plant ash trees

## **How this item benefits the environment**

It will help create a range of environmental and social benefits that:

- supports wildlife, particularly when new woodland links habitats or creates a protective buffer
- reduces the risk of floods, improves water quality and prevents soil erosion
- is resilient and can adapt to climate change
- enhances the landscape

## **Requirements**

### **Prepare a woodland creation plan**

When creating new woodland agreement holders must prepare a woodland creation plan (included in the application) that states the:



- planting objectives
- species to be used
- planting density (the number of trees per hectare)
- percentage of open space and means of protection (fencing or individual tree guards as appropriate)
- areas to be planted and any areas of open space within the woodland (provide a map showing this information)

### **Creating or restocking woodland**

Follow the requirements set out in the following table if trees are being planted to create new woodland or restock woodland:

Dimensions	Create new woodland	Create new woodland to improve water quality or reduce flood risk	Restock after a tree health issue
Minimum agreement size	3ha	1ha	0.25ha
Minimum block size	0.5ha	0.1ha	0.1ha
Minimum width	20m	10m	20m
Minimum stocking density	400 stems per ha (sph)	1,600sph	400sph
Maximum internal open space	20%	20%	20%

Dimensions	Create new woodland	Create new woodland to improve water quality or reduce flood risk	Restock after a tree health issue
Maximum individual glade area (after canopy closure)	0.5ha	0.5ha	0.5ha
Maximum linear open space width (after canopy closure)	20m	20m	

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- supply, plant and weed young trees
- use tree species appropriate for the soil and climatic conditions that support the planting objectives
- select planting stock that complies with the [Forest Reproductive Material Regulations 2002](#) (where applicable) and is appropriate in size and stock type to site and prevailing conditions
- create a suitable planting position by spraying herbicide in advance, scarifying in lines or preparing a bare patch of land (screefing) with a spade
- use a planting method that helps survival, with roots fully inserted in the ground with the root collar at ground level - the tree must be firmed in without damaging the stem
- protect young trees by attaching a 0.6m spiral secured with a cane (first check and agree this with an adviser, not required for conifer planting)
- plant trees when dormant and attach the spiral guard immediately
- maintain spirals until the trees are big enough to no longer need protection

- stop livestock and other grazing animals from damaging the trees - use protective fencing or individual guards as needed (if using tree shelters, these will replace spiral guards)
- remove the spiral and cane when no longer needed and dispose of or recycle them in line with waste disposal regulations
- replace all dead plants in the following planting season (each grant funded tree must be alive and in good condition by the end of an agreement)

### **Keep trees weed-free**

Trees must be protected from competing weeds for 3 years, or until they are big enough not to be threatened by competition from weeds.

This can be done by using suitable mulch, an appropriate herbicide or weeding by hand. Follow relevant laws and codes of practice if spraying.

### **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- Forestry Commission Management Plan approval letter if required

A woodland creation plan is not required for planting:

- following a tree health issue
- single trees
- in hedgerows

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

## Related items

This item can be used on the same area as the following items:

- [FG1 - Fencing](#)
- [FG2 - Sheep netting](#)
- [FG4 - Rabbit fencing supplement](#)
- [FG5 - Fencing supplement - difficult sites](#)
- [FG9 - Deer fencing](#)
- [FG12 - Wooden field gate](#)
- [FG14 - Badger gate](#)
- [FG15 - Water gates](#)
- [TE5 - Supplement for use of individual tree-shelters](#)

Speak to a Forestry Commission adviser about locating other options on a site.

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

### Selecting tree species

Select a tree species for the site that suits the management objectives, local soil, and current and predicted climate conditions. Use the [FC tree species selection tool](#) to find the right species and estimate yield class.

### Further information

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **TE5: Supplement for use of individual tree-shelters**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the supplement for use of individual tree-shelters item.

### **How much will be paid**

£1.60 per unit.

### **Where to use this item**

Available for Higher Tier and Woodland Creation Grant

Only on woodland as a supplement to the tree planting capital item ([TE4](#))

### **Where this item cannot be used**

On its own or with any other option, supplement or item other than item TE4

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

It provides tree shelters to protect young, establishing trees from damage by browsing animals.

### **Requirements**

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- put up a tree shelter immediately after the tree is planted
- make sure each shelter is flush with the ground to keep out small animals such as mice and voles
- secure each shelter with a 25mm by 25mm wooden stake, placed in an upright position
- check shelters regularly, maintaining them until the tree or shrub is established
- design and support shelters so they last for at least 5 years

- dispose or recycle shelters and stakes according to relevant waste disposal regulations

The shelter protects trees from grazing animals and the height of the animal determines which shelter to use, for example for:

- roe, muntjac or chinese water deer use 1.2m shelters
- fallow, red or sika deer use 1.8m shelters
- hares and rabbits use 1.2m tree shelter or smaller if available

## **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- Forestry Commission Management Plan approval letter if required

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

## **Further information**

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## TE6: Tree guard (tube and mesh)

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the tree guard (tube and mesh) item.

How much will be paid

£4 per guard.

Where to use this item

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only on trees within a parcel managed with one of the following options:

- [BE3 - Management of hedgerows](#)
- [BE4 - Management of traditional orchards](#)
- [BE5 - Creation of traditional orchards](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [WD4 - Management of wood pasture and parkland](#)
- [WD5 - Restoration of wood pasture and parkland](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [WD6 - Creation of wood pasture and parkland](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [WD7 - Management of successional areas and scrub](#)
- [WD8 - Creation of successional area and scrub](#) (Higher Tier only)

Where this item cannot be used

With the following items:

- [TE7 - Tree guard \(wood post and rail\)](#)
- [TE8 - Tree guard \(wood post and wire\)](#)

How this item will benefit the environment

If successful this item will protect trees from damage caused by grazing animals and wild animals.

Requirements

- erect tree guards at least 1.5 metres high and made of a tree tube and stake
- use chicken wire to prevent animals from grazing or rubbing against the tree - barbed wire can be fastened around the chicken wire to provide extra protection.
- the design of the tree guard must allow access for:
  - carrying out formative pruning
  - applying a mulch
  - clearing vegetation around the base of each tree

Do not:

- fasten guards to the tree
- attach guards so that they rub against, constrict or damage the tree in any way

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of existing trees to be protected
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Related Mid Tier items

This item can be used with the following items:

- [TE1 - Planting standard hedgerow tree](#)
- [TE3 - Planting fruit trees](#)
- [TE2 - Planting standard parkland tree](#) (Higher Tier only)



## TE7: Tree guard (wood post and rail)

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the tree guard (wood post and rail) item.

How much will be paid

£59.50 per guard.

Where to use this item

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only on trees within a parcel managed with one of the following options:

- [BE3 - Management of hedgerows](#)
- [BE4 - Management of traditional orchards](#)
- [BE5 - Creation of traditional orchards](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [WD4 - Management of wood pasture and parkland](#)
- [WD5 - Restoration of wood pasture and parkland](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [WD6 - Creation of wood pasture and parkland](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [WD7 - Management of successional areas and scrub](#)
- [WD8 - Creation of successional area and scrub](#) (Higher Tier only)

Where this item cannot be used

With the following items:

- [TE6 - Tree guard \(tube and mesh\)](#)
- [TE8 - Tree guard \(wood post and wire\)](#)

How this item will benefit the environment

If successful this item will protect trees from damage caused by grazing animals and wild animals.

Requirements

- erect tree guards at least 2m high which have:

- 4 treated timber corner posts
- 5cm diameter top and middle rails
- a bottom rail if grazing animals are likely to get underneath the guard
- posts placed so that grazing animals cannot reach within 0.5m of the tree stem
- a single strand of barbed wire along the top rail to prevent animals rubbing against the guard
- sheep netting or 3 strands of taut plain or barbed wire should be fastened:
  - to the corner posts between the middle and top rails
  - between the middle rail and the bottom rail
- use sheep netting instead of barbed wire between the middle rail and the bottom rail if sheep are likely to graze the parcel
- the design of the tree guard must allow access for:
  - carrying out formative pruning
  - applying a mulch
  - clearing vegetation around the base of each tree

Do not:

- fasten guards to the tree
- attach guards so that they rub against, constrict or the damage the tree in any other way

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of existing trees to be protected
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Related Mid Tier items

This item can be used with the following items:

- [TE1 - Planting standard hedgerow tree](#)
- [TE3 - Planting fruit trees](#)
- [TE2 - Planting standard parkland tree](#) (Higher Tier only)

## TE8: Tree guard (wood post and wire)

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the tree guard (wood post and wire) item.

How much will be paid

£84 per guard.

Where to use this item

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only on trees within a parcel managed with one of the following options:

- [BE3 - Management of hedgerows](#)
- [BE4 - Management of traditional orchards](#)
- [BE5 - Creation of traditional orchards](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [WD4 - Management of wood pasture and parkland](#)
- [WD5 - Restoration of wood pasture and parkland](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [WD6 - Creation of wood pasture and parkland](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [WD7 - Management of successional areas and scrub](#)
- [WD8 - Creation of successional area and scrub](#) (Higher Tier only)

Where this item cannot be used

With the following items:

- [TE6 - Tree guard \(tube and mesh\)](#)
- [TE7 - Tree guard \(wood post and rail\)](#)

How this item will benefit the environment

If successful this item will protect trees from damage caused by grazing animals and wild animals.

Requirements

- erect tree guards at least 1.5 m high with posts placed far enough apart that grazing animals cannot reach within 0.5m of the tree stem
- the design of the tree guard must allow access for:
  - carrying out formative pruning
  - applying a mulch
  - clearing vegetation around the base of each tree
- tree guards need to be constructed in one of two ways, either:
  - with at least 3 treated timber corner posts, and top and bottom rails that are 5cm in diameter
  - with sheep netting attached between the top and bottom rails
  - increase the height of the guard if needed, using longer posts and an additional strand of wire strung above the sheep netting
  - wrap 2 strands of plain or barbed wire spirally around the guard to prevent animals from rubbing against it
- or alternatively:
  - use at least 2 stakes placed at least 0.5m apart
  - one stake must be at least 1.5m high, and the other at least 0.5m high
  - use strong weld mesh wire, at least 1.5m high, wrapped around and securely fastened to the outside of the stakes at least 0.25m from the trunk
  - to prevent the trunk rubbing against the metal, either bend the vertical strands of the wire mesh so they face outwards; or push a piece of rubber tubing slit lengthways on to the top of the wire circle
  - wrap 2 strands of barbed wire spirally around the guard to prevent livestock from rubbing against it

Do not:

- fasten guards to the tree
- attach guards so that they rub against, constrict or the damage the tree in any other way

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of existing trees to be protected
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs during and after work has been completed

Related Mid Tier items

This item can be used with the following items:

- [TE1 - Planting standard hedgerow tree](#)
- [TE3 - Planting fruit trees](#)
- [TE2 - Planting standard parkland tree](#) (Higher Tier only)

## TE9: Parkland tree guard - welded steel

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the parkland tree guard - welded steel item.

How much will be paid

£170 per tree.

Where to use this item

Available for Higher Tier

Only with:

- [WD4 - Management of wood pasture and parkland](#)
- [WD5 - Restoration of wood pasture and parkland](#)
- [WD6 - Creation of wood pasture](#)

Requirements

- install a tree guard in accordance with the specification agreed with Natural England
- provide sufficient clearance so that grazing animals cannot reach the stem of the tree

Do not:

- fasten guards to the tree itself
- allow guards to rub against, constrict, or cause damage to the tree

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable

- photographs of the trees to be guarded
- item specification, if required
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work
- a detailed specification if required

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

Using tree guards

Use metal tree guards to protect standard trees from vandalism, mowing, livestock and wild animals in parkland and areas with public access.

Use guards traditional to the area.

This item cannot be used to replace existing guards to maintain the parkland's character.



## TE10: Coppicing bankside trees

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the coppicing bankside trees item.

How much will be paid

£52 per tree.

Where to use this item

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only on trees along a streamside or riverbank that are not currently managed under a regular coppicing programme.

How this item will benefit the environment

The coppicing of bankside trees increases the longevity and health of these features, provides valuable habitat and habitat corridors in river valley and wetland landscapes and in the right location can help stabilise river and ditch banks.

Requirements

- coppice trees between 1 September and 1 March
- cut trees between 7.5cm and 15cm above ground level
- protect cut stools from livestock, deer and rabbits to allow re-growth
- control the growth of nettle, thistle, dock, ragwort and other weed species; any herbicide applications must be by spot treatment or weed wiping only

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable

- photographs of the trees to be to be coppiced
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

Picking the right location

This item can be used for individual or small groups of trees along a streamside or riverbank.

It can be used to bring trees into a coppicing programme or for the selection of single stems to grow on to become mature trees.

The short-term visual impact on the landscape should be considered when determining the percentage of trees to be coppiced along any stretch of watercourse.

Management

Angle cuts away from the centre of the crown when coppicing to allow water to run off.

Cut material can be disposed of by stacking in piles on site, removing it from the site, or burning. Leave material in as large pieces as possible and do not stack against the trees that have been cut.

Small branches and twigs (under 10cm in diameter) can be burnt on site provided trees are not damaged. Avoid disposal on sensitive habitats or historic features.

Fire sites should be a minimum of 10m from the canopy of any tree.

## TE11: Tree surgery

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the tree surgery item.

How much will be paid

£96.50 per tree when cutting limbs up to and including 20cm in diameter.

£200 per tree when cutting limbs over 20cm in diameter.

Where to use this item

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only:

- for tree surgery on mature, fully grown trees, with higher payment rate for where cutting of limbs over 20cm diameter is required (Note this item is not intended for use on bush orchard trees.)

Where the cutting of limbs of over 20cm diameter is required, the applicant must obtain a written assessment and advice on the work required from an appropriately qualified arboricultural expert, which addresses and is aimed at delivering:

- the intended outcome
- long term health and viability of the tree(s) to be cut
- any requirements for subsequent management

This item is not eligible on bush orchards. These are defined as intensively managed top fruit crops, including apples, pears, cherries and plums, grown on non-vigorous rootstocks.

How this item will benefit the environment

Maintain and enhance the character of the landscape by managing and/or restoring mature trees, to prolong their lives, and maintain their wildlife and/or historic value.

If successful, mature trees in danger of collapse will have been stabilised and established pollards will have been re-pollarded. In cases where it will

enhance the character of the landscape, new pollards will have been created on established trees with a diameter at breast height of less than 40cm (less than 20cm for oak and beech, as larger diameter trees are likely to fail).

## Requirements

- carry out tree surgery between 1 September and 1 March
- where cutting limbs over 20cm diameter, carry out the work in accordance with the advice received
- cut the tree cleanly at sufficient height to prevent grazing of re-growth
- only carry out first pollarding on trees with a diameter at breast height of less than 40cm (20cm for oak and beech)
- control injurious weeds as the site regenerates, but do not apply any pesticides within 10 m of the tree, except for herbicides to spot treat or weed wipe
- remove cut material from the site or tidy it into piles

Do not:

- use this item for work required for health and safety purposes

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- records of when the tree surgery was done and by whom, and details of any spot spraying or weed wiping
- photographs of the trees to be managed
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

How to manage the site

Tree surgery and working at height require specialist skills. Read more about useful [tree management and safety information](#) from the Forestry Commission (FC).

Advice from an appropriately qualified arboricultural expert should be sought – this is a requirement for all work that involves cutting limbs of over 20cm diameter, as is a written assessment.

When reintroducing pollarding on mature trees after a long gap, adopting some of the same techniques that are applied to veteran pollards should be considered - in a group of pollards, trial on an individual tree and/or leave longer stubs to test the response. Limbs that branch from below the height of the first pollard cut do not need to be cut.

Be aware that there is a separate option available in Higher Tier only, [BE6 - Veteran tree surgery](#).

Where practical, angle cuts away from the centre of the crown during tree surgery to allow water to run off. Cut material can be disposed of by stacking in piles on site or removing it from the site. Leave material in as large pieces as possible and do not stack against the trees that have been cut. Small branches and twigs (under 10cm in diameter) can be burnt on site provided trees are not damaged. Avoid disposal on sensitive habitats or historic features. Fire sites should be a minimum of 10m from the canopy of any tree.

Consents and permissions

Be aware that a number of consents and permissions may apply:

- the Tree Preservation Orders (TPOs) and Conservation Orders may apply to the trees on site
- old trees especially can host European Protected Species, such as bats

## TE12: Stump grinding

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the stump grinding item.

How much will be paid

£24 per stump.

Where to use this item

Available for Higher Tier

Only in conjunction with a management or restoration option where approved by a Natural England adviser.

How this item will benefit the environment

It is used to support habitat restoration and management by removing tree stumps that would otherwise restrict access for restoration or management works.

If successful stumps will have been cleared, there will be little or no ground disturbance and wood chippings will have been removed.

Requirements

- grind individual tree stumps down to ground level or below
- clean up the site after the works, including removal of wood chippings

Do not:

- allow works, including access routes, to compact soil

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable

- photographs of the stumps before works start
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

This item is only to be used where tree stumps are restricting access to the site for habitat restoration and management. It cannot be used for general tidying up where there is no impediment to the management of the site.

The objective is to clear stumps to ground level with minimum impact on the soil. Occasionally there may be a reason to grind stumps below ground level leaving a depression. Any such depressions can often be left - there are usually good reasons for not moving soil from elsewhere. Applicants must discuss and agree any infilling with soil with Natural England.

Wood chippings may occasionally be used as a mulch provided this has been agreed with a Natural England adviser.

## **TE13: Creation of dead wood habitat on trees**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the creation of dead wood habitat on trees item.

### **How much will be paid**

£175 per tree.

### **Where to use this item**

it is available for Higher Tier when the following conditions are met:

- on trees that are located on or adjacent to sites with existing populations of veteran trees
- where the land around the trees being treated is managed by cutting or extensive grazing
- where tree cover across the area where they are located does not exceed 25%
- on trees that will not impede or be impeded by the crown or canopy of existing veteran trees
- on trees that are of the same native species and genetic origin as existing native veteran trees in the same area

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

It promotes continuity in the provision of dead wood habitat to benefit rare or specialised wildlife where there is a generational gap between existing veteran trees and their successors.

If successful there will be deliberate ‘damage’ or ageing of younger trees in association with veteran trees where there is a generation gap in the recruitment of future veterans. This will mimic the natural damage caused for example by lightning strikes, branch failure and woodpecker holes, speeding up of the process of producing valuable wood decay habitats otherwise only found in very old trees.

### **Requirements**

You must:



- remove any existing scrub around the selected trees
- carry out the work as set out in an approved specification or implementation plan -conduct the work between 1 September and 1 March, using skilled labour
- cut trees at sufficient height to prevent grazing of re-growth
- make sure you can monitor the trees' response to cutting, by tagging each tree and taking and retaining before and after photographs and making them available to Natural England on request
- leave all mature and veteran standing trees and all standing and fallen deadwood
- keep the deadwood of any tree that dies following veteranisation work and plant a replacement tree of the same native species and genetic origin

Do not:

- use this item for work required for health and safety purposes

### **Keeping records**

Before you apply, you must get a written assessment and advice on the work required from a qualified arboricultural expert. The assessment must:

- lay out the intended outcome of the work
- explain how the long term health and viability of the trees to be cut will be maintained
- explain the requirements for subsequent management

You must send the following with your application:

- a map showing the location of mature and veteran standing trees and standing and fallen deadwood

You must keep the following records and supply them with your annual payment claim:

- photographs of the completed work
- a copy of the arboricultural assessment detailed above

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of the trees before works start
- records required of the work undertaken and details of the persons undertaking it and their qualifications

Please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

## Related options and items

You can use this item on the same area as the following options and items:

- [BE6 - Veteran tree surgery](#)
- [TE2 - Planting standard parkland tree](#)
- [TE7 - Tree guard \(wood post and rail\)](#)
- [TE8 - Tree guard \(wood post and wire\)](#)
- [TE9 - Parkland tree guard - welded steel](#)
- [WD4 - Management of wood pasture and parkland](#)
- [WD5 - Restoration of wood pasture and parkland](#)
- [WD6 - Creation of wood pasture](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### Picking the right trees

‘Veteranisation’ or the creation of dead wood habitat on trees could shorten the tree’s life. Only attempt this where there are enough trees to be left without such treatment and no late-mature trees to provide successors to any veterans. Never use this method on trees which may already be developing wood decay habitat, trees that already have important habitat, or trees where damage may become a safety issue such as in parks or towns. Any intervention still needs to be sufficiently small so that it does not pose an immediate threat to the tree, allowing it to survive for many years.

## Management

You can use a number of methods to encourage veteran features on younger trees including:

- cutting the tops of trees that are likely to respond to pollarding
- making holes in live standing trees to initiate rot
- deliberately damaging the bark to induce decay or simulate sap runs
- breaking branches, rather than saw them off flush, or create 'coronet' ends
- increasing water retention in forks and crowns of trees by drilling holes

You must seek advice from a suitably qualified arboriculturalist before you carry out any work. For more detailed advice on suitable techniques speak to your adviser.

## Planting new trees

If a tree dies following this work you must replace it with a tree of the same species and genetic origin. You must plant any replacement tree where there is enough room to grow an open crown.

## Consents and permissions

A number of consents and permissions may apply:

- the Tree Preservation Orders (TPOs) and Conservation Orders may apply to the trees on site
- old trees especially can host European Protected Species, such as bats

Follow the advice on the [VETree](#) website for creating veteran features.

## Further information

Read these useful guidance booklets for more information on managing ancient or veteran trees:

- [Ancient tree guides \(booklets 1 to 8\)](#)
- Lonsdale, D (ed) 2013, Ancient and other veteran trees: further guidance on management Tree Council

- [Read, H. 2000 Veteran trees: A guide to good management. Veteran Trees Initiative](#)

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## TE14: Identification of orchard fruit tree varieties

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the identification of orchard fruit tree varieties item.

How much will be paid

£29 per variety.

Where to use this item

Available for Higher Tier

Only with one of the following options:

- [BE4 - Management of traditional orchards](#)
- [BE5 - Creation of traditional orchards](#)

How this item will benefit the environment

If successful local and rare varieties of fruit trees will be identified which will help select varieties to be planted in orchard restoration projects.

Requirements

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- agree which specialist or organisation will identify the tree varieties
- have samples of fruit or leaves identified
- produce a map of the orchard showing the location of each species and variety identified

Samples can only be identified by:

- posting them to an organisation that provides a recognised fruit identification service
- getting a specialist to visit and identify the tree varieties at the right time of year for fruit or leaf identification

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- map of the orchard showing the location(s) of each species and variety identified
- specialist body record of identified species

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

## UP1: Enclosed rough grazing

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the enclosed rough grazing option.

How much will be paid

£39 per hectare (ha).

Where to use this option

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Whole parcel

Only on land above the moorland line within severely disadvantaged areas (SDA), on parcels less than 25ha in area - parcels must be enclosed.

When this option is targeted at ground nesting birds, parcels must have scrub cover of less than 1% of the area.

Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they're part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- bracken
- ditches
- dykes
- scrub including gorse bushes and briar
- scree, rock, outcrops or boulders
- streams less than 4m wide and that take up less than 1 ha of the parcel

How this option will benefit the environment

It maintains and enhances areas of enclosed rough grazing land within an upland farming system. This land contains extensive areas of moorland vegetation but it does not meet moorland priority habitat status over the majority of the parcel.

If successful there will be:

- benefits to moorland birds such as short-eared owl and ring ouzel
- improved breeding and feeding habitat for birds such as golden plover and redshank
- a mosaic of upland rough grazing habitats with diverse sward heights and extended areas of wet, marshy grassland vegetation
- any historic environment features (such as old walls) should be visible, with low dwarf shrub or grassy cover and no bare soil or sodden, trampled land (poaching)

## Requirements

- contain bracken and common gorse so that they do not spread to new areas of land
- control common gorse by cutting or burning in blocks
- maintain dwarf shrub coverage
- maintain scrub in discrete small patches, lines and occasional individual bushes scattered across the site:
  - where scrub cover is less than 5%, keep the full extent of well-established scrub
  - where scrub cover is more than 5%, keep scrub cover between 5% and 10% of the parcel area
- maintain a sward with a range of heights during the growing season so that at least 20% is less than 7cm high and 20% is more than 7cm high - no height variation needs to be maintained when the field is closed up for a cut of hay or silage
- only use machinery or allow other activities that might disturb breeding birds between 16 July and 14 March
- control dense rush by grazing or cutting every year so that stands of soft or hard rush do not cover more than 20% of the parcel area and sward heights are less than 20cm high by 30 September

Do not:

- use pesticides, except for herbicides to spot-treat or weed-wipe for the control of injurious weeds, invasive non-natives, nettles and bracken
- apply any lime, fertilisers or manures



- supplementary feed except for mineral blocks
- cut rushes between 15 March and 31 July
- cut more than half of the scrub in any year, except on historic and archaeological features
- use herbicides on ferns other than bracken
- plough, cultivate or re-seed
- carry out any drainage works, including modifying existing drainage, unless Natural England has given written permission before work takes place

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- records of all management activity on the option area for each parcel
- timings of herbicide or pesticide applications along with the product used and application rate
- burning and cutting dates and locations
- a monthly record of stock numbers grazing each parcel in this option
- any written agreements from Natural England for drainage works

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- a photographic record of the extent of dwarf shrub, bracken and gorse on the site

### Related Mid Tier options

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- [HS4 – Scrub control on historic and archaeological features](#)

- [OT6 – Organic land management - enclosed rough grazing](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

Pick the right location

Suitable land includes:

- uncultivated grassland
- unimproved pasture
- allotments that have been historically set aside for the grazing of animals
- steeper or less accessible parcels not routinely used for producing forage
- seasonally wet parcels
- parcels with naturally occurring flushes or rock outcrops

These parcels tend to have unimproved soils that support semi-natural vegetation, priority habitats or [species listed under the Natural Environment and Rural Communities Act](#).

Avoid damaging historic and archaeological features as these are particularly vulnerable in historically uncultivated parcels.

## **UP2: Management of rough grazing for birds**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the management of rough grazing for birds option.

### **How much will be paid**

£88 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on whole or part parcels which are permanent grassland parcels of at least 2ha and are within a Less Favoured Area. This includes allotments, intakes, newtakes and semi-improved in-bye that already support (or have the potential to support) breeding waders.

You must also meet at least one of the following conditions to use this option:

- are following a recommended fertiliser management system to plan nutrient inputs across the farm
- will adopt a recommended fertiliser management system within 18 months of the start of the agreement
- qualify as a low intensity farmer

In Mid Tier you can only use this option if it meets the relevant criteria. The land must also be mapped as Upland breeding bird areas for Countryside Stewardship, see the [MAGIC website](#).

### **Features that can be included in this option**

You can include the following features if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- ditches, dykes, drains, rivers, streams that are less than 4m wide for the majority of their length in the parcel
- temporary water
- natural unsurfaced roads, tracks, paths and bridleways, as long as you can still meet the requirements
- bracken

- areas of scree, rock outcrops and boulders – each area can cover up to 0.1ha
- permanent water up to 0.1ha
- grazed woodland and scrub that allows livestock access and has grass underneath

## How this option will benefit the environment

It is for restoring or maintaining upland bird populations. The option brings about water level management and provides the appropriate grassland habitat and sward structure for feeding and nesting.

If successful there will be rough grassland habitat supporting target species. Where appropriate, a water level management regime may also be in place, including scrapes and foot-drains. The water level management will also have enhanced pools or ditches for aquatic plants, invertebrates and other important species.

## Requirements

You must:

- manage the sward by grazing and/or cutting to maintain a varied sward to benefit upland waders by achieving a sward height of less than 5cm over 50% of the parcel area by 15 March
- only graze in line with an [agreed stocking calendar](#), which includes minimum and maximum stocking rates by grazing animal type by month
- manage scrub to achieve cover of between 1% and 5% of the parcel
- manage bracken and make sure bracken litter doesn't cover more than 25% cover across any area of bracken
- manage dense rush so that stands of soft or hard rush don't cover more than 20% of the parcel and the rush height is less than 20cm by 30 September
- manage field operations to reduce effects on breeding birds
- manage wet features to provide muddy areas for waders to feed
- agree all drainage works, including modification to existing drainage, in writing with Natural England before you carry out any work
- carry out a count of breeding birds in year 5 of the agreement and provide a third party record of this

Do not:

- supplementary feed except for the provision of mineral blocks (non-energy based)

## **Keeping records**

You must send the following with your application:

- a map of the extent of bracken on the option area - you can mark this on any map, including the Farm Environment Record (FER)

On your annual payment claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements and send the following:

- a count of breeding birds in year 5 of the agreement

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- photographs of the extent of bracken on the option area before works start
- a stocking calendar
- evidence that you are using a recommended fertiliser management system
- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels
- photographs of the management undertaken

## **Related options**

You can locate the following options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [BE3 – Management of hedgerows](#)
- [GS16 – Rush infestation control supplement](#)
- [OR2 – Organic conversion – unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT2 – Organic land management – unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT6 – Organic land management – enclosed rough grazing](#)
- [SP1 – Difficult sites supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP2 – Raised water level supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)

- [SP3 – Bracken control supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP4 – Control of invasive plant species supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP5 – Shepherding supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP6 – Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP7 – Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP8 – Native breeds at risk supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP9 – Threatened species supplement](#)
- [WT3 – Management of ditches of high environmental value](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### **Pick the right location**

Choose sites that:

- are open, with any surrounding hedges less than about 2m high
- experience minimal disturbance (from footpaths or public rights of way)
- have no overhead pylons or power lines
- have no in-field trees
- are not next to woodland
- have either an existing high water table or surface water attributes (flushes, ditches, foot drains), or where they could be created

### **Sites to avoid**

Avoid sites that are:

- steep (above 14:1, or 8 degrees)
- less than 2ha and bounded by tall (over 2m) hedgerows, scrub or trees

### **Vegetation management**

Tailor vegetation management to the target species - usually a range of vegetation heights is preferred.

## **Management of wet features (drains, grips, scrapes)**

Provide surface wet features from 1 March to 1 June (such as scrapes, flushes, foot drains or surface standing water). At least 50% of the wet features' edges should have exposed mud at the water's edge to promote invertebrate activity and allow chicks access to feed.

Consider the need to re-profile man-made wet features annually and maintain as required.

Any mechanical operations should be scheduled for the driest period of the year (or after mid-August if breeding snipe are present).

Manage soft and hard rushes so that they cover no more than 20% of the option land.

## **Grazing**

Use quiet stock on these sites to avoid unnecessary trampling of nests and chicks.

Adequate grazing and appropriate mechanical operations after the breeding season (August to March) are vital to create the desired vegetation mosaic for the following spring.

It is important that there is adequate grazing available which is not in breeding bird options to retain flexibility to manage the breeding bird areas correctly during the breeding season.

## **Further information**

See the [Higher Tier](#) or [Mid Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **UP3: Management of moorland**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the management of moorland option.

### **How much will be paid**

£43 per hectare (ha).

### **How long this option lasts**

This option runs for 10 years, not the standard 5 years for the scheme.

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Higher Tier on whole or part parcels, but only on parcels:

- above the Moorland Line
- that cross the Moorland Line
- that contribute to a single grazing unit above the Moorland Line
- that contain one or more moorland priority habitats or species
- above the stock-proof boundary of enclosed in-by-land that contain semi-natural moorland habitat vegetation (for example allotments, intakes or newtakes)

### **Features that can be included in this option**

You can include the following features if they are part of the land, even if they are not eligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- bracken
- ditches
- dykes
- scrub including gorse bushes and briar
- scree, rock, outcrops or boulders
- streams less than 4m wide and that take up less than 1ha of the parcel



- ponds less than 1 ha of the parcel
- unsurfaced roads, tracks and paths

## **How this option will benefit the environment**

It will:

- maintain and restore moorland priority habitats and ecosystem function
- maintain and restore species
- protect historic features
- strengthen landscape character

If successful there will be:

- improved condition of moorland habitats and associated species
- enhanced soil management
- reduced diffuse pollution
- improvements to water quality and flood risk management
- historic environmental features with no bare soil or poaching (trampling)
- stabilized and permanently re-vegetated areas that were previously eroded
- historic features unaffected by trees, bracken and scrub
- no animal burrows developing on historic features

## **Requirements**

You will probably need to:

- only graze the land in accordance with the stocking calendar
- stick to the minimum and maximum stocking rates for each month and for different types of grazing animal
- manage vegetation by burning or cutting, using agreed practices
- prevent spread of bracken or scrub on historic or archaeological sites
- carry out a wildfire risk assessment

The agreement will set out what you cannot do. It's likely you'll not be allowed to:

- plough, harrow or roll
- cultivate or re-seed
- apply any fertilisers, manures or lime
- apply supplementary feed other than as prescribed
- use pesticides other than as prescribed

### **Keeping records**

You must send the following with your application:

- a map of permitted access routes - you can mark these on any map, including your Farm Environment Record (FER)

On your annual claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- copies of the Wildfire Risk Assessment and, where required, the Wildfire Response Plan (agreed with fire service) and Wildfire Management Plan - for guidance and example plans see the [Uplands Management Group template](#) or [Forestry Commission's guide](#)
- records of all management activity on the option area for each parcel
- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- a stocking calendar approved by Natural England
- photographs of the extent of scrub and bracken on any historic and archaeological features on the site before works start
- a monthly record of stock numbers by parcel and stock type
- photographs of the extent of scrub and bracken on historic and archaeological features

The detailed requirements for this supplement will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. You should discuss and agree these requirements with your adviser.

## Related options

You can locate the following options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [BE3 – Management of hedgerows](#)
- [SP3 - Bracken control supplement](#)
- [SP5 - Shepherding supplement](#)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP8 – Native breeds at risk supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [UP4 - Management of moorland vegetation supplement](#)
- [UP5 - Moorland re-wetting supplement](#)
- [UP6 - Upland livestock exclusion supplement](#)
- [WT3 – Management of ditches of high environmental value](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### Contact organisations early

Make sure you contact Natural England or other relevant organisations well in advance of making your application.

### Further information

Read about the regulations on [burning heather and grass](#).

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## UP4: Management of moorland vegetation supplement

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the management of moorland vegetation supplement.

How much will be paid

£10 per hectare (ha).

Where to use this supplement

Available for Higher Tier

With the [UP3 - Management of moorland option](#).

Only when land is within the moorland line and Severely Disadvantaged Areas (SDAs) and where one of the following is needed:

- for the management of vegetation where additional interventions will be required, for example restoration burning or cutting followed by the addition of Sphagnum
- significant changes to vegetation management, to bring about favourable or recovering condition of designated sites or functionality of priority habitats and to benefit priority species

Where this supplement cannot be used

To support existing burning or cutting regimes, or minor modifications to them.

How this supplement will benefit the environment

It is for carrying out an appropriate programme of vegetation management to contribute to restoration and improvement in functionality of priority habitats such as dry heath, wet heath and blanket bog where significant changes to current management are required.

If successful there will be a significant change to burning and/or cutting management so that it is carried out to promote restoration of habitats. These changes will have created more diverse vegetation or opportunities

for colonisation by key species such as Sphagnum. There will also be positive impacts on water quality, reduced erosion and enhanced carbon storage.

## Requirements

Agreement holders are likely to need to follow a programme of management as agreed in [UP3 - Management of moorland](#).

## Keeping records

A valid Wildfire Risk Assessment and a Wildfire Response Plan (agreed with fire service) will be needed. For guidance and example plans see the [Forestry Commission's guide](#). Copies of the Wildfire Risk Assessment and, where required, the Wildfire Response Plan and Wildfire Management Plan will need to be submitted with the first claim.

The detailed requirements for this supplement will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

## Related options

This supplement can be located on the same area as the following supplements:

- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP5 - Shepherding supplement](#)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [UP6 - Upland livestock exclusion supplement](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this supplement

The following section gives advice on carrying out this supplement successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this supplement

## Pick the right site

On deep peat (blanket bog, other mires) and wet heath, this supplement should only be used when there is a clear need identified in a restoration

plan. Do not burn these habitats unless specified as part of a restoration plan or as part of an agreed wildfire management plan.

Other examples of where the UP4 supplement could be considered may include:

- re introduction of burning to dry heath habitats as part of a Site Restoration Plan (for example to control woody re-growth or manage fire risk)
- to create habitat conditions suitable for specific priority species
- to facilitate a switch from burning to cutting management as part of a Site Restoration Plan
- to improve management of western gorse heath by cutting as part of a Site Restoration Plan
- to implement fire risk mitigation planning as part of a Site Restoration Plan
- to encourage tailored management of vegetation on historic features

This supplement should not be used:

- on dry heath where burning or cutting are required to achieve economic outcomes. To introduce burning to wet heath or blanket bog habitat for any reasons other than as part of a Site Restoration or Wildfire Management Plan
- where burning or cutting would damage historic environment features
- on montane habitats or where damage to woodland or environmentally valuable scrub may occur
- to support the rotational burning of purple moor-grass on wet heath, but cutting may be appropriate

Taking care of historic or archaeological features

Sometimes these features may benefit from management that controls vegetation cover and in some cases burning is preferred to cutting. Avoid burning where heat may damage features such as boundary stones, or cutting where damage may be caused by machinery. Refer to the Management of Moorland option prescriptions and seek advice from the Natural England advisor. Do not cross historic or archaeological features with access routes for heavy machinery and vehicles.

## UP5: Moorland re-wetting supplement

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the moorland re-wetting supplement.

How much will be paid

£18 per hectare (ha).

Where to use this supplement

Available for Higher Tier

Only:

- with option [UP3 - Management of moorland](#)
- if a peat restoration programme has been started or completed

How this supplement will benefit the environment

It will maintain and restore vegetation mosaics, wetland habitats and associated wildlife.

If successful there will be:

- improved hydrology of moorland habitats
- benefits to upland flora and fauna, eg increased sphagnum moss growth
- benefits to historic features
- strengthened landscape character
- improved breeding habitat for invertebrates, a food source for grouse and wader chicks

Requirements

Agreement holders are likely to need to maintain blocks. Do this by making sure that:

- there are no breaches in the blocks

- excess water from the grip does not flow into the channel below
- excess water soaks into the ground, down slope from the grip
- no water - except natural peak surface water-flows between dams

Make sure in the re-profiled area that:

- bare peat has stabilised
- vegetation has established
- channel water levels are maintained at ground surface
- channels are actively silting up behind grip blocks

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- records of all management work including grazing, grip blocking and other re-wetting work
- any bank statements, receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- inspection reports and photographs of grips and blocks submitted annually with the claim
- records of maintenance work done to meet the requirements

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs showing the stabilised peat
- photographs of any excavation or construction work, if applicable

The detailed requirements for this supplement will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

Related supplements

This supplement can be located on the same area as the following supplements:



- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP5 - Shepherding supplement](#)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [SP10 - Administration of group managed agreements supplement](#)
- [UP3 - Management of moorland](#)
- [UP6 - Upland livestock exclusion supplement](#)

More than one supplement may be used if agreed with Natural England adviser.

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this supplement

The following section gives advice on carrying out this supplement successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this supplement.

Pick the right location

Good sites for this supplement are:

- deep peat soils that can support peat forming blanket bog vegetation
- Natural England's priority habitat for blanket bog
- restored areas with reduced grazing capacity due to re-wetting

## UP6: Upland livestock exclusion supplement

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the upland livestock exclusion supplement.

How much will be paid

£16 per hectare (ha).

Where to use this supplement

Available for Higher Tier

Only:

- with [UP3 - Management of moorland](#)
- where livestock are kept from the site for at least 4 months

How this supplement will benefit the environment

It will improve habitat and feature conditions.

If successful there will be:

- increased rates of heather regeneration
- improved rates of flowering of rare species such as spring gentian
- a regeneration of scrub such as juniper
- improved downstream water quality
- improvements in the condition and visibility of archaeological sites and other historic features

Requirements

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- only graze the land as scheduled in the stocking calendar, including a period of livestock exclusion
- agree where the excluded livestock should be kept and how they are managed

- stick to the minimum and maximum stocking rates for each month and for different types of grazing animal

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels
- a stocking calendar approved by Natural England

The detailed requirements for this supplement will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

### Related options

This supplement can be located on the same area as the following options and supplements:

- [SP3 - Bracken control supplement](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP5 - Shepherding supplement](#)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [UP4 - Management of moorland vegetation supplement](#)
- [UP5 - Moorland re-wetting supplement](#)

### Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this supplement

The following section gives advice on carrying out this supplement successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this supplement.

Natural England should agree that habitats and other features on this site will improve more quickly than under the current or common practice.

The supplement might finish before the end of the agreement if it is used for a period of restoration.

### Plan for livestock exclusions

Livestock exclusions will usually be done in winter, but some habitats are different.

Be aware of exceptions, which include removing livestock:

- from limestone grassland from May to August
- from limestone pavement areas for a specified number of years
- during bare peat restoration works for a specified number of years
- from September to April during dry or wet heath restoration

Erect fencing

Consider erecting temporary or permanent fencing if this is a part-parcel supplement, as it helps when removing stock from parts of grazing units.

## WB1: Small wildlife box

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the small wildlife box item.

How much will be paid

£28.50 per box.

Where to use this item

Available for Mid Tier

Only:

- with options [HS1](#) and [HS8](#) in Mid Tier (can be used in other circumstances in Higher Tier)
- for tree sparrow, dormouse, targeted bat species or invertebrate pollinators (these are the 'target species'), unless an RSPB, Buglife or Natural England specialist supports its use for another species
- when the other year-round target species' requirements (summer and winter foraging habitat) are being met on the holding or nearby

How this item will benefit the environment

It provides artificial nesting, roosting and hibernation sites for specific mammals, birds and invertebrates.

Requirements

Agreement holders will need to agree with Natural England a specification for the box. Each box should be sited in the agreed location and cleaned out in the autumn (October and November), unless it is a bee box, or hibernating or roosting bats are using it. Each box must be maintained in good condition, with any damage or losses made good during the agreement term.

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of the proposed site for the wildlife box
- the date that the nest boxes are cleaned out (unless used by bats or invertebrates)
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

Location

Keep the box in its original location, but if it is not being used after year 3, ask Natural England for relocation advice.

Dormice

Boxes should be:

- in ancient woodlands or large hedgerows - avoid isolated trees
- in batches of at least 10 (ideally over 50), spaced 10m to 20m at around 30 boxes per hectare
- 1.5m to 2m above the ground, and over 3m if public have access
- away from footpaths
- made of untreated timber
- based on the [PTES box construction guidance](#)

Tree sparrows

Boxes should be:

- on farm buildings or hedgerow trees, ideally near permanent water such as ponds
- away from places cats and squirrels can easily access, with a secure lid
- out of the midday sun
- weatherproof with small drainage holes in the floor
- made from wood at least 15mm thick with a 28mm entrance hole - follow the [RSPB](#) and [British Trust for Ornithology](#) guidance

## Bats

Boxes should be:

- large enough for a maternity colony to cluster to conserve heat
- dry, rainproof and draught-free, with no gaps where the sides and top join
- entered by a slit at the base (front or back) no more than 15mm to 20mm wide - follow the [Bat Conservation Trust](#) guidance
- preservative-free if made of wood
- out of the midday sun
- close to a hedgerow or tree line
- placed with other boxes facing in different directions to offer a range of temperature conditions

## Solitary bees

Boxes should be:

- in a dry, sunny and sheltered position on farm buildings, a post, or freestanding with a raised base to prevent rising damp
- near pollen and nectar forage
- 50cm by 50cm and 20cm deep, open fronted but with a back
- made of untreated timber
- weatherproof with small drainage holes in the floor
- contain at least four compartments, packed tightly with drilled hardwood blocks, bamboo stem sections and reed stems or paper drinking straws

## Further information

Bats and their roosts are protected under the Wildlife and Countryside Act 1981 - it is an offence to disturb, handle or kill bats. A licence from Natural England is needed to inspect bat boxes that have been or are being used by bats.



## WB2: Medium wildlife box

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the medium wildlife box item.

How much will be paid

£39 per box.

Where to use this item

Available for Mid Tier

Only:

- with options [HS1](#) and [HS8](#) in Mid Tier (can be used in other circumstances in Higher Tier)
- for tree sparrow (as a triple box) or for bats (these are the 'target species'), unless RSPB or a Natural England bird specialist support its use for another species
- when the other year-round target species' requirements (summer and winter foraging habitat) are being met on the holding or nearby

How this item will benefit the environment

It provides artificial nesting, roosting and hibernation sites for specific mammals and birds. This includes tree sparrow and targeted bat species.

Requirements

Agreement holders will need to agree with Natural England a specification for the box. Each box should be sited in the agreed location and cleaned out in the autumn (October and November), unless hibernating or roosting bats are using it. Each box must be maintained in good condition, with any damage or losses made good during the agreement term.

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work

- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of the proposed site for the wildlife box
- the date that the nest boxes are cleaned out (unless used by bats or invertebrates)
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

Each box must be maintained in good condition, with any damage or losses made good during the agreement term.

Location

Keep the box in its original location if it is being used. If it is not being used after year 3, ask Natural England for relocation advice. Boxes should be strapped to trees with wire and hose or rubber to prevent tree damage.

Tree sparrows

Boxes should be:

- in farm buildings or hedgerow trees, ideally near permanent water such as ponds or ditches
- away from bird feeders or places cats and squirrels can easily access, with a secure lid
- out of the midday sun
- weatherproof with small drainage holes in the floor
- made from wood at least 15mm thick with a 28mm entrance hole - follow the [RSPB](#) and [British Trust for Ornithology](#) guidance

Bats

Boxes should be:

- large enough for a maternity colony to cluster to conserve heat
- dry, rainproof and draught-free, with no gaps where the sides and top join
- entered by a slit at the base (front or back) no more than 15mm to 20mm wide - follow the [Bat Conservation Trust guidance](#)
- where bats are known to feed
- preservative-free if made of wood
- sheltered from strong winds and sun for at least part of day
- close to a hedgerow, tree line or other linear vegetation feature
- placed with one or two other boxes facing in different directions to offer a range of temperature conditions

Further information

Bats and their roosts are protected under the Wildlife and Countryside Act 1981 - it is an offence to disturb, handle or kill bats. A licence from Natural England is needed to inspect bat boxes that have been or are being used by bats.

## WB3: Large wildlife box

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the large wildlife box item.

How much will be paid

£100 per box.

Where to use this item

Available for Mid Tier

Only:

- with options [HS1](#) and [HS8](#) in Mid Tier (can be used in other circumstances in Higher Tier)
- for barn owls or kestrels (these are the 'target species'), unless there is support from the RSPB or a Natural England bird specialist for another species
- when the other year-round requirements (summer and winter foraging habitat) for the target species are being met on the holding or nearby

How this item will benefit the environment

This item provides artificial nesting and roosting sites for large birds, in particular barn owls and kestrels.

Requirements

Agreement holders will need to agree with Natural England a specification for the box. Each box should be sited in the agreed location and cleaned out in the autumn (October and November), unless hibernating or roosting bats are using it. Each box must be maintained in good condition, with any damage or losses made good during the agreement term.

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of the proposed site for the wildlife box
- the date that the nest boxes are cleaned out (unless used by bats or invertebrates)
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

Each box must be maintained in good condition, with any damage or losses made good during the agreement term.

### Location

This item can be used anywhere on the holding. Ideally it should be used with other habitat options such as moorland, rough grassland, boundary field margins, in-field or boundary trees, or historic buildings.

Keep the box in its original location if it is being used. If it is not being used after year 3, ask Natural England for relocation advice.

### Construction

Natural England will give location and design guidance as well as the specification, which is likely to include:

- box design and materials
- preferred location
- maintenance requirements

The Barn Owl Trust has [information on the best locations and how to construct a box](#) (kestrel boxes generally follow similar construction guidance). The [RSPB](#) also has information on barn owl and kestrel boxes.

The box should be at least 1km away from any motorway, dual carriageway or similar major road. It should have entrance holes:

- at least 100mm diameter or 100mm by 100mm square
- that are, ideally, 100mm by 130mm
- and are at most 150mm by 150mm (up to 210mm by 300mm for kestrels)

It should also:

- have a nest chamber floor area of at least 0.16 square metres (that is, sides at least 40cm x 40cm), ideally 0.2 to 0.4 square metres
- be at least 46cm from the bottom of entrance hole to the nest (but only 10cm for kestrels)
- have an external platform below the entrance hole or perch with enough room for an entire brood of owlets or young kestrels to exercise and await food deliveries
- be easy to clean
- have wire straps with hose, nylon bolts or aluminium nails to secure the box to the tree or building to prevent damage
- have its tree fixings adjusted each year so they do not cut into the growing tree or cause the box to 'explode' off the bolts
- be sturdy yet light enough to allow safe erection using basic equipment
- be covered with thick roofing felt if outside

## WD1: Woodland creation - maintenance payments

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the woodland creation - maintenance payments option.

How much will be paid

£200 per hectare (ha)

How long this option lasts

This option lasts for 10 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme.

Where to use this option

Available for Higher Tier and Woodland Creation Grant

The capital item [TE4 - Supply and plant tree](#) must be used with this option.

Where this option cannot be used

On land owned by public authorities; this includes land owned by the state, the Crown, county councils, district councils, and local authorities.

How this option will benefit the environment

It will help create woodland that:

- supports wildlife, by linking habitats together or providing a protective buffer between them
- reduces the risk of floods, improves water quality and prevents soil erosion
- is resilient and can adapt to climate change
- enhances the landscape

Requirements

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- keep all newly planted trees free from competing vegetation for 10 years by using approved herbicides, mulch, or a clearing saw, hook or scythe
- replace any trees that die
- maintain fences, tree shelters or spiral guards
- maintain areas of open space
- remove individual tree protection in year 10

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely successful applicants will not be allowed to:

- use any herbicides if trees are being planted on land next to a watercourse.

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- photographs showing the level of maintenance in years 2, 4, 6, 8 and 10 (submitted with the annual claim)
- a self-certification checklist after planting in years 4, 7, and 10, confirming that all the agreed operations have been carried out (submitted with the annual claim)
- any bank statements, receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- records of all management activity on the option area for each parcel

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

Agreement holders will need to carry out maintenance so that the woodland is fully established by year 10.



## **WD2: Woodland improvement**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the woodland improvement option.

£100 per hectare (ha) per year.

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Higher Tier

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It will improve the biodiversity of woodland and/or make it more resilient to climate change.

### **Requirements**

The agreement will set out the objectives and what you must do to achieve them. This will be based on a pre-existing Woodland Management Plan approved by the Forestry Commission.

You can only use this option on areas covered by the agreement. You cannot use it on other woodland areas also covered by the Management Plan. The specific compartments where this option will be used will be identified in the application process.

You must apply for this option under one of the following priority objectives:

- restore plantations on ancient woodland sites
- enhance priority habitats
- enhance priority species
- improve resilience to climate change through continuous cover forestry (CCF)

You must carry out sufficient and suitable requirements on the land, as informed by the Woodland Management Plan and as discussed with a Forestry Commission Woodland Officer. The requirements you can carry out are:

- reduce the percentage of coniferous species by year 5, as agreed with an adviser

- use regeneration felling where appropriate to encourage crown development and/or natural regeneration
- replant 1,100 trees per ha if native tree species haven't started to regenerate naturally 2 years after the removal of conifers, or conditions to support natural regeneration of native species are not in place (this is for areas larger than 0.25ha)
- manage successional scrub through cyclical cutting
- re-coppice as agreed with an adviser
- thin or selectively fell trees as agreed with an adviser
- implement silvicultural transformation as informed by the Woodland Management Plan
- monitor the presence of red and grey squirrels in red squirrel strongholds
- release existing or recruitment veteran trees from competing tree growth
- control deer if they are identified as a threat in the woodland management plan, put in place a deer management plan and manage deer populations using lethal control or fencing to allow establishment of ground flora and understory
- remove competing, non-native or invasive species by mechanical or chemical control, as agreed with an adviser
- create and/or manage permanent open space and access rides
- manage ride edges by cyclical cutting
- create or maintain appropriate levels of deadwood habitat in line with the UK Forestry Standard (UKFS)
- control grey squirrels using live or lethal traps if they are identified as a threat in the woodland management plan. In areas that also contain red squirrels, only live traps can be used. Shooting may be undertaken as an additional method of control.

## **Keeping records**

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any bank statements, receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work

- records of all management activity on the option area for each parcel, including an operational site assessment, or similar, to show UKFS compliant operational activities
- a Forestry Commission approved management plan that justifies the need for this option
- a Deer Management Plan in place by the end of the first year
- monitoring reports for year 3 and 5 of the agreement to confirm progress (for example providing before and after photographs, a record of the number of deer culled, and the results of squirrel monitoring)
- evidence of activities undertaken through monitoring, photography and marking

You can use [Forestry Commission Operations Note 50](#) to find information and tools to support the monitoring report, photo monitoring and information on deer management plans to help you meet your requirements under WD2.

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. You should discuss and agree these requirements with your adviser.

## **Further information**

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **WD3: Woodland edges on arable land**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the woodland edges on arable land option.

How much will be paid

£323 per hectare (ha)

Where to use this option

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only on arable land immediately adjacent to predominantly native or ancient semi-natural woodlands.

Where this option cannot be used

- on historic or archaeological features
- from 1 January 2019, on land already receiving funding for Ecological Focus Areas (EFAs) declared for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS)

How this option will benefit the environment

If successful a scrub and grass mosaic will develop through natural regeneration between the arable land and existing woodland. New woodland edge habitat will result in an increase in birds, invertebrates, small mammals and other wildlife.

Requirements

- allow the woodland edge to grow out for up to 6m
- only cut to maintain the scrub and grass mosaic and for the control of injurious weeds and invasive non-native species
- cut no more than a third of the shrubby growth in any one calendar year

Do not:

- use pesticides, except for herbicides to spot-treat or weed-wipe for the control of injurious weeds, invasive non-natives, nettles and bracken
- apply any fertilisers or manures
- supplementary feed
- cultivate within 6m of the woodland edge
- cut during the bird breeding season (1 March to 31 August)

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

Agreement holders should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

### Related Mid Tier options

The following options can be located on the same area as this option:

- [OR3 - Organic conversion - rotational land](#)
- [OR4 - Organic conversion - horticulture](#)
- [OT3 - Organic land management - rotational land](#)
- [OT4 - Organic land management - horticulture](#)

### Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

The woodland edge should be encouraged to grow 6m out into the field, forming a scrub and grass mosaic. This mosaic should not be allowed to

develop into secondary woodland, but should be maintained through controlled grazing and/or cutting.

The option should be placed adjacent to predominantly native woodland, in particular ancient woodland, which may be under active or passive management. It may be used to enhance woodland within the holding, as well as woodland that immediately borders but is not part of the farm.

The option is also eligible where a ditch runs between the woodland and the arable field. It may not be practical, however, if the ditch requires ongoing management or maintenance. Special care is needed to ensure that historic features such as woodbanks are undamaged.

The woodland adjacent to this option may receive funding under woodland options, but there must be no overlap. Buffer strip options may also be located adjacent to this option.

Be aware that the woodlands against which this option is placed may be home to European Protected Species, which could migrate into the scrub and grass land mosaic created. Young scrub, for example, is ideal habitat for dormice.

## **WD4: Management of wood pasture and parkland**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the management of wood pasture and parkland option.

### **How much will be paid**

£46 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier for managing existing lowland wood pasture and parkland in good condition. Recreational parkland is only eligible where it forms part of the farmed environment.

For Mid Tier the land must be mapped on the Priority Habitat Inventory as wood pasture and parkland, see [MAGIC](#).

In Mid Tier this option can only be used subject to eligibility checks.

### **Features that can be included in this option**

You can include the following features if they are part of the land, even if they are not eligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- rivers, streams, ditches, drains and dykes or any open water less than 4 metres (m) wide
- ponds or inland standing water less than 100 square metres
- unsurfaced roads such as tracks, paths or bridleways
- small areas of scrub and woodland that do not qualify for specific scrub, woodland or other options

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It will maintain existing lowland wood pasture and parkland on sites that still support mature and veteran trees.

If successful there will be many of the following, depending on whether the site is predominantly wood pasture, parkland or a combination of both:

- undisturbed standing and fallen deadwood that will provide habitats for invertebrates
- additional semi-mature or mature trees that will provide continuity of the tree population
- newly planted trees, spaced evenly with open crowns or patches of regeneration with space to allow open grown crowns to develop
- open grown scrub covering 10% to 20% of the wood-pasture
- flowering trees and scrub such as hawthorn, crab apple and wild pear that will provide food and nectar sources for wildlife
- well managed unimproved or semi-improved grassland or heathland, grazed by traditional cattle in wood pasture and deer and traditional cattle in parkland
- well-maintained historic and archaeological features
- well-maintained historic designed landscape planting features

## Requirements

You must:

- graze and/or cut to maintain area of closely grazed turf interspersed with taller tussocks
- keep all mature and veteran standing trees and all standing and fallen deadwood, provided that it is consistent with the National Tree Safety Group document [Common sense risk management of trees: landowner summary](#) - you must leave fallen dead wood uncut and in situ
- protect existing trees to prevent damage from livestock and wild animals - manage tree guards to prevent any damage to growing trees
- protect parkland features, such as fencing, historic structures, lakes and ponds
- maintain the current water regime and agree all drainage works, including modification to existing drainage in writing with Natural England before carrying out any works
- carry out maintenance works and minor repairs on structural historic or archaeological features on a 'like for like' basis to keep the character of the feature in its local setting



In Mid Tier, additional clauses may be included to refine the standard requirements. These will be discussed and agreed as part of the approval process.

Do not:

- use apply any fertilisers or manures
- use pesticides, except for herbicides to spot tree or weed-wipe for the control of injurious weeds, invasive non-natives, nettles or bracken
- plough, cultivate or re-seed
- use supplementary feeding
- harrow or roll
- allow damage to existing trees or vegetation or remove deadwood from the site

### **Keeping records**

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any bank statements, receipted invoices or permissions connected with the work
- photographs of structural, historic and archaeological features
- photographs of the management taken
- a monthly record of the number of grazing livestock in each parcel
- records of all management activity on the option area for each parcel
- photographs of the water feature, clearly showing its shape and design and all associated engineering features such as sluices, weirs, dams and other water control structures
- photographs of the water feature and surrounding buffers, clearly showing the extent of any areas of scrub, bracken or pernicious weeds
- photographs - before and after shots of all maintenance works and minor repairs that have been carried out

### **Related options**

You can locate the following options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [BE3 – Management of hedgerows](#)
- [BE6 - Veteran tree surgery](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [GS15 - Haymaking supplement](#)
- [GS16 - Rush infestation control supplement](#)
- [OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OR2 - Organic conversion - unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT2 - Organic land management - unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [SP1 - Difficult sites supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP3 - Bracken control supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [WT3 – Management of ditches of high environmental value](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### **Veterinary treatments**

Avoid applying veterinary treatments on grazing livestock wherever possible. Chemicals from these treatments could harm the insects and fungi that are typical of wood pasture and parkland.

### **Maintaining wood pasture and parkland**

On historic parkland, provide a detailed feasibility study (management plan) tailored to the site. This can be an existing plan or can be funded through [PA2 Feasibility Study](#) item.

Use grazing livestock, preferably traditional breed cattle in wood pasture or traditional breed cattle and deer in parkland, to maintain the site. Avoid compaction around veteran trees.

Continuity of veteran tree or dead wood habitat is a major concern on wood pasture. If sufficient semi-mature trees are present consider the creation of dead

wood habitat on trees capital item and encourage new trees through natural regeneration if possible or with planting.

## **Planting new trees**

Try to:

- space out newly planted trees (or patches of natural regeneration) so they are wide enough to grow an open crown
- pick trees that are suitable as eventual replacements for mature or veteran trees
- select tree species appropriate to the historic parkland design but consider varieties or provenances that are resilient to local climate change
- on wood pasture or a site with veteran trees maintain the genetic stock of the veteran trees on site - choose varieties that provide the same ecological wood decay conditions as mature or veteran trees already on the site

## **Consents and permissions**

Be aware that a number of consents and permissions may apply:

- the Tree Preservation Orders (TPOs) and Conservation Orders may apply to the trees on site
- old trees especially can host European Protected Species, such as bats

Read more about useful [tree management and safety information](#) and felling licences requirements from the Forestry Commission (FC).

## **Further information**

Read the following guidance booklets for more detail on managing ancient or veteran trees:

- [Ancient tree guides \(booklets 1 to 8\)](#)
- Lonsdale, D (ed) 2014, Ancient and other veteran trees: further guidance on management, Tree Council
- Read, H (ed) 2000 [Veteran trees: A guide to good management](#) Veteran Trees Initiative

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **WD5: Restoration of wood pasture and parkland**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the restoration of wood pasture and parkland option.

### **How much will be paid**

£244 per hectare (ha).

### **How long this option lasts**

This option lasts for 10 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme.

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Higher Tier to restore existing lowland wood pasture and parkland that is in poor condition. Recreational parkland is only eligible where it forms part of the farmed environment.

### **Features that can be included in this option**

You can include the following features if they are part of the land, even if they are not eligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- rivers, streams, ditches, drains and dykes or any open water less than 4 metres (m) wide
- ponds or inland standing water less than 100m square in size
- unsurfaced roads such as tracks, paths or bridleways
- small areas of scrub and woodland that do not qualify for specific scrub, woodland or other options

The advisor will provide information on which features can be included.

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It restores existing lowland wood pasture and parkland on sites that support veteran trees or parkland features.

If successful there will be many of the following, depending on whether the site is predominantly wood pasture, parkland or a combination of both:

- undisturbed standing and fallen deadwood that will provide habitats for invertebrates
- additional semi-mature or mature trees that will provide continuity of the tree population
- newly planted trees, spaced evenly with open crowns or patches of regeneration with space to allow open grown crowns to develop
- open grown scrub covering 10% to 20% of the wood pasture
- flowering trees and scrub such as hawthorn, crab apple and wild pear to provide food and nectar sources for invertebrates
- well managed unimproved or semi-improved grassland or heathland, grazed by traditional breed cattle in wood-pasture and deer and traditional breed cattle in parkland
- well-maintained historic and archaeological features
- well-maintained historic designed landscape planting and features

## Requirements

You must:

- graze or cut to maintain area of closely grazed turf interspersed with taller tussocks
- keep all mature and veteran standing trees and all standing and fallen deadwood, provided that it is consistent with the National Tree Safety Group document [Common sense risk management of trees: landowner summary](#) - leave fallen dead wood uncut and in situ
- protect existing trees to prevent damage from livestock and wild animals - manage tree guards to prevent any damage to growing trees
- protect parkland features, such as fencing, historical structures, lakes and ponds
- plant additional trees or encourage regeneration where required
- maintain the current water regime and agree all drainage works, including modification to existing drainage in writing with Natural England before undertaking any works
- carry out maintenance works and minor repairs on structural historic or archaeological features on a 'like for like' basis to retain the character of the feature in its local setting

The agreement will set out what you cannot do. It is likely you will not be allowed to:

- apply any fertilisers or manures
- use pesticides, except for herbicides to spot tree or weed-wipe for the control of injurious weeds, invasive non-natives, nettles, rushes or bracken
- use supplementary feeding
- harrow or roll
- allow damage to existing trees or vegetation or remove deadwood from the site

### **Keeping records**

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any bank statements, receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- photographs of all trees and standing and fallen deadwood
- photographs showing any areas where sward enhancement will be carried out
- photographs of water feature and surrounding buffers, clearly showing the extent of any areas of scrub, bracken or pernicious weeds
- photographs of structural, historic and archaeological features
- photographs of the management taken
- photographs of water feature, clearly showing its shape and design and all associated engineering features
- a monthly record of the number of grazing livestock in each parcel
- records of all management activity on the option area for each parcel
- photographs of all maintenance works and minor repairs that have been carried out (before and after shots are needed)

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. You should discuss and agree these requirements with your adviser.

## Related options

You can locate the following options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [BE3 – Management of hedgerows](#)
- [BE6 - Veteran tree surgery](#)
- [GS15 - Haymaking supplement](#)
- [GS16 - Rush infestation control supplement](#)
- [OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OR2 - Organic conversion - unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT2 - Organic land management - unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [SP1 - Difficult sites supplement](#)
- [SP3 - Bracken control supplement](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [WT3 – Management of ditches of high environmental value](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### Veterinary treatments

Avoid applying veterinary treatments on grazing livestock wherever possible. Chemicals from these treatments could harm the insects and fungi that are typical of wood pasture and parkland.

### Maintaining wood pasture and parkland

On historic parkland, provide a detailed Feasibility Study (management plan) tailored to the site, funded through [PA2 - Feasibility study](#).



Use grazing livestock, preferably traditional breed cattle in wood pasture or traditional breed cattle and deer in parkland, to maintain the site. Avoid compaction around veteran trees.

Continuity of veteran tree/dead wood habitat is a major concern on wood pasture. If sufficient semi-mature trees are present consider the creation of dead wood habitat on trees capital item and encourage new trees through natural regeneration if possible or with planting.

## **Planting new trees**

Try to:

- space out newly planted trees (or patches of natural regeneration) so they are wide enough to grow an open crown
- pick trees that are suitable as eventual replacements for mature or veteran trees on adjacent sites
- select tree species appropriate to the historic parkland design but consider varieties or provenances that are resilient to local climate change
- on wood pasture or a site with veteran trees maintain the genetic stock of the veteran trees - choose varieties that provide the same ecological wood decay conditions as mature or veteran trees already on the site

## **Consents and permissions**

Be aware that a number of consents and permissions may apply:

- the Tree Preservation Orders (TPOs) and Conservation Orders may apply to the trees on site
- old trees especially can host European Protected Species, such as bats

Read more about useful [tree management and safety information](#) felling licence requirements from the Forestry Commission (FC).

## **Further information**

Read these useful guidance booklets for more information on managing ancient or veteran trees:

- [Ancient tree guides \(booklets 1 to 8\)](#)

- Lonsdale, D (ed) 2013 Ancient and other veteran trees: further guidance on management, Tree Council
- Read, H (ed) 2000 [Veteran trees: A guide to good management](#) Veteran Trees Initiative

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **WD6: Creation of wood pasture**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the creation of wood pasture option.

### **How much will be paid**

£409 per hectare (ha).

### **How long this option lasts**

This option lasts for 10 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme.

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Higher Tier to create new wood pasture on one of the following sites:

- where wood pasture was once present, including ones under arable land
- where it extends, links or buffers existing wood pasture or priority woodland habitats

### **Features that can be included in this option**

You can include the following features if they are part of the land, even if they are not eligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- rivers, streams, ditches, drains and dykes or any open water less than 4 metres (m) wide
- ponds or inland standing water less than 100 square metres
- unsurfaced roads such as tracks, paths or bridleways
- scrub, woodland and other areas normally included in scrub or woodland options

The adviser will provide information on which features can be included.

## How this option will benefit the environment

It will create new wood-pastures.

If successful there will be:

- undisturbed standing and fallen deadwood providing habitats for invertebrates on land adjacent to that where the creation is being carried out
- newly planted trees, spaced evenly with open crowns or patches of regeneration with space to allow open grown crowns to develop
- open grown scrub covering 10% to 20% of the wood pasture
- flowering trees and scrub such as hawthorn, crab apple and wild pear that will provide food and nectar sources for wildlife
- enhanced grassland sward or heathland

## Requirements

You must:

- use grazing animals or cut to maintain areas of closely grazed turf interspersed with taller tussocks
- keep deadwood in or around standing trees, if any is present on site
- protect trees to prevent damage from livestock and wild animals. Manage tree guards to protect any damage to growing trees
- plant additional trees or encourage regeneration trees and scrub
- limit use of supplementary feed

The agreement will set out what you cannot do. It is likely you will not be allowed to:

- use pesticides, except for herbicides to spot-treat or weed-wipe for the control injurious weeds, invasive non-natives, nettles, rushes or bracken
- plough, cultivate or re-seed, except as part of an agreed sward enhancement programme
- harrow or roll
- apply fertilisers or manures

- make any changes to existing drainage without having written agreement from Natural England
- supplementary feed without agreement (except mineral blocks)

## Keeping records

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any bank statements, receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- a monthly record of the number of grazing livestock in each parcel
- records of all management activity on the option area for each parcel, including associated invoices
- photographs of each tree entered into the option
- photographs of trees and standing and fallen deadwood
- photographs of the management taken
- for sites that have previously been wood pasture, maps or photographs to show this

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

## Related options

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- [BE3 – Management of hedgerows](#)
- [BE6 – Veteran tree surgery](#)
- [GS15 - Haymaking supplement](#)
- [OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP6 - Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP8 - Native breeds at risk supplement](#)

- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [WT3 – Management of ditches of high environmental value](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### Veterinary treatments

Avoid veterinary treatments on livestock that graze on these sites. Chemicals from these treatments could harm the insects and fungi that are typical of wood pasture.

### Maintaining wood pasture

Use grazing livestock, preferably traditional breed cattle, to establish and maintain the site.

### Planting new trees

Try to:

- space out newly planted trees or regeneration so they are wide enough to grow an open crown
- pick varieties that are suitable as eventual replacements for nearby mature and veteran trees, ideally using the same genetic stock

Read more about useful [tree management and safety information](#) from the Forestry Commission (FC).

## Further information

Read the following guidance booklets for more information on managing wood pasture with ancient or veteran trees:

- [Ancient tree guides \(booklets 1 to 8\)](#)
- Lonsdale, D (ed) 2013, Ancient and other veteran trees: further guidance on management
- Read, H (ed) 2000 [Veteran trees: A guide to good management](#) Veteran Trees Initiative

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **WD7: Management of successional areas and scrub**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the management of successional areas and scrub option.

### **How much will be paid**

£74 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on whole or part parcels.

- where scrub cover makes up at least 10% of the area

### **Where this option cannot be used**

This option cannot be used:

- where there are historic or archaeological features
- on existing open habitats (where scrub can be included in a relevant option)
- where scrub would be out of character for the area

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It provides enhanced habitat for a wide range of wildlife and improves the quality of the woodland edge. It also helps prevent soil erosion and holds back water to reduce downstream flood risks.

If successful there will be:

- more scrub growing close to grassland, woodland and other habitats
- birds and invertebrates using the scrub
- less soil erosion in scrub areas
- reduced flooding in scrub areas

## Requirements

You must:

- keep livestock out of the option area from 1 October to 30 April
- only cut to maintain the scrub and grass mosaic and to control the spread of injurious weeds and invasive non-native species
- protect growing trees from livestock and wild animals
- make sure tree guards do not damage growing trees
- keep all mature and veteran trees and all standing deadwood, if safe to do so
- keep all fallen deadwood uncut and in place, stacked in piles
- agree all drainage works (including modifying existing drainage) with Natural England in writing before any works take place

Do not:

- cut more than one-third of shrub growth in any one calendar year
- cut during the bird breeding season (1 March to 31 August)
- apply fertilisers or manures
- plough, cultivate or re-seed
- harrow or roll
- supplementary feed
- use pesticides, except for herbicides to weed wipe or spot treat injurious weeds, invasive non-native species, nettles or bracken

## Keeping records

Applicants will have to send the following with their application:

- evidence of extent of scrub cover - you can mark this on any map including the Farm Environment Record (FER)

On your annual claim you must declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- a monthly record of the number of grazing livestock in each parcel



- a standard soil analysis carried out in the last 5 years, including analysis of organic matter by loss on ignition. The [rules for farmers and land managers to prevent water pollution](#) already require farmers and land managers to carry out soil testing on cultivated agricultural land - you can use these test results to meet the record-keeping requirements for this option
- any consents or permissions connected with this work
- photographs the management undertaken

## Related Mid Tier options and supplements

You can locate the following supplement on the same area as this option and supplement:

- [SP6 – Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [WD9 - Livestock exclusion supplement - scrub and successional areas](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### Pick the right location

This option works best where:

- there is some open ground among the scrub for grasses and non-woody plants to grow
- scrub is next to other habitats such as grassland or heath
- scrub is established by woodland edges
- scrub can hold soils together and slow down surface runoff

### Remove livestock

Remove grazing livestock to allow scrub plants to establish. Once established, stop scrub from becoming too dense by cutting on rotation, or grazing.

### Establish a variety of scrub

Establish a variety of scrub to provide habitats and food for target species. For example:

- gorse scrub can support birds like the Dartford warbler, stonechat, linnet and yellowhammer
- willow scrub in wetlands can support warblers, reed bunting and willow tits
- buds and berries and caterpillars on scrub are essential food sources for birds

### **Dead and fallen trees**

Leave any trees that die or fall in position, except where it is necessary to [remove them for health and safety reasons](#).

### **Further information**

See the [Mid Tier manual](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **WD8: Creation of successional areas and scrub**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the creation of successional areas and scrub option.

### **How much will be paid**

£87 per hectare (ha)

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Higher Tier on whole or part-parcels:

- on land next to existing scrub or woodland areas
- in areas already inhabited by target species

### **Where this option cannot be used**

- On historic or archaeological features
- On existing wildlife sites
- Where scrub would be harmful to the landscape

### **Features that can be included in this option**

You can include the following features if they are part of the land, even if they are not eligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- water-bodies that are less than 4 metres (m) wide
- unsurfaced roads such as tracks, paths or bridleways

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It regenerates a succession of scrub. This enhances habitats for specific target species and improves the quality of the woodland edge.

Establishing scrub growth also restricts soil erosion and holds back water to reduce downstream flood risks.

If successful there will be:

- more scrub growing close to grassland, woodland and other habitats

- birds and invertebrates using the scrub
- less soil erosion in scrub areas
- reduced flooding in scrub areas

## Requirements

You must:

- keep livestock out of the option area from 1 October to 30 April
- only cut to maintain the scrub and grass mosaic
- only cut to control the spread of injurious weeds and invasive non-native species
- protect growing trees from livestock and wild animals
- make sure tree guards do not damage growing trees
- keep all mature and veteran trees and standing deadwood
- keep all fallen deadwood in place uncut (although you can stack them in piles)
- graze to maintain the scrub and grass mosaic
- agree with Natural England in writing all drainage works, including modifying existing drainage, before any works take place

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely you will not be allowed to:

- use pesticides and herbicides except to spot-treat or weed-wipe to control nettles, bracken, injurious weeds or invasive non-native species
- cut more than one-third of shrub growth in any one calendar year
- cut during the bird breeding season (1 March to 31 August)
- apply fertilisers or manures
- plough, cultivate or re-seed
- harrow or roll
- use supplementary feed

## Keeping records

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels
- a standard soil analysis carried out in the last 5 years, including analysis of organic matter by loss on ignition. The [rules for farmers and land managers to prevent water pollution](#) already require farmers and land managers to carry out soil testing on cultivated agricultural land - you can use these test results to meet the record-keeping requirements for this option
- photographs of all trees and standing and fallen deadwood
- photographs of existing bracken
- photographs of scrub location
- photographs of the management undertaken

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. You should discuss and agree these requirements with your adviser.

## Related options

You can locate the following options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [BE3 – Management of hedgerows](#)
- [SP3 - Bracken control supplement](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP6 – Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP7 – Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly](#)
- [SP8 – Native breeds at risk supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [WD9 - Livestock exclusion supplement - scrub and successional areas](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

## **Pick the right location**

This option works best where:

- there is some open ground amongst the scrub for grasses and non-woody plants to grow
- scrub is next to other habitats such as grassland or heath
- scrub is established by woodland edges
- scrub can hold soils together and slow down surface runoff

## **Remove livestock**

Remove grazing livestock to allow scrub plants to establish. Once established, stop scrub from becoming too dense by cutting on rotation, or by grazing.

## **Establish a variety of scrub**

Establish a variety of scrub to provide habitats and food for target species. For example:

- gorse scrub can support birds like the Dartford warbler, stonechat, linnet and yellowhammer
- willow scrub in wetlands can support warblers, reed bunting and willow tits
- buds and berries and caterpillars on scrub are essential food sources for birds

## **Further information**

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **WD9: Livestock exclusion supplement - scrub and successional areas**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the livestock exclusion supplement - scrub and successional areas supplement.

### **How much will be paid**

£121 per hectare (ha).

### **Where to use this supplement**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier and can be used on whole or part parcels on land:

- containing mostly native species of trees and scrubs

When combined with:

- [WD7 - Management of successional areas and scrub](#)
- [WD8 - Creation of successional areas and scrub](#) (Higher Tier only)

### **Where this supplement cannot be used**

- For woodlands with an existing scheme to exclude livestock

### **How this supplement will benefit the environment**

It helps scrub to develop through natural regeneration.

If successful there will be:

- more scrub growing close to grassland, woodland and other habitats
- birds and invertebrates using the scrub
- less soil erosion in scrub areas
- reduced floods in scrub areas

### **Requirements**

You must:

- keep livestock away from the agreed area at all times
- submit an annual return to confirm that no livestock have grazed land under this supplement

### **Keeping records**

You must fill in an annual declaration on your payment claim form to confirm that no stock have grazed land under this option.

### **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this supplement**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

Once scrub has established, you can usually re-introduce grazing . This supplement may not be needed for the full duration of the agreement.

### **Further information**

See the [Mid Tier manual](#) or [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.



## WN1: Grip blocking drainage channels

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the grip blocking drainage channels item.

How much will be paid

£14.80 per block.

Where to use this item

Available for Higher Tier

Only where:

- grip blocking will contribute to restoration of priority habitats
- re-wetting can provide habitat for breeding waders
- the Environment Agency gives written support regarding impact on flood risk
- blocking of grips or drainage channels is included in an implementation plan or feasibility study agreed with Natural England

This item must be used with 1 of the following options:

- [UP2 - Management of rough grazing for birds](#)
- [UP3 - Management of moorland](#)

How this item will benefit the environment

It will maintain and restore moorland habitats, vegetation mosaics and associated wildlife. If successful there will be restored, re-wetted moorland and peatland habitats supporting target vegetation and species.

Requirements

Agreement holders are likely to need to block grips or drainage channels as agreed in the implementation plan or feasibility study ensuring:

- the blocks are wider than the grip and keyed into grip sides to prevent breaching and erosion

- the grips are blocked from the top downwards
- dams match the topography with varied positions at around 7m apart (but no more than 10m apart)
- the grips can fill to a water level above the base of the next dam higher up the slope
- the top of dams are slightly higher than ground level after installation and natural shrinkage, water then overflows away from the dam and soaks into the ground
- a very low ground pressure excavator with wide tracks is used when grip blocking

Inspect all grips and blocks ensuring that:

- there are no breaches in grips and blocks
- excess water from the grip does not flow into the channel below the block
- excess water across the moor soaks into the ground, down slope from the grip
- no water flows between dams except for natural peak surface water

Take photographs and write records of inspections.

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- damage surface vegetation
- expose bare soil or peat
- establish linear routes

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- a copy of the implementation plan or feasibility study, where applicable

- photographs of a sample (2%) of the sites that will be blocked
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Before applying, the applicant should contact the Environment Agency for advice and any consent/approval that is required. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit it with your payment claim.

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

Employ specialist contractors

Consider employing specialist contractors to do this work.

Pick the right location

Pick areas:

- where deep peat soils can support peat-forming blanket bog vegetation
- targeted by Natural England as priority habitat for moorland and blanket bog

Managing historic and archaeological features

Show the location of any features of historic or archaeological importance in the Implementation Plan to avoid damaging them.

Using vehicles and machines on site

Reduce machine damage by adding steps in the implementation plan to factor in:

- site access tracks
- the surrounding habitat
- the use of low pressure and appropriate machines

Further information

Information on the best ways to grip block different sites can be found on the [Yorkshire Peat Partnership website](#).

## **WN2: Creation of scrapes and gutters**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the creation of scrapes and gutters item.

How much will be paid

£2.80 per square metre.

Where to use this item

Available for Higher Tier

Only in locations agreed with a Natural England adviser.

Where this item cannot be used

On historic or archaeological features, unless consent has been given by a Natural England specialist or local Historic Environment Service

How this item will benefit the environment

Scrapes provide areas of bare ground, which may be designed to hold water in wet habitats or provide early successional areas in dry habitats. Gutters provide shallow channels to hold/transport water through wet habitats and provide feeding areas for waders.

Requirements

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- agree a detailed specification with Natural England for creating scrapes or gutters
- create the scrapes or gutters in accordance with this specification
- follow the implementation plan and complete it

Scrapes for waders and wildfowl

If creating scrapes for waders and wildfowl, agreement holders are likely to need to:

- locate them at least 100m away from hedges or tall trees, in the place shown in the specification
- carry out the work between July and November
- make sure the scrape has an irregular shape, to maximise the length of its edge
- grade the sides of the scrape so that There a gentle slope from the shallow margins (3cm to 5cm deep) to a maximum depth of 40cm to 50cm at the centre
- leave the surface of the scrape rough
- keep the scrape wet by using gravity feed or pumping between mid-November and June if groundwater or rainfall is low (as agreed with Natural England)

## Gutters

If creating gutters, agreement holders are likely to need to:

- create them in the places shown in the specification
- carry out the work between July and November
- make sure the gutters are at least 30cm deep and 1.5m wide, with gently sloping edges and shallow margins that are 3cm to 5cm deep
- connect the gutters to ditches with high water levels
- periodically isolate gutters from ditches where ditch water levels cannot be held high
- keep the gutters wet using gravity feed, water control structures or pumps (as detailed in the specification agreed with Natural England)

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- use spoil to fill hollows or low areas within the field or to form a bund or bank around the scrape or gutter
- place spoil on areas with high soil erosion or runoff potential
- create islands within scrapes
- carry out works when ground-nesting birds are present
- fence the scrapes and gutters

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- specification of agreed works
- photographs of site before works start
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work
- implementation plan or feasibility study if required

Before applying for this item applicants should obtain any consents required from Natural England or the Local Authority if on historic or archaeological features. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit any consents with your payment claim.

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

#### Related items

This item can be used on the same area as the following options:

- [WT6 - Management of reedbed](#)
- [WT7 - Creation of reedbed](#)
- [WT8 - Management of fen](#)
- [WT9 - Creation of fen](#)
- [GS9 - Management of wet grassland for breeding waders](#)
- [GS10 - Management of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl](#)
- [GS11 - Creation of wet grassland for breeding waders](#)

- [GS12 - Creation of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl](#)
- [GS13 - Management of grassland for target features](#)
- [GS14 - Creation of grassland for target features](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

What the specification should include

The specification will identify the purpose of the scrapes and gutters, and will be tailored accordingly. It should take account of site hydrology, soil type, botanical interest, archaeological and historic features, and landscape character. The shape, size, depth, location, methods, timing of the work, spoil disposal and ongoing management requirements should all be specified. Specialist advice may be required.

How to apply for consent

Consent may be needed from the local land drainage authority (such as the Environment Agency, Internal Drainage Board or local authority) to create scrapes or dispose of spoil. A waste exemption licence may also be required.

When not to use this item

This item should not be used to prevent soil erosion or runoff. The soil and water capital items should be used instead.



## **WN3: Ditch, dyke and rhine restoration**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the ditch, dyke and rhine restoration item.

### **How much will be paid**

£7.30 per metre (m).

### **Where to use this item**

It is available for Higher Tier if you send an assessment of the existing biological interest of the site (particularly related to protected species) with your application.

### **Where this item cannot be used**

For routine agricultural maintenance or to drain land prone to waterlogging.

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

It restores the wildlife value of overgrown or neglected ditches and helps to establish raised water levels for restoring or creating habitats.

### **Requirements**

You must:

- carry out the restoration work between 1 July and 28 February (the exact timing will be determined by the pre-application assessment)
- only re-profile or cut deeper than the original profile by agreement with the adviser
- if re-profiling, create a variety of depths in the channel, from 70 centimetres (cm) to 100cm, grading to a shallow, wet, marginal fringe
- if re-profiling, make sure the profile varies, with most of the slopes between 30 and 45 degrees
- work from one bank in an upstream direction, restoring only half the ditch in any one year
- restore one side of the ditch along its full length, or alternate 100m sections along both sides

- retain any in-channel features such as gravel beds, riffles and natural meanders
- create berms along the sides of the ditch
- secure material at the downstream end of the ditch during dredging or re-profiling to capture silt in the water, and remove this when any silt has settled
- place the spoil on top of the bank or in the field next to it, making sure that it is not used to fill hollows or low areas within the field
- make sure that the spoil is not placed on historic or archaeological features
- spread the spoil thinly to prevent a spoil bank from forming
- place all fences at least 1m away from the edge of the bank top

The agreement will set out what you cannot do. You probably will not be allowed to:

- reprofile or cut deeper than the original profile unless by agreement with the adviser
- fill hollows or low areas within the field with spoil
- place spoil on historic or archaeological feature

### **Keeping records**

Before applying for this item you should make sure you have any relevant consents, for example from the Environment Agency, Internal Drainage Board or Historic England. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you must send any consents with your payment claim.

You must keep the following records and supply them with your payment claim:

- any Environmental Agency, Internal Drainage Board or Historic England advice or consent if needed
- photographs of the completed work
- an assessment of the existing biological interest of the site, particularly related to protected species using the [Ditch, dyke and rhine restoration assessment form](#)

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work (in addition to the ones stated above)

- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. You should discuss and agree these requirements with your adviser.

Please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

## Related items

You can use this item on the same area as the following options:

- [WT6 - Management of reedbed](#)
- [WT7 - Creation of reedbed](#)
- [WT8 - Management of fen](#)
- [WT9 - Creation of fen](#)
- [GS7 - Restoration towards species-rich grassland](#)
- [GS8 - Creation of species-rich grassland](#)
- [GS9 - Management of wet grassland for breeding waders](#)
- [GS10 - Management of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl](#)
- [GS11 - Creation of wet grassland for breeding waders](#)
- [GS12 - Creation of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl](#)
- [GS13 - Management of grassland for target features](#)
- [GS14 - Creation of grassland for target features](#)
- [HS7 - Management of historic water meadows through traditional irrigation](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### Where to use this item

Use this item on ditches that have become silted up through neglect and have channels that need to be cleaned and banks that need to be reprofiled. Using this item will create a more varied habitat for wildlife.

You can also use this item to prevent the degradation of historic environment features and waterlogged archaeological deposits by helping to support high water levels.

### **Re-profiling ditches, dykes and rhines**

The profile of restored ditches, dykes and rhines should reflect the character of existing features in the local area.

### **Further information**

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## WN4: Ditch, dyke and rhine creation

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the ditch, dyke and rhine creation item.

How much will be paid

£8.40 per metre.

Where to use this item

Available for Higher Tier

Only in combination with one of the following management options:

- [WT6 - Management of reedbed](#)
- [WT7 - Creation of reedbed](#)
- [WT8 - Management of fen](#)
- [WT9 - Creation of fen](#)
- [GS7 - Restoration towards species-rich grassland](#)
- [GS8 - Creation of species-rich grassland](#)
- [GS9 - Management of wet grassland for breeding waders](#)
- [GS10 - Management of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl](#)
- [GS11 - Creation of wet grassland for breeding waders](#)
- [GS12 - Creation of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl](#)
- [GS13 - Management of grassland for target features](#)
- [GS14 - Creation of grassland for target features](#)
- [HS7 - Management of historic water meadows through traditional irrigation](#)

Where this item cannot be used

To create ditches that will lead to waterlogged land being drained or archaeological features being dried out.

How this item will benefit the environment

It aims to establish raised water levels to help restore or create habitats.

## Requirements

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- create a channel 70cm to 100cm deep, creating a variety of depths in it and grading to a shallow, wet marginal fringe
- make sure that the bank slope profile varies along the length of the ditch (most slopes should be between 30 and 45 degrees)
- create berms along the sides of the ditch
- place the excavated material on top of the bank or in the field next to it, making sure it does not fill hollows or low areas
- make sure the excavated material is not placed on historic or archaeological features
- spread the spoil thinly to prevent a spoil bank from forming

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- fill hollows or low areas within the field with spoil
- place spoil on historic or archaeological features

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Before applying for this item applicants should contact the Environment Agency for advice and relevant consents. Applicants may also need to obtain relevant consents from the Internal Drainage Board or Historic England. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit any consents with your payment claim.

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

Agreement holders should aim to create ditches, rhines or dykes that are characteristic of the local landscape.

## **WN5: Pond management (first 100 sq m)**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the pond management (first 100 sq m) item.

How much will be paid

£270 per pond.

Where to use this item

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only:

- on ponds of up to 1 hectare
- in combination with a pond buffer strip option, if the pond is next to cultivated land or intensive grassland
- for pond restoration, where an assessment of existing biological interest and historic features is submitted with the application

Where this item cannot be used

- to create ponds within 6m of a historic or archaeological feature identified in the HEFER
- within areas of wildlife habitat identified on the FER except with the written agreement of Natural England

How this item will benefit the environment

This item will create networks or complexes of at least 3 ponds and restore the wildlife value of ponds that have become degraded.

Requirements

Pond creation

- peg out the outline of the pond before excavations start, making sure that the pond has an irregular edge



- create a variety of water depths, from very shallow margins to pools of up to 1m to 1.5m deep and at least 7m by 7m square
- make sure that the majority of the margin is gently sloping, to create a large drawdown zone and extensive shallows
- use mechanical means or a weed wiper to control injurious weeds that colonise the spoil
- place any fencing at least 1m away from the bank top

Do not:

- link the pond to inflowing water from ditches and streams
- plant around the pond
- use spoil to form a mound or bank around the pond or to fill and level neighbouring wet areas
- dispose of spoil on historic or archaeological features as identified in the HEFER
- introduce any plants or animals to the pond, or feed wildfowl in or around it

Pond restoration

- carry out the work within the dates determined by the pre-application assessment
- remove woody cover from at least three-quarters of the pond margin, especially the southern side, so the pond receives the morning sun over a large area
- remove fallen trees and trees growing in the water to create open water
- keep features of historic or archaeological interest identified in the pre-application assessment
- remove sources of water pollution
- place cut vegetation far enough away from the top of the bank to prevent decaying material and run-off from falling in and polluting the pond
- use mechanical means or a weed wiper to control injurious weeds that colonise the spoil
- place any fencing at least 1m away from the bank top

Do not:

- re-profile or cut deeper than the original profile
- use spoil to form a mound or bank around the pond or to fill and level adjacent wet areas
- dispose of spoil on historic or archaeological features as identified in the HEFER
- use herbicides to control aquatic plants and bankside vegetation
- introduce any plants or animals to the pond, or feed wildfowl in or around the pond
- plant the pond banks following restoration, or plant trees or shrubs around the southern margin of the pond or anywhere around a pond within an open landscape

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs showing the pond (or the location of a new pond) before the works begin
- an [assessment of existing biological interest and historic features](#) for ponds to be restored
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the site during the different stages of construction or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed

Related Mid Tier items

This item can be used on the same area as the following items:

- [WN6 - Pond management \(areas more than 100 sq m\)](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

How to choose a site

Create ponds in low input, semi-natural habitats that have small catchments and are unconnected to other water bodies (to protect them from pollution). To encourage biodiversity, aim to create a variety of pond types (e.g. in depth, size and age) close to other freshwater habitats.

How to manage the site

Manage only part of the pond at any one time and always keep some of the existing habitat as it is including some of the leaf litter, logs and woody debris. If there are a number of ponds on a site, do not use the same management plan on all of them at the same time. Aim to maintain diversity in the pond complex. If the pond contains a protected species, a [wildlife licence](#) will be required.

## **WN6: Pond management (areas more than 100 sq m)**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the pond management (areas more than 100 sq m) item.

How much will be paid

£170 per 100 square metres.

Where to use this item

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only:

- on ponds of up to 1 hectare
- in combination with a pond buffer strip option, if the pond is next to cultivated land or intensive grassland

- for pond restoration, where an assessment of existing biological interest and historic features is submitted with the application

Where this item cannot be used

- to create ponds within 6m of a historic or archaeological feature identified in the HEFER
- within areas of wildlife habitat identified on the FER except with the written agreement of Natural England

How this item will benefit the environment

This item will create networks or complexes of at least 3 ponds and restore the wildlife value of ponds that have become degraded.

Requirements

See [WN5 - Pond management \(first 100 sq m\)](#)

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs showing the pond (or the location of a new pond) before the works begin
- an [assessment of existing biological interest and historic features](#) for ponds to be restored
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Mid Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Related Mid Tier items

This item can be used on the same area as the following item:

- [WN5 - Pond management \(first 100 sq m\)](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

How to choose a site

Create ponds in low input, semi-natural habitats that have small catchments and are unconnected to other water bodies (to protect them from pollution). To encourage biodiversity, aim to create a variety of pond types (e.g. in depth, size and age) close to other freshwater habitats.

How to manage the site

Manage only part of the pond at any one time and always keep some of the existing habitat as it is including some of the leaf litter, logs and woody debris. If there are a number of ponds on a site, do not use the same management plan on all of them at the same time. Aim to maintain diversity in the pond complex. If the pond contains a protected species, a [wildlife licence](#) will be required.

Further information

More information about [creating ponds](#) is available from the Freshwater Habitats Trust.

## WN7: Restoration of large water bodies

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the restoration of large water bodies item.

How much will be paid

Up to 100% of actual costs.

Where to use this item

Available for Higher Tier

Only:

- on Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSIs) with ecologically degraded water bodies of 1 hectare or more
- if other land management options are included in the agreement

How this item benefits the environment

It will restore the wildlife value of large water bodies that have become degraded.

Requirements

- agree a specification for the works with Natural England
- complete the works as set out in the approved specification and within the agreed timescale

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- photographs of site before works start
- item specification, if required
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is not available
- photographs of the completed work

Before applying for this item applicants should contact the Environment Agency for advice and any permits. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit any consents with your payment claim.

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

This item can be used to support the implementation of lake restoration plans. It may also cover one or more of the following:

- water management
- scrub management
- management of invasive non-native species
- fish removal
- bird control
- desilting

## **WN8: Timber sluice**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the timber sluice item.

How much will be paid

£315 per sluice.

Where to use this item

Available for Higher Tier

Only with one of the following management options:

- [GS7 - Restoration towards species-rich grassland](#)
- [GS8 - Creation of species-rich grassland](#)
- [GS9 - Management of wet grassland for breeding waders](#)
- [GS10 - Management of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl](#)
- [GS11 - Creation of wet grassland for breeding waders](#)
- [GS12 - Creation of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl](#)
- [GS13 - Management of grassland for target features](#)
- [GS14 - Creation of grassland for target features](#)
- [HS7 - Management of historic water meadows through traditional irrigation](#)
- [WT6 - Management of reedbed](#)
- [WT7 - Creation of reedbed](#)
- [WT8 - Management of fen](#)
- [WT9 - Creation of fen](#)

How this item benefits the environment

It will provide a simple mechanism for water level control, which will support raised water levels for restoring or creating habitats.

Requirements

- construct the sluice to the size and height agreed with Natural England
- use precut tongue and groove or chamfered boards, so that they fit tightly together and can easily be re-used or replaced
- drive the boards far into the ditch sides and ditch bed, so that the bottoms are at least 300mm into impermeable soil (failure to do this will cause leaks)
- make sure that the boards are long enough to raise the water to the desired level



- install a first board central to the ditch, making sure it is absolutely vertical
- drive in subsequent boards on either side of the central board and build towards each ditch bank
- make sure that the final boards are well keyed into the ditch banks (use horizontal timbers or 'string pieces' to prevent them from moving or spreading)

Alternatively, for seepage barriers agreement holders will need to follow these steps:

- construct the barrier using wooden slats
- make sure the slats are formed either vertically or horizontally (if they are less than 2m wide)
- leave a small gap of 2mm between each slat to allow the slow movement of water
- use posts to support and secure the slats
- make sure the vertically arranged slats stay in place by using horizontal timbers to brace them to posts on either side of the ditch
- once the vertical boards are in place, cut out an appropriately sized opening and screw metal channeling to each vertical edge so that it accepts sluice boards
- install a plank bridge across the back of the board tops on the downstream side
- secure the plank bridge firmly into the ditch banks (to strengthen the structure and allow access to the drop boards for adjustment)

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the site during the different stages of construction or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works
- photographs of the completed works in place and installed

Before applying for this item, applicants should contact the Environment Agency for any advice or consent and obtain any other relevant consents, for example from the Internal Drainage Board. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit any consents with your payment claim.

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

Use this item on drains, ditches and minor watercourses of appropriate, relatively small size. Use 'like for like' materials if replacing an existing timber sluice.

## WN9: Brick, stone or concrete sluice

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the brick, stone or concrete sluice item.

How much will be paid

£2480 per sluice

Where to use this item

Available for Higher Tier

Only in combination with one of the following management options:

- [WT6 - Management of reedbed](#)
- [WT7 - Creation of reedbed](#)
- [WT8 - Management of fen](#)
- [WT9 - Creation of fen](#)
- [GS7 - Restoration towards species-rich grassland](#)
- [GS8 - Creation of species-rich grassland](#)
- [GS9 - Management of wet grassland for breeding waders](#)
- [GS10 - Management of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl](#)
- [GS11 - Creation of wet grassland for breeding waders](#)
- [GS12 - Creation of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl](#)
- [GS13 - Management of grassland for target features](#)
- [GS14 - Creation of grassland for target features](#)
- [HS7 - Management of historic water meadows through traditional irrigation](#)

How this item will benefit the environment

It aims to provide a robust and substantial structure for water level control to support raised water levels for habitat restoration or creation.

Requirements

- agree a specification for the works with Natural England
- complete the works as set out in the approved specification and within the agreed timescale

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- any consents or permissions connected with the work
- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is unavailable
- photographs of site before works start
- item specification, if required
- please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them with the claim:

- photographs of the completed work

Before applying for this item applicants should contact the Environment Agency for any advice or consent and obtain any other relevant consents, for example from the Internal Drainage Board or Historic England. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to submit any consents with your payment claim.

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Higher Tier applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

### Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following section gives advice on carrying out this item successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this item.

Applications for consent will need to be supported by fully dimensioned drawings and the specification.

If the sluice replaces an existing one, materials and construction should reflect the original. Otherwise, choice of materials and construction should reflect similar features in the local area.

## **WN10: Construction of water penning structures**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the construction of water penning structures item.

### **How much will be paid**

Up to 100% of actual costs.

### **Where to use this item**

It is available for Higher Tier on sites where it is not possible to use standard soil bunds or sluices to raise water levels. You must use in combination with one of the following options:

- [GS9 - Management of wet grassland for breeding waders](#)
- [GS10 - Management of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl](#)
- [GS11 - Creation of wet grassland for breeding waders](#)
- [GS12 - Creation of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl](#)
- [LH1 - Management of lowland heathland](#)
- [LH2 - Restoration of forestry and woodland to lowland heathland](#)
- [LH3 - Creation of heathland from arable or improved grassland](#)
- [WD7 - Management of successional areas and scrub](#)
- [WD8 - Creation of successional areas and scrub](#)
- [WT6 - Management of reedbed](#)
- [WT7 - Creation of reedbed](#)
- [WT8 - Management of fen](#)
- [WT9 - Creation of fen](#)
- [WT10 - Management of lowland raised bog](#)

### **How this item will benefit the environment**

It will provide bespoke water penning or control structures to support raised water levels for restoring or creating habitats.

## Requirements

You must:

- agree a specification for the works with Natural England
- provide a minimum of 3 written quotations for the completion of the works, identifying associated costs
- complete the works as set out in the approved specification and within the agreed time period

### Keeping records

Before you apply for this item you should contact the Environment Agency to get any advice or consents needed. You must also get any other relevant consents, for example from the Internal Drainage Board. You do not need to provide this with your application, but you will need to send it with your payment claim.

You must send the following with your application:

- quotes for the completion of the work

You must keep the following records and supply them with your payment claim::

- receipted invoices, or bank statements where a receipted invoice is not available
- photographs of the site during the different stages of construction or contracts, invoices or other documents confirming the technical specification for the completed works
- any consents or permissions connected with the work

The detailed requirements for this item will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. You should discuss and agree these requirements with your adviser. Please see the record keeping and inspection requirements as set out in the [Higher Tier manual](#) for more detail.

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this item

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### How to apply for consent

You will need fully dimensioned drawings and the specification itself when you apply for consent.

## **Where to use this item**

This item can be used for raising banks, installing gauge boards or tilting weirs.

## **Further information**

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.



## **WT1: Buffering in-field ponds and ditches in improved grassland**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the buffering in-field ponds and ditches in improved grassland option.

How much will be paid

£201 per hectare (ha).

Where to use this option

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only on improved grassland next to ponds.

Where this option cannot be used

- on historic or archaeological features
- around ponds associated with industrial features such as effluent ponds, balancing ponds or small water supply reservoirs

How this option will benefit the environment

It protects ponds from nutrient leaching and runoff. This will maintain and enhance water quality and wildlife. If successful there will be:

- a grassy strip with a mix of grasses, flowering plants, scrub and trees
- a decrease in the amount of sediment and nutrient entering the pond

Requirements

- leave a 10m to 20m wide buffer strip next to the pond
- let tussocky grass and low scrub develop
- only cut to control the spread of woody growth

Do not:

- let scrub develop on more than half of the pond or ditch margin - the southern side of the pond must remain open
- let livestock poach more than a third of the pond margin

- use pesticides, except herbicides to weed wiper or spot treat for the control of injurious weeds, invasive non-native species, nettles or bracken
- apply any fertilisers or manures
- cut between 1 March and 31 August

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- evidence that the grassland is improved

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the strips

### Related Mid Tier options

These options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- [OR1 - Organic conversion - improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 - Organic land management - improved permanent grassland](#)

## **WT2: Buffering in-field ponds and ditches on arable land**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the buffering in-field ponds and ditches on arable land option.

How much will be paid

£501 per hectare (ha).

Where to use this option

Available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier

Only on arable land next to ponds.

Where this option cannot be used

- on historic or archaeological features
- around ponds associated with industrial features such as effluent ponds, balancing ponds or small water supply reservoirs
- from 1 January 2019, on land already receiving funding for Ecological Focus Areas (EFAs) declared for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS)

How it benefits the environment

It protects ponds from nutrient leaching and runoff. This will maintain and enhance water quality and wildlife. If successful there will be:

- a grassy strip with a mix of grasses, flowering plants, scrub and trees
- a decrease in the amount of sediment and nutrient entering the pond

Requirements

- establish or maintain a 10m to 20m wide buffer strip next to the pond in the first 12 months of the agreement
- let tussocky grass and low scrub develop
- only cut to control the spread of woody growth

Do not:

- let scrub develop on more than half of the pond margin - the southern side of the pond needs to remain open
- use pesticides, except for herbicides to weed-wipe or spot-treat for the control of injurious weeds, invasive non-native species, nettles or bracken
- apply any fertilisers or manures
- cut between 1 March and 31 August

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the strips

Related Mid Tier options

These options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- [OR3 - Organic conversion - rotational land](#)
- [OR4 - Organic conversion - horticulture](#)
- [OT3 - Organic land management - rotational land](#)
- [OT4 - Organic land management - horticulture](#)

## **WT3: Management of ditches of high environmental value**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the management of ditches of high environmental value option.

### **How much will be paid**

£37 per 100 metres (m) for the management of both sides of the ditch.

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Mid Tier and Higher Tier on ditches of high environmental value and ditches essential for the management of the following options:

- [GS9 - Management of wet grassland for breeding waders](#)
- [GS10 - Management of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl](#)
- [GS11 - Creation of wet grassland for breeding waders](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [GS12 - Creation of wet grassland for wintering waders and wildfowl](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [UP2 - Management of rough grazing for birds](#)
- [WT6 - Management of reedbed](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [WT7 - Creation of reedbed](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [WT8 - Management of fen](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [WT9 - Creation of fen](#) (Higher Tier only)
- [WT10 - Management of lowland raised bog](#) (Higher Tier only)

In Mid Tier you can only use this option if it meets the relevant criteria, you have written approval from RPA and only with options GS9 and GS10.

### **Features that can be included in this option**

You can include the following features if they are part of the land, even if they are not eligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- ditches
- dykes

- drains

## **How this option will benefit the environment**

It will manage ditches of high environmental value that support target species of plants, birds, mammals and invertebrates. It will also manage ditches that are essential to carrying out the wet grassland and wetland options.

## **Requirements**

You must:

- manage ditches and banks in a suitable manner between 1 September and 31 March
- leave one bank or section of the ditch unmanaged, as a refuge for plants and invertebrates
- dispose of spoil in an appropriate manner
- control invasive non-native species, if they're present
- manage ditch water levels appropriately

In Mid Tier, additional clauses may be included to refine the standard requirements. These will be discussed and agreed as part of the approval process.

Do not:

- re-profile or increase the width or depth of the ditch
- use spoil to fill hollows or low areas within the field, or place spoil on historic or archaeological features
- managing all the ditches in any one year
- fence off ditches

## **Keeping records**

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- photographs of the ditch

## Related options

If the ditch is partly located on a neighbouring parcel of land, you can use this option with any whole-field options or supplements that can be used on that parcel.

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

### What to do if the work is complex

Maintain a variety of successional stages within the ditch network. These may range from open water to well-developed aquatic plant communities. Draw up an implementation plan specific to the site if the work proposed is particularly complex.

### How to manage the ditches

Manage the ditches in a way appropriate to their scale, number and local area (methods of ditch management vary across the country).

### Using the option on one side of a ditch

Normally use this option on both sides of a ditch. However, where control is limited to one side of a ditch, use this option if it will bring about the objectives.

### Restoring ditches

Restore ditches covered by this option with funding from the appropriate ditch restoration capital item. However, you will need to agree this with Natural England first.

### Protected species

If the ditch contains a protected species, you will need a [wildlife licence](#).

## Further information

See the [Higher Tier](#) or [Mid Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **WT4: Pond management – first 100 sq m**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the pond management – first 100 square metres (sq m) option.

### **How much will be paid**

£103 per pond.

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Higher Tier:

- on priority ponds (these are defined on the [Freshwater Habitats Trust](#) website)
- on other ponds with flora and fauna of nature conservation importance, good quality water and natural water levels
- when the neighbouring land is under a management option that restricts fertilisers, manures and pesticides

### **Where this option cannot be used**

In combination with pond management capital items.

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It will protect and enhance small ponds of high wildlife value.

### **Requirements**

You must:

- manage vegetation in the pond
- control scrub and invasive non-native plants
- retain overhanging trees, bushes and deadwood
- graze or cut the margins of the pond
- carry out the work within the dates agreed with the adviser
- maintain clear, unpolluted water



- maintain the current water regime

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely you will not be allowed to:

- introduce any plants or animals (including fish and waterfowl) to the pond
- deepen or change the original profile of the pond
- infill the pond

## **Keeping records**

You must keep keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- photographs of the pond

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. You should discuss and agree these requirements with your adviser.

## **Related options**

You can locate these options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)

## **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

To avoid damaging the pond:

- survey it to check which species are present
- if the pond contains a protected species, you will need a [wildlife licence](#)
- only manage one section of it at a time
- keep some of the existing habitat
- keep some of the leaf litter, logs and woody debris

- aim to maintain diversity in the pond complex - if there are several ponds on the site, don't carry out the same management on all of them at the same time

## **Further information**

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **WT5: Pond management (areas more than 100 sq m)**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the pond management (areas more than 100 square metres (sq m)) option.

### **How much will be paid**

£183 per pond.

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Higher Tier:

- on priority ponds (these are defined on the [Freshwater Habitats Trust](#) website)
- on other ponds with flora and fauna of nature conservation importance, good quality water, and natural water levels
- when the neighbouring land is under a management option that restricts fertilisers, manures and pesticides

### **Where this option cannot be used**

- In combination with pond management capital items
- On ponds of area less than 100 sq m or greater than 1 ha

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It will protect and enhance larger ponds of high wildlife value.

### **Requirements**

You must:

- manage vegetation in the pond
- control scrub and invasive non-native plants
- retain overhanging trees and bushes and deadwood
- graze or cut the margins of the pond

- carry out the work within the dates agreed with the adviser
- maintain clear, unpolluted water
- maintain the current water regime

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely you will not be allowed to:

- introduce any plants or animals (including fish and waterfowl) to the pond
- deepen or change the original profile of the pond
- infill the pond

### **Keeping records**

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices
- photographs of the pond

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. You should discuss and agree these requirements with your adviser.

### **Related supplements**

You can locate the following supplements on the same area as this option:

- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)

### **Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option**

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

To avoid damaging the pond:

- survey it to check which species are present
- if the pond contains a protected species, you will need a [wildlife licence](#)
- only manage one section of it at a time
- keep some of the existing habitat
- keep some of the leaf litter, logs and woody debris

- aim to maintain diversity in the pond complex - if there are several ponds on the site, don't carry out the same management on all of them at the same time

## **Further information**

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **WT6: Management of reedbed**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the management of reedbed option.

How much will be paid

£78 per hectare (ha)

Where to use this option

Available for Higher Tier

Whole and part-parcel

Only on:

- priority habitat reedbed in good condition and more than 2ha in area
- degraded reedbed more than 2ha in area with the potential for restoration

Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- areas of open water up to 1 ha

How this option will benefit the environment

It is for managing, maintaining and restoring priority reedbed habitat.

If successful there will be predominantly open, reed-dominated vegetation with occasional scrub, and open water features along ditch lines and ponded areas. High water levels will sustain open water features all year round. Reedbeds will be well maintained or recovering and will support healthy populations of target reedbed species.

Requirements

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- manage water levels and water supply
- manage distribution and flow of water through the site
- maintain any culverts, sluices, tidal flaps or bunds
- manage scrub and vegetation to maintain a predominantly open reedbed
- dispose of cut material appropriately
- manage open water features

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- apply fertilisers or manures
- use pesticides or herbicides, except to spot-treat or weed-wipe for the control injurious weeds and invasive non-native species

### Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

### Related options

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- [OR2 – Organic conversion – unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT2 – Organic land management – unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [SP2 – Raised water level supplement](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP5 – Shepherding supplement](#)

- [SP6 – Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP7 – Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly](#)
- [SP8 – Native breeds at risk supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [WT11 - Wetland cutting supplement](#)
- [WT12 - Wetland grazing supplement](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

Reedbed habitat quality can vary greatly. Reedbed size, degrees of wetness and dryness, scrub cover, soil type, water quality and reed management practices all affect wildlife opportunities. For example, a small scrubby reedbed might support a diverse invertebrate assemblage but will not attract breeding bittern.

Manage the reedbed with a planned set of wildlife goals. Plans should be appropriate and feasible and take account of:

- area available
- water supply
- topography
- other landscape and management constraints such as flood risk, historic environment and landscape impact

Further information

The RSPB website is a useful source of information, including the report on [Bringing Reedbeds to Life](#).



## **WT7: Creation of reedbed**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the creation of reedbed option.

### **How much will be paid**

£323 per hectare (ha).

### **How long this option lasts**

This option lasts for 10 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme.

### **Where to use this option**

Available for Higher Tier

Whole and part-parcel

Only on:

- arable land
- temporary grassland
- improved grassland
- wetland habitat in poor condition if approved by a specialist
- land with a level or very shallow gradient and a reliable, sufficient water supply that will maintain adequate flow and water table elevation during the summer

### **Where this option cannot be used**

- on existing semi-natural habitat, unless existing wetland is in poor condition and the work is agreed by a specialist
- on historic or archaeological features
- when it could flood someone else's land
- if it is associated with poor water quality
- on areas of open water 1ha or more in area

## **Features that can be included in this option**

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- areas of open water up to 1 ha

## **How this option will benefit the environment**

It will help create new areas of reedbed priority habitat on land that is currently of low wildlife value. If successful it will generate open reed-dominated vegetation on waterlogged ground, interspersed with open water features along ditch lines and pond areas sustained all year round. The reedbed will support healthy populations of target reedbed species.

## **Requirements**

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- implement earthworks to create ground and water conditions suitable for reedbed
- establish reedbed vegetation
- manage water levels and water supply
- manage distribution and flow of water through the site
- maintain any culverts, sluices, tidal flaps or bunds
- manage scrub and opportunistic species to assist reedbed establishment
- dispose of cut material appropriately
- manage open water features

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- apply fertilisers or manures
- use pesticides or herbicides, except to spot-treat or weed-wipe for the control injurious weeds and invasive non-native species

## **Keeping records**

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- the agreed implementation plan and feasibility study
- records of all management activity on the option area for each parcel
- photographs of site before works start

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the completed work

Before applying applicants should contact the Environment Agency to determine whether any consents are needed before beginning any works.

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

## **Related options**

These options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- [OR1 – Organic conversion – improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 – Organic land management – improved permanent grassland](#)
- [SP2 – Raised water level supplement](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP5 – Shepherding supplement](#)
- [SP6 – Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP7 – Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly](#)
- [SP8 – Native breeds at risk supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [WT11 - Wetland cutting supplement](#)
- [WT12 - Wetland grazing supplement](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

Reedbed habitat quality can vary greatly. Reedbed size, degrees of wetness and dryness, scrub cover, soil type, water quality and reed management practices affect wildlife opportunities. For example, a small scrubby reedbed can support a diverse invertebrate assemblage but will not attract breeding bittern.

Create the reedbed with a planned set of wildlife goals. Feasibility and impact should be fully assessed in advance and all appropriate advice and permissions obtained. A detailed implementation plan for the works should be agreed with Natural England. Plans should be appropriate and feasible and take account of:

- area available
- water supply
- topography
- other landscape and management constraints such as flood risk, historic environment and landscape impact.

### Further Information

The RSPB website is a useful source of information, including the report on the project [Bringing reedbeds to life](#).

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## WT8: Management of fen

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the management of fen option.

How much will be paid

£39 per hectare (ha)

Where to use this option

Available for Higher Tier

Whole or part-parcel

Only on:

- priority fen habitat in good condition
- priority reedbed habitat in good condition and less than 2 ha
- a mosaic of priority fen and reedbed habitat in good condition where total reedbed area does not exceed 2ha
- fen and reedbed habitat (alone or combined) in poor condition where there is adequate water supply to restore appropriate water levels and the total reedbed area does not exceed 2ha

When this option cannot be used

- areas of open water that are 1 ha or more
- areas of reedbed greater than 2 ha

Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- ditches, drains or dykes that are less than 4m wide
- a pond or standing water that's under 1ha
- rivers and streams that are less than 4m wide for the majority of their length in the parcel

- bracken beds if control of these are included in the agreement
- scrub or woodland if there is less than 5% cover or if control of these are included in the agreement

How this option will benefit the environment

It will help maintain and restore priority fen habitat and small areas of reedbed.

If successful there will be predominantly open fen vegetation, with occasional scrub. There may also be small open water features along ditch lines, water tracks and ponded areas. High water levels will be sustained by a natural, unpolluted water supply which will support a diverse range of target fen species.

Requirements

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- manage water levels and water supply
- maintain any culverts, sluices, tidal flaps or bunds
- manage scrub and vegetation to maintain a predominantly open habitat
- dispose of cut material appropriately

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- apply any fertilisers or manures
- use pesticides and herbicides, except to spot-treat or weed-wipe to control injurious weeds, invasive non-natives, nettles or bracken

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

## Related options

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- [OR2 – Organic conversion – unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT2 – Organic land management – unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [SP2 - Raised water level supplement](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP5 – Shepherding supplement](#)
- [SP6 – Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP7 – Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly](#)
- [SP8 – Native breeds at risk supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [WT11 - Wetland cutting supplement](#)
- [WT12 - Wetland grazing supplement](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

Fen is a diverse habitat type with different fen types depending on factors such as water chemistry, soil type, fertility, position in the landscape and historical management.

To maintain or restore fen appropriately consider the location and landscape setting. Identify the type of fen the option is aiming to conserve and enhance and set objectives and management appropriately.

Decide how best to manage and restore fens by taking into account:

- how and where it sits in the wider landscape

- how past modification and management have influenced the fen and the wildlife it supports
- how the fen is supplied with water and how it drains
- other landscape and management constraints such as flood risk, historic environment and landscape impact

Small fen sites are usually fragments of much larger wetlands and semi-natural landscapes so look for opportunities to extend and buffer existing fens by:

- re-wetting areas with drained peat next to them
- blocking or in-filling pipes or ditches that intercept springs or drain the fen

Account for the surroundings and neighbouring habitats to plan more coherent wetland units. Habitats can include lowland raised bog, wet grassland or wet woodland.

The character and condition of a fen is largely determined by water that comes from its catchment. Therefore it's important that surrounding land is managed sympathetically and in ways that won't damage the fen through pollution by nutrients or sediment runoff.

If the proposed management involves raising water levels, applicants should contact the Environment Agency before applying for this item.



## **WT9: Creation of fen**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the creation of fen option.

### **How much will be paid**

£446 per hectare (ha).

### **How long this option lasts**

This option lasts for 10 years, instead of the standard 5 years for the grant scheme.

### **Where to use this option**

It is available for Higher Tier on whole or part-parcels on:

- arable land, temporary grassland, improved permanent grassland
- other wetland habitat that is in poor condition if approved by a specialist
- land with an suitable and adequate water supply - suitable sites are usually underlain by peat but can also be on slopes with a groundwater outflow

### **Where this option cannot be used**

- On existing wetland habitat, unless existing wetland is in poor condition and the work is agreed by a specialist
- On areas of open water 1ha or more in area

### **Features that can be included in this option**

You can include the following features if they are part of the land, even if they are not eligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- areas of open water up to 1 ha

### **How this option will benefit the environment**

It will help create new areas of fen priority habitat on land with low wildlife value, particularly around existing wetland habitats.

If successful this option will create predominantly open fen vegetation, with occasional scrub. There may be small open water features along ditch lines, water tracks and ponded areas. High water levels will be sustained by a natural, unpolluted water supply which will support a diverse range of target fen species.

## **Requirements**

You must:

- undertake any ground works in accordance with an agreed plan
- manage water levels and water supply
- establish fen vegetation
- maintain any culverts, sluices or bunds
- manage scrub and vegetation to maintain a predominantly open habitat
- manage scrub and opportunistic species to assist fen establishment
- dispose of cut material appropriately

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely you will not be allowed to:

- apply fertilisers or manures
- use pesticides or herbicides, except to spot-treat or weed-wipe for the control injurious weeds and invasive non-native species

## **Keeping records**

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you have not carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

You must keep the following records and supply them on request:

- receipted invoices, consents or permissions connected with the work
- records of all management activity on the option area for each parcel
- photographs of the completed work

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. You should discuss and agree these requirements with your adviser.

## Related options

You can locate the following options and supplements on the same area as this option:

- [OR1 – Organic conversion – improved permanent grassland](#)
- [OT1 – Organic land management – improved permanent grassland](#)
- [SP2 - Raised water level supplement](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP5 – Shepherding supplement](#)
- [SP6 – Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP7 – Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly](#)
- [SP8 – Native breeds at risk supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [WT11 - Wetland cutting supplement](#)
- [WT12 - Wetland grazing supplement](#)

## Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following advice is helpful, but they are not requirements for this item.

Fen is a diverse habitat type with different fen types depending on factors such as water chemistry, soil type, fertility, position in the landscape and historical management.

To create fen appropriately consider the location and landscape setting. Identify the type of fen the option is aiming to create and set objectives and management appropriately.

Decide how best to create fens by taking into account:

- how and where it sits in the wider landscape
- how past modification and management have influenced the fen and the wildlife it supports
- how the fen is supplied with water and how it drains.
- other landscape and management constraints such as flood risk, historic environment and landscape impact

Small fen sites are usually fragments of much larger wetlands and semi-natural landscapes so look for opportunities to extend and buffer existing fens by:

- re-wetting areas with drained peat next to them
- blocking or in-filling pipes or ditches that intercept springs or drain the fen

Account for the surroundings and neighbouring habitats to plan more coherent wetland units. Habitats can include lowland raised bog, wet grassland or wet woodland.

The character and condition of a fen is largely determined by water that comes from its catchment. Therefore it is important that surrounding land is managed sympathetically and in ways that will not damage the fen through pollution by nutrients or sediment runoff.

Feasibility and impact should be fully assessed in advance and all appropriate advice and permissions obtained. A detailed implementation plan or feasibility study for the works should be agreed with Natural England.

If the proposed management involves raising water levels, applicants should contact the Environment Agency before applying for this item.

## **Further information**

See the [Higher Tier manual](#) to find out more about the scheme and how to apply.

## **WT10: Management of lowland raised bog**

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the management of lowland raised bog option.

How much will be paid

£164 per hectare (ha).

Where to use this option

Available for Higher Tier

Whole and part-parcel

Only on:

- priority lowland raised bog habitat which can be kept wet enough for peat to form

Features that can be included in this option

The following features can be included if they are part of the land, even if they are ineligible for the Basic Payment Scheme (BPS):

- ditches, drains or dykes that are less than 4m wide
- a pond or standing water that's less than 1ha in total
- rivers and streams that are less than 4m wide in most of the parcel
- bracken beds if control is in the agreement
- 5% cover of scrub or woodland, or if control is included in the agreement

How this option will benefit the environment

It will help to manage and restore priority lowland raised bog habitat

If successful there will be:

- a rain-fed water table kept close to the surface of the peat

- a cover of characteristic bog vegetation such as sphagnum moss and cotton grass maintained or expanded
- reduced amounts of invasive bracken, scrub or non-native species

## Requirements

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- maintain water levels at the surface of the bog fed only by rainfall
- control scrub and other undesirable species
- dispose of cut material appropriately
- maintain structures that help to control water levels

The agreement will set out what must not be done. It is likely agreement holders will not be allowed to:

- apply any fertilisers or manures
- use pesticides or herbicides, except for spot-treating or weed-wiping to control injurious weeds, invasive non-native species, nettles or bracken

## Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- field operations at the parcel level, including associated invoices

On your annual claim you will be asked to declare that you haven't carried out any activities prohibited by the option requirements.

The detailed requirements for this option will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

## Related options

The following options and supplements can be located on the same area as this option:

- [OR2 – Organic conversion – unimproved permanent grassland](#)

- [OT2 – Organic land management – unimproved permanent grassland](#)
- [SP2 – Raised water level supplement](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP5 – Shepherding supplement](#)
- [SP6 – Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP7 – Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly](#)
- [SP8 – Native breeds at risk supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)
- [WT11 - Wetland cutting supplement](#)
- [WT12 - Wetland grazing supplement](#)

Advice and suggestions for how to carry out this option

The following section gives advice on carrying out this option successfully but does not form part of the requirements for this option.

Pick a location

This option should only be available for raised bog habitat where:

- a substrate of bog peat remains in place
- the area has a surface irrigated only by rainfall
- high water levels sustained by rainfall can be maintained or restored

Maintain and restore raised bog

Get expert advice if using this option to pen rain water to raise water levels (smaller sites may only need internal drain blocking).

Drains or streams in adjacent areas may draw water away. Check what other wetland options might help reduce these effects.

If blocking off or diverting water flow associated with neighbouring drains and streams check what impact this might have on adjacent farm owners or occupiers. The Environment Agency should be consulted along with other relevant bodies eg Internal Drainage Boards. It may be necessary to obtain consent.

Pick a suitable penning structure

Pick water penning structures to suit the size of the drains. Use simple plastic pile or peat plug dams to block small grips and drains or more complex, engineered structures for larger drains. Try extended pile or peat bunds where the surface is either complex or very open and featureless, e.g. after peat milling. Large scale earthworks for rewetting will need careful feasibility study and planning.

Manage vegetation and water levels

Relatively undisturbed raised bog surfaces are usually more self-sustaining and should require less intervention.

Where sites may have dried out and colonised by trees and scrub, aim to:

- remove up to 95% of native trees, and all invasive non-native species
- keep water levels raised to reduce re-colonisation as birch, conifers and rhododendrons can exacerbate drying out

Control bracken by bruising, cutting or applying herbicides. A longer term solution would be to maintain raised water levels.



## WT11: Wetland cutting supplement

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the wetland cutting supplement.

How much will be paid

£440 per hectare (ha).

Where to use this supplement

Available for Higher Tier

Only with one of the following options:

- [WT6 - Management of reedbed](#)
- [WT7 - Creation of reedbed](#)
- [WT8 - Management of fen](#)
- [WT9 - Creation of fen](#)
- [WT10 - Management of lowland raised bog](#)

How this supplement will benefit the environment

It supports the appropriate cutting management of wetland habitats.

Requirements

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- cut particular areas by an agreed method
- cut at specific times
- dispose of cuttings in an agreed way
- produce a simple map of the areas cut and the dates of cutting

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- map of the areas cut

You should also be aware that at the start of each claim year, a percentage of agreement holders will be asked to take and submit the following photographic records:

- photographs of the management undertaken

The detailed requirements for this supplement will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

#### Related supplements

This supplement can be located on the same area as the following supplements:

- [SP2 – Raised water level supplement](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)

## WT12: Wetland grazing supplement

Find out about eligibility and requirements for the wetland grazing supplement.

How much will be paid

£304 per hectare (ha).

Where to use this supplement

Available for Higher Tier

Only with one of the following options:

- [WT6 - Management of reedbed](#)
- [WT7 - Creation of reedbed](#)
- [WT8 - Management of fen](#)
- [WT9 - Creation of fen](#)
- [WT10 - Management of lowland raised bog](#)

How this supplement will benefit the environment

It supports the appropriate grazing management of wetland habitats.

Requirements

Agreement holders are likely to need to:

- graze specific areas by an agreed method
- graze at specific times
- achieve a particular vegetation condition by grazing

Keeping records

Agreement holders will need to keep the following records and supply them on request:

- stock records to show grazing activity on parcels

The detailed requirements for this supplement will be tailored to the Higher Tier site. Applicants should discuss and agree these requirements with their adviser.

### Related supplements

This supplement can be located on the same area as the following supplements:

- [SP2 – Raised water level supplement](#)
- [SP4 - Control of invasive plant species supplement](#)
- [SP5 – Shepherding supplement](#)
- [SP6 – Cattle grazing supplement](#)
- [SP7 – Introduction of cattle grazing on the Isles of Scilly](#)
- [SP8 – Native breeds at risk supplement](#)
- [SP9 - Threatened species supplement](#)